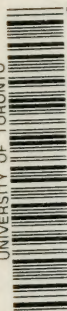
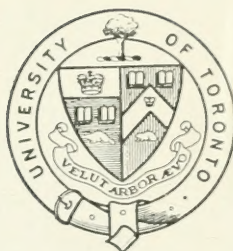


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

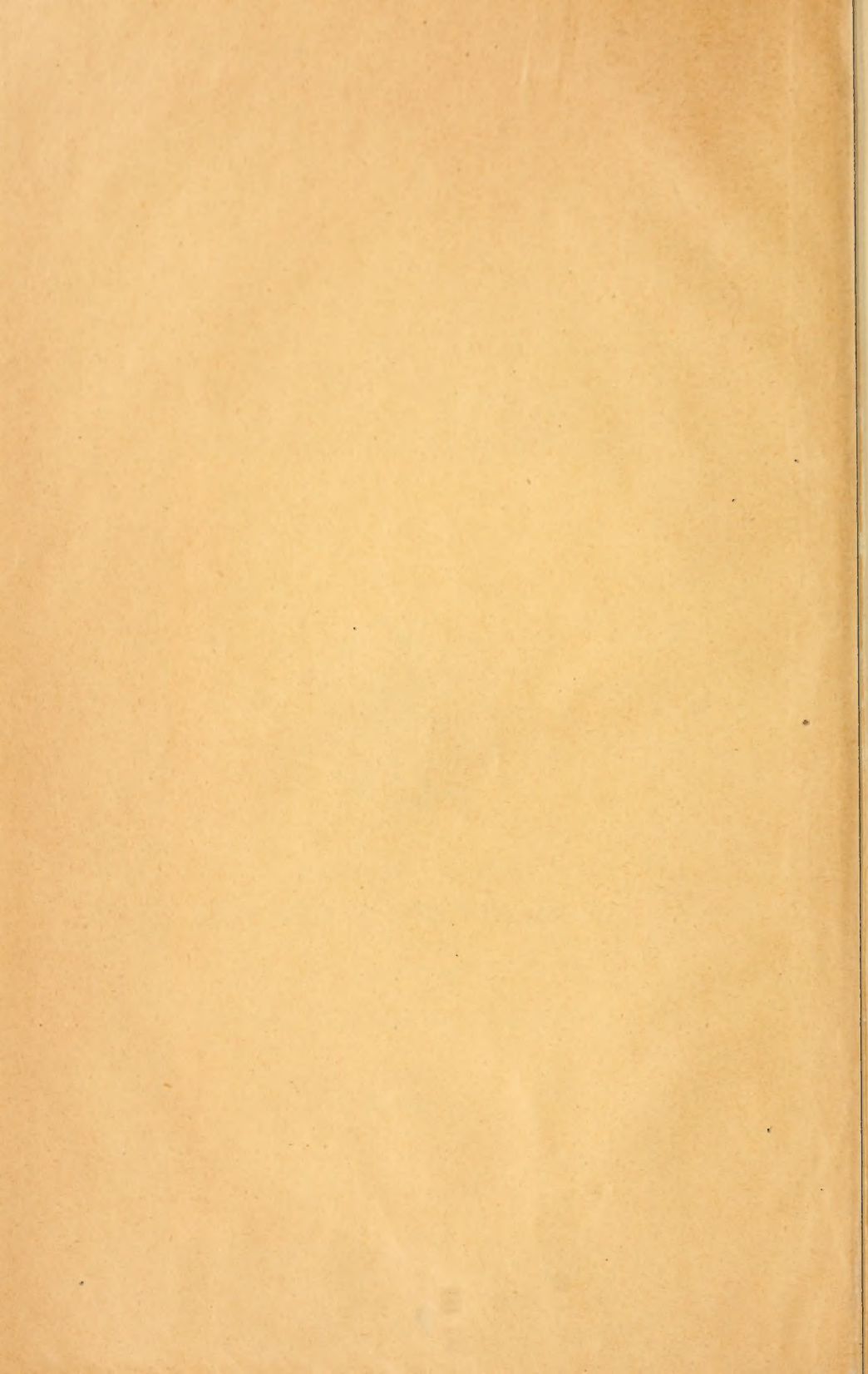


3 1761 01656591 3



PURCHASED FOR THE
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY
FROM THE
CANADA COUNCIL SPECIAL GRANT
FOR
LINGUISTIC

New



Grammatik des heutigen Englisch.

Nach der „Syntax des heutigen Englisch“
wesentlich gekürzt

von

Dr. G. Wendt

Leiter des Mädchengymnasiums in Hamburg



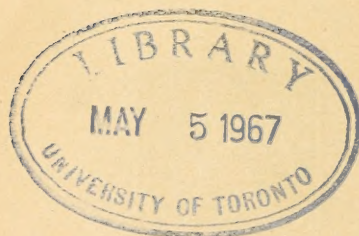
Heidelberg 1922

Carl Winter's Universitätsbuchhandlung

Verlags-Nr. 1704.

Alle Rechte, besonders das Übersetzungsrecht in fremde Sprachen,
sind vorbehalten.

PE
1129
G3W4



Vorwort.

Während meine bei Ausbruch des Krieges vollendete Syntax mehr als eine Studie gedacht ist, soll diese Grammatik aus dem dort gebotenen Beobachtungsmaterial das herausarbeiten, was zur Zeit als grammatisch feststehend angesehen werden kann oder muß.

Die Schwierigkeit, wenn nicht Unmöglichkeit, der „lebendsten“ aller Kultursprachen feste Grenzen zu setzen, sich auf das Korrekte oder Klassische zu beschränken, habe ich im Vorwort zur „Syntax“ erörtert. An der dort vertretenen Auffassung halte ich auch in bezug auf die Methodik des sprachlichen Betriebes fest, betone indessen ausdrücklich, daß diese Grammatik ungeeignet ist für solche Lehrer und Studierende, welche eine lebende Sprache durch (ausschließliches oder vorwiegendes) Übersetzen lehren oder lernen wollen.

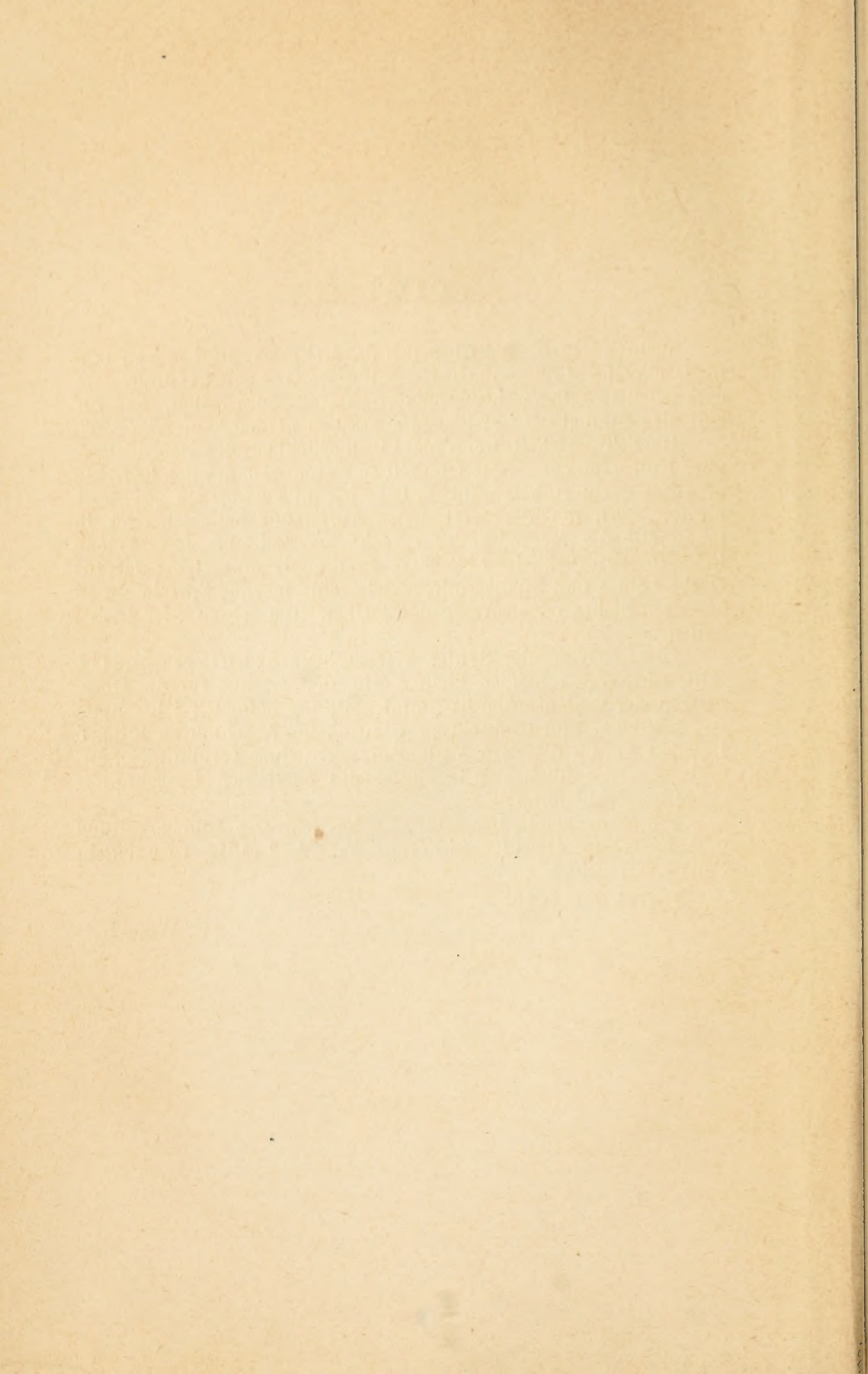
Die schon in der Syntax versprochene Schulgrammatik wird wiederum erheblich kleiner sein und ist nur für die Oberklassen der Realanstalten bestimmt. Mit ihr hoffe ich jahrzehntelange Studien und Beobachtungen zu einem Abschluß zu bringen in einer Form, die dem Verlangen nach einer vernunftgemäßen und wissenschaftlichen Behandlung des englischen Sprachunterrichts entgegenkommt.

Für weitgehende Unterstützung bin ich, was Durcharbeitung und Korrektur angeht, wiederum Frl. A. Leidig zu größtem Danke verpflichtet.

Hamburg 1922.

G. Wendt.

•



Sachregister.

Die Wortlehre.

Das Zeitwort.

	Seite
A. Form	1
I. Laut und Schrift	1
II. Die Konjugation	3
a) Starke	4
b) Schwache	6
c) Gemischte	8
d) Unvollständige	9
B. Bedeutung, Inhalt und Umfang	9
a) Transitiva	9
α) Ohne Objekt	9
β) Mit Objekt(en)	10
b) Intransitiva	10
α) Eigentliche	10
β) Kopulativa	10
c) Reflexiva	11
d) Impersonalia	11
e) Hilfszeitwörter	11
Eigentliche	11
Uneigentliche	19
Gelegentliche	21
C. Syntax	22
I. Beschränkende Formen	22
II. Unbeschränkte Formen	26

Das Substantiv.

A. Form	43
a) Pluralbildung	43
b) Sächsischer Genitiv	46
B. Lexikalisches	47
C. Syntax	47
Kasus	47
Numerus	49
Geschlecht	53

Das Adjektiv.

A. Eigentliches Adjektiv	57
I. In adjektivischer Form	58
II. In anderer Form	59

	Seite
B. Substantivisches Adjektiv	63
C. Stellung des Adjektivs	70
Steigerung	75

Das Adverb 78

Die Artikel.

Der bestimmte Artikel	81
Der unbestimmte Artikel	95
Wiederholung der Artikel	97

Numeralia 97

Pronomina.

Personalia	101
Reflexiva	105
Reciproca	107
Possessiva	108
Demonstrativa	109
Determinativa	111
Interrogativa	112
Relativa	114
I. Eigentliche	114
II. Uneigentliche	118
Indefinita (alphabetisch)	120

Die Präpositionen.

Allgemeines	132
Die einzelnen Präpositionen (alphabetisch)	135

Die Konjunktionen (alphabetisch) . . . 173

Die Satzlehre.

A. Das Subjekt	182
B. Das Prädikat	184
C. Subjekt und Prädikat	191
I. Inversion	191
II. Übereinstimmung	194
D. Das Attribut	206
I. Als Adjektiv	206
II. Als Adverbium	211
III. Als Substantiv	212
E. Das Objekt	218
I. Das direkte Objekt	218
II. Das indirekte Objekt	227
III. „Objective Case“	229
IV. Passivkonstruktion	233
F. Das Adverb	236
I. Zum Verbum gehörig	238
II. Zum Substantiv gehörig	246
III. Zum Adjektiv (Adverb) gehörig	248
IV. Zum Satz gehörig	251

Seite

Das Satzgefüge 252**A. Der Subjektsatz 253****B. Der Objektsatz 254****C. Der Attributsatz 256****D. Der Adverbsatz 261**

I. Der Lokalsatz 261

II. Der Temporalsatz 262

III. Der Modalsatz 264

IV. Der Kausalsatz 271

Kausalsatz im engeren Sinn 271

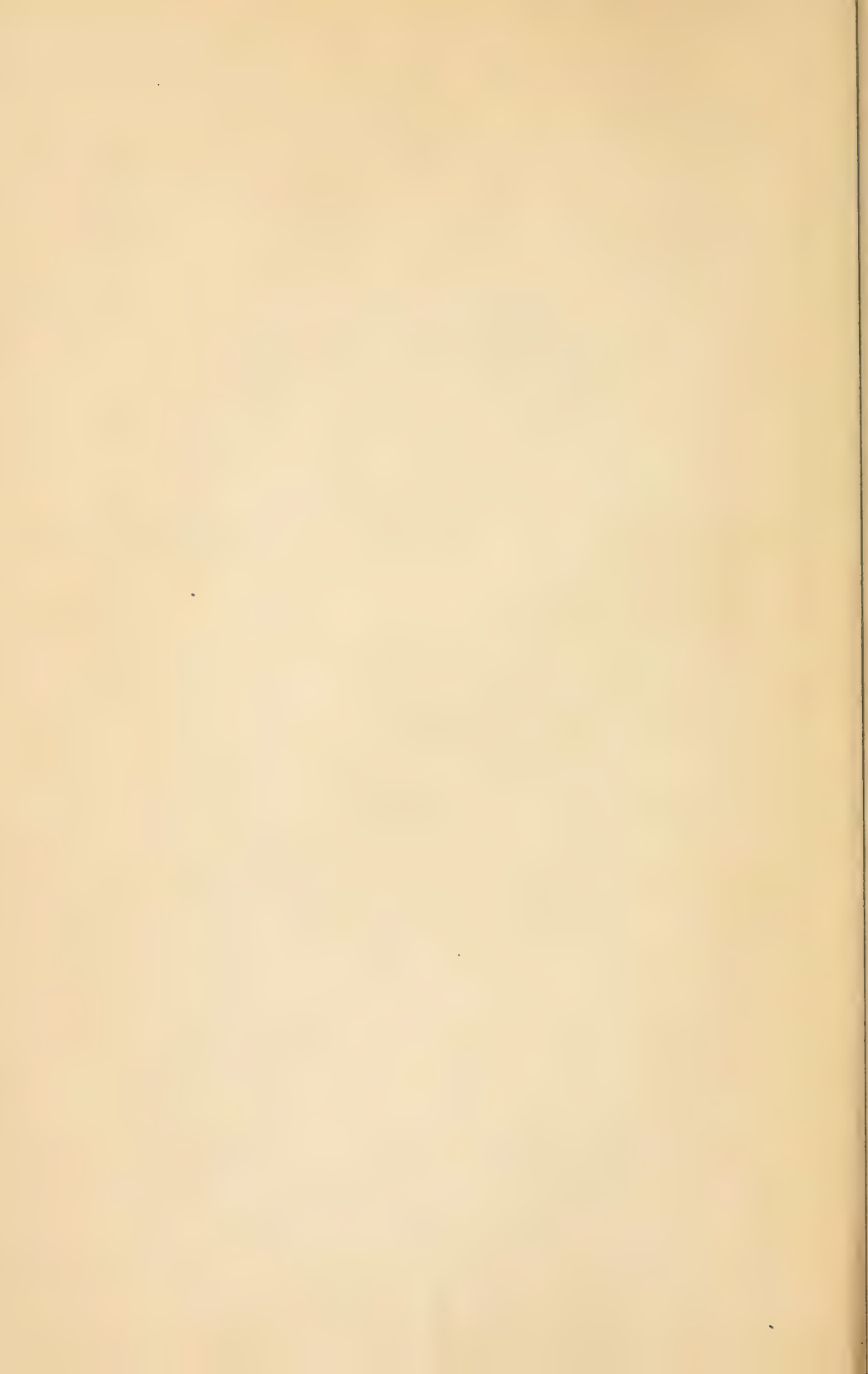
Finalsatz 272

Konsekutivsatz 275

Konditionalsatz 276

Konzessivsatz 285

Die Satzreihe 288**Die übrigen Satzarten.****A. Der Fragesatz 296****B. Der Ausrufsatz 301****C. Der Aufforderungssatz 301****D. Der Wunschsatz 302****Die indirekte Rede 302****Wortregister 307**



Das Zeitwort.

A. Form des Zeitworts.

Die Zahl der eigentlichen Beugungsformen aller Vollverba schwankt — von *to be* abgesehen — zwischen **3** und **5**:

cut	cuts	cutting		
love	loves	loving	loved	
fall	falls	falling	fell	fallen.

Allen Vollverben gemeinsam sind demnach nur

... **s** (es) der 3. Person Sing. Präs.

... **ing** des 1. Partizips.

Bem. Die Formen **-st** (**est, edst, t**) der 2. Person Sing. Präs. und **eth** (**th**) der 3. Person Sing. Präs. gehören nicht der Gemeinsprache an.

I. Die einzelnen Beugungsformen.

a) Nach dem Laut.

... **s** (es).

s hat dreifachen Laut, einen silbigen und zwei unsilbige:

1. **s** — nach stimmlosem Auslaut, unsilbig:

cut-s, drop-s, stick-s — cough-s, elope-s, strike-s;

2. **z** — nach stimmhaftem Laut, unsilbig:

bid-s, rob-s, beg-s — live-s, leave-s, sigh-s, seethe-s, rue-s,
call-s, climb-s, pardon-s, travel-s;

3. **ez** — nach Zischlaut, silbig:

wish-es, tax-es, practise-s, lodge-s, buzz-es.

Unsilbig ist **ez** nur in *go-es* (*gouz*) und *do-es* (*daz*).

... **ed**.

Silbig — nach Auslaut auf **t** und **d**:

spot-t-ed, plod-d-ed, intend-ed, amalgamate-d;

Unsilbig — in allen andern Fällen, doch so, daß es sich dem Auslaut angleicht, einerlei wo der Ton des Zeitworts liegt.

... **ed** lautet also:

stimmlos in: stripped, striped, chopped, locked, mimicked, debauched, wished; durch Assimilation, z. B. in: used to (*justo*).
 stimmhaft in: robbed, lagged, breathed, sighed, preferred, interfered, travelled, condemned.

Bem. Soll aus rhythmischen Gründen das Partizip auf . . . *ed* silbig lauten, so erhält es meist den Akzent, der aber fortbleibt in *the beloved* und (nominalen) *learned*.

. . . *ing*

ist stets silbig.

b) Nach der Schrift.

Die lautliche Unzulänglichkeit der überkommenen Schriftzeichen zwingt zu einer Rechtschreibung, die nicht in allen Einzelheiten gesetzlich geworden, nicht frei von Widersprüchen, zuweilen irreführend ist.

1. Vokalisch endigend:

e — schwindet vor . . . *ing*:

to hope, hoping; to change, changing; to pursue, pursuing;
 aber: to dye, dyeing; to singe, singeing; to shoe, shoeing,
 während

to die, vie, lie, tie — dying, vying, lying, tying bilden.

Der Druck schwankt zwischen cringing und cringeing, eying und eyeing, aging und ageing, aping und apeing.

ee —	agree,	agrees,	agreed,	agreeing;
o —	veto,	vetoed,	vetoing;	
oo —	woo,	woos,	wood,	wooing.

Bem. Doch schreibt man auch *fee'd*.

2. Konsonantisch endigend:

Der aus einem einfachen Buchstaben bestehende Endkonsonant wird vor . . . *ed* und . . . *ing* verdoppelt, wenn er eine betonte kurze Silbe oder eine betonte, lange, nicht doppellautige auf **r** schließt:

plot, plotted, plotting	stir, stirred, stirring
rub, rubbed, rubbing	mar, marred, marring
japan, japanned, japanning	slur, slurred, slurring
compel, compelled, compelling	abhor, abhorred, abhorring
quiz(zz), quizzed, quizzing	pour, poured, pouring
scour, scoured, scouring.	

l verdoppelt in englischen Drucken auch nach unbetonter Silbe:

travelled, travelling; signalled, signalling; cavilled, cavilling,
 jedoch unparallel.

Es verdoppeln die Endkonsonanten auch to humbug, kidnap, worship, gossip und mimic(k).

Es schwankt der Gebrauch bei den Endungen at, ot, et; op, up; is, as, us.

II. Die Konjugation.

Da die vorhandenen Beugungsformen nicht ausreichen, so werden andere Verba herangezogen, unter denen

to have, to be, to do — shall, will

die weitaus gebräuchlichsten sind, so daß sich folgendes

Konjugationsschema

ergibt:

Aktiv.

	Indikativ	Konjunktiv
Präsens:	call, calls	call
Präteritum:	called	called
Perfekt:	have, has called	
Plusqu.:	had called	
1. Futur:	shall, will call	should, would call
2. Futur:	shall, will have called	should, would have called
Imperativ:	call	
Infinitiv:	(to) call, (to) have called	
Partizip:	calling, called, having called	
Gerundium:	calling, having called.	

Das Vollverbum hat demnach für die Personenbezeichnung nur im Präsens mehr als eine Form, für den Numerus nur eine.

Die einfachen Formen können (müssen) durch to do + Infin. umschrieben werden.

Passiv.

Das Passiv hat als einfache Form nur das 2. Partizip. Dieses tritt zu to be, welches für die Bezeichnung von Person, Numerus und Modus eine größere Zahl von Formen zur Verfügung hat.

Die Konjugation zerfällt nach ihren verschiedenen Grund- oder Stammformen in vier Ordnungen:

- a) die starke,
- b) die schwache,
- c) die gemischte,
- d) die unvollständige.

Zur starken, gemischten und unvollständigen gehört eine beschränkte, nicht zunehmende Zahl von Verben, zur schwachen alle übrigen und alle Neubildungen.

a) Die starke Konjugation

zerfällt in zwei Gruppen:

Die erste (α) zeigt im Präteritum und 2. Partizip starke, voneinander verschiedene Formen, die zweite (β) ein und dieselbe starke Form.

 α) Erste Gruppe.

Präteritum mit Ablaut (außer *to beat*), 2. Partizip auf **n**, das **n**, **en** oder **ne** geschrieben wird.

Bei einigen wenigen ist der **n**-Lauf am Schwinden oder geschwunden, bei anderen bleibt die Wahl zwischen zweisilbiger und einsilbiger Form.

arise	arose	arisen
bear	bore	born
bear	bore	borne
beat	beat	beaten (beat)
become	became	become
beget	begot	begotten
begin	began	begun
bespeak	bespoke	bespoken
bestride	bestrode	bestriden (-id, -ode)
bid	bade	bidden (bid)
bite	bit	bitten (bit)
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
chide	chid	chidden (chid)
cleave (spalten)	clove, cleft	cloven, cleft
cleave (kleben)	clave, cleaved	cleaved
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate (eat)	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forbid	forbade	forbidden
for(e)go	forewent	foregone
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken
forswear	forswore	forsworn
freeze	froze	frozen
give	gave	given

grow	grew	grown
hide	hid	hidden (hid)
know	knew	known
lie (liegen)	lay	lain
outbid	outbade	outbidden
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
see	saw	seen
shake	shook	shaken
shrink	shrank	shrunk
sing	sang	sung
slay	slew	slain
smite	smote	smitten (smit)
speak	spoke	spoken
spring	sprang	sprung
steal	stole	stolen
stink	stank	stunk
stride	strode	stridden (strid)
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
tear	tore	torn
thrive	throve	thriven
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven
write	wrote	written.

to be (8 Formen).

Pres. Ind. am, are, is, pl. are; Konj. be

Pret. Ind. was, were, was, pl. were; Konj. were

Inf. (to) be. — Pres. Part. u. Gerund being. — Pret. Part. been.

Bem. Be für alle Formen des Präsens ist archaisch. Vgl. The powers that be.

β) Zweite Gruppe.

Das Präteritum ist stark, das 2. Partizip ohne . . n und mit dem Präteritum übereinstimmend:

abide	abode	abode
awake	awoke	awoke (awaked)

behold	beheld	beheld
bind	bound	bound
cling	clung	clung
dig	dug	dug
find	found	found
fling	flung	flung
get	got	got
grind	ground	ground
hang	hung	hung
heave	hove, heaved	hove, heaved
hold	held	held
shine	shone	shone
sit	sat(e)	sat(e)
slide	slid (slided)	slid (slided)
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
spin	spun (span)	spun
spit	spat	spat
stand	stood	stood
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
strike	struck	struck
string	strung	strung
swing	swung	swung
understand	understood	understood*
wake	woke, waked	woke, waked, woken
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
withhold	withheld	withheld
withstand	withstood	withstood
wring	wrung	wrung.

* *understanded* ist archaisch, üblich mit *of the people*.

b) Die schwache Konjugation.

Manches ist auch hier im Fluß. Wir unterscheiden **2 Hauptgruppen**, von denen die erste in 2, die andere in 3 Grundformen übereinstimmt.

1. Zwei Grundformen, eine für Präsens, die andere für Präteritum und 2. Partizip. Diese Gruppe zerfällt wieder in eine regelmäßige und eine unregelmäßige.

α) Die regelmäßige schwache Konjugation.

Dieses ist die „lebende“, da ihr die überwiegende Zahl der vorhandenen Zeitwörter und alle Neubildungen angehören.

β) Die **unregelmäßige** schwache Konjugation.

Die zu ihr gehörenden Verba sind und bleiben einsilbig mit (selbstverständlicher) Ausnahme von *girded*, *lighted* und *bereft* (*bereaved*), *waylaid*.

Die Unregelmäßigkeit entsteht durch Zusammenziehung mit — in den meisten Fällen — lautlicher Umbildung.

bend	bent	bent (bended knees)
bereave	bereaved, bereft	bereaved, bereft
bleed	bled	bled
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt	burnt
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
creep	crept	crept
dare	dared, durst	dared
deal	dealt	dealt
dream	dreamt, dreamed	dreamt, dreamed
dwelt	dwelt	dwelt
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
flee (fly)	fled	fled
gild	gilt	gilt
gird	girt, girded	girt, girded
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
kneel	knelt	knelt
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lean	leant, leaned	leant, leaned
leap	leapt, leaped	leapt, leaped
learn	learnt, learned	learnt, learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
light	lit, lighted	lit, lighted
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
read	read	read
rend	rent	rent

say	said	said
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shoe	shod	shod
shoot	shot	shot
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt	spilt
spoil	spoilt, spoiled	spoilt, spoiled
smell	smelt (smelled)	smelt (smelled)
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
waylay	waylaid	waylaid.

2. Eine Grundform:

burst	burst	burst
cast	cast	cast
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
hit	hit	hit
hurt	hurt	hurt
knit	knit, knitted	knit, knitted
let	let	let
put	put	put
rid	rid, rided	rid (rided)
set	set	set
shed	shed	shed
shut	shut	shut
slit	slit	slit
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
thrust	thrust	thrust.

c) Die gemischte Konjugation

zerfällt in 2 Gruppen. Die erste (α) umfaßt die Zeitwörter, welche nur im 2. Part. stark sind. In der zweiten (β) besteht neben der schwachen noch die starke Form; doch wird die starke entweder nur adjektivisch gebraucht oder archaisch.

α) Prät. schwach, 2. Part. stark:

do	did	done
mow	mowed	mown
rive	rived	riven

saw	sawed	sawn
shear	sheared	shorn
show	showed	shown
sow	sowed	sown
strew	strewn	strewn
swell	swelled	swollen (swelled).

β) Doppelformen im 2. Partizip:

to bake — baked, baken	to prove — proved, proven
to carve — carved, carven	to rot — rotted, rotten
to cleave — cleft, cloven	to shave — shaved, shaven
to grave — graved, graven	to sink — sunk, sunken
to hew — hewed, hewn	to shrink — shrunk, shrunken
to hold — held, holden	to strike — struck, stricken
to melt — melted, molten	to work — worked, wrought.

Dazu kommen (to be) beholden (to one) und (one's) bounden (duty); blowed (to blow) (= cursed) ist vulgär.

d) Die unvollständige Konjugation

umfaßt die nur in vereinzeltten Formen vorhandenen Zeitwörter:

mit **einer** Form: must, ought;

mit **zwei** Formen: can-could; may-might; shall-should; will-would.

B. Bedeutung, Inhalt und Umfang des Zeitworts.

Transitiva heißen die Verba, welche eine Tätigkeit bezeichnen, die auf ein persönliches oder sachliches Objekt mittelbar oder unmittelbar gerichtet ist. Ist das Objekt zugleich das Subjekt des Satzes, so heißen sie Reflexiva.

Intransitiva sagen Tätigkeit oder Zustand aus, ohne auf ein Objekt ab-zuzielen, sind begrifflich vollständig.

Impersonalia können transitiv und intransitiv sein.

Die Hilfszeitwörter übernehmen auf Grund ihrer Eigenbedeutung bestimmte Funktionen, welche dazu dienen, die logischen Beziehungen der Vollverba innerhalb des Satzes klarzustellen.

a) Transitive.

Wird das direkte oder Akkusativobjekt als selbstverständlich ausgelassen, so entsteht formell ein Intransitivum; das Verbum wird 'neuter' oder 'absolute'.

α) Ohne (ausgesprochenes) Objekt, z. B.:

There is no need to pronounce (judgment) upon his politics. — To leave (a place) for the continent. — To entertain (people) largely (sehr gesellig sein). — To propose (marriage) to a lady.

β) Mit Objekt.**αα) Ein Objekt.**

Dieses kann direkt (ohne Präposition) oder indirekt (mit Präposition) angeschlossen werden.

To love und *to laugh at* sind echte Transitive.

I have only one head, one pair of eyes, and one pair of hands; I cannot think of, see to, and do, everything.

Das Objekt kann ebenso gut außerhalb der Tätigkeit liegen wie ihre Wirkung angeben oder ihren Inhalt:

To love one's parents; to sit a horse; to jump a ditch; to live a life, to fly the Channel; to run a distance.

ββ) Zwei Objekte.

Das Zeitwort gestattet zwei Objekte oder erfordert sie.

Im ersten Falle sind es direktes (näheres) und indirektes (entfernteres) Objekt:

We gave him a book.

Im zweiten Falle erfordert der Begriff des Zeitworts eine Vervollständigung des direkten Objekts — Factitiva:

The people proclaimed him king.

Einige Zeitwörter können transitiv und intransitiv gebraucht werden — Causativa.

The potatoes **grow** — we **grow** potatoes.

To **walk** a machine. To **work** one (too hard, to death).

1. He **walked** me into the parlour. — 2. They had out their plate, and **dined** each other round in the moonlight nights twice a year.

b) Intransitiva.**α) Die eigentlichen Intransitiva**

schließen den Zusatz eines direkten Objekts aus und können in keiner Form ins Passiv treten. Ihre Zahl ist auf etwa 30 beschränkt, z. B.:

to amount, to err, to happen.

β) Copulativa.

Als intransitiv anzusehen sind Zeitwörter, welche, oder soweit sie erst durch Verbindung (Copula) mit einem Prädikatsnomen begrifflich vollständig werden. Zu ihnen sind auch die Factitiva im Passiv zu rechnen.

Vgl. to appear clear — to appear clearly.

1. No great tragedies are written now, because men never **look** large enough to us to be tragic. — 2. We often observe that a phrase or turn of sentence "**feels right**" (or **wrong**) though we can assign no grammatical error. This is a resort to Sprachgefühl.

Einige können als vollständige oder kopulative Verben behandelt werden:

1. Some recent events **bulk** much too large. — 2. It cannot be said at the present time that Canada **bulks** largely in English literature.

c) Reflexiva.

Von eigentlichen Reflexiven, d. h. Transitiven, welche das Objekt durch das reflexive Fürwort ausdrücken müssen, gibt es nur 4:

to bethink, to plume, to pride, to betake oneself.

Alle übrigen können das Objekt unausgesprochen lassen, werden intransitiv bzw. *neuter*. In den meisten Fällen „genügt“ das bloße Verbum. Vgl. Pron. Refl.

1. It is always difficult to decide whether a play that **reads** well will **act** well. — 2. One **transplants** badly at sixty-six. — 3. Ghastly and blood-curdling as these adventures **read**, fiction in this case falls far behind fact. — 4. She was young; beneath her dishevelled hair her face **showed** almost girlish.

d) Impersonalia

dienen fast ausnahmslos zur Bezeichnung von Naturerscheinungen und erfordern **it** als (formales) Subjekt:

It **snows**; it **froze**; will it **rain**?; it **was thawing**.

Andere Verba deuten die unpersönliche Form selten durch **it** an, meist durch **there**:

1. It still **wants** ten or fifteen minutes of the appointed time. — 2. It **was** a mild evening, already dark, and now and then **threatening** rain. — 3. Then **there** arrived man.

Bem. *It was fought all day* ist ein Latinismus.

e) Die Hilfszeitwörter.

Zu den Hilfszeitwörtern gehören nicht nur die für die schematische Konjugation unentbehrlichen

be, have, shall, will, may, do, let,

sondern auch die oft als Hilfszeitwörter empfundenen

can, must, ought, dare, need,

endlich gewisse Schattierungen von *to be*, nämlich die kopulativen

become, come, get, go, grow,

fall, run, stand, turn, wax.

Die eigentlichen Hilfszeitwörter.

1. To be.

Begrifflich, nicht kopulativ, sondern mit Eigenbedeutung:

1. Has the postman **'been**? — 2. Molière's personages **'are**, whereas those of Shakespere **'become**. — 3. Even in this day, such unpopular beings surely

'are. — 4. Aristotle treats the things as if they 'were, not as if they were the thoughts of his own mind.

Funktionell:

α) To be calling.

In Verbindung mit dem 1. Partizip Aktiv und Passiv bildet *to be* eine vollentwickelte Nebenkongjugation, welche die Fortdauer oder das Fortschreiten, aber auch die besondere Stärke einer Tätigkeit ausdrückt, also eine Aktionsart ist.

Aktiv: — 1. A strong man does not need to be ever carrying his sword in his mouth. — 2. During the 14th and 15th centuries the English power in Ireland was constantly declining. — 3. I have been watching and watching for you, and running down the lane, and looking out for you. — 4. French journalists have been having a great discussion lately about the hearts of their Kings. — 5. Some beef, Sir? — No, thanks, I'm having mutton. (Ich bekomme schon). — 6. Who was she to be refusing what might prove to be, perhaps, the last request of her dying husband! — 7. We had better been handing nails, but you wouldn't give us any work.

Passiv: — 8. In England, I had seen and continued to see... many of the reforms either effected or in course of being so. — 9. The novels of 1902 are being written. Solemn thought! — 10. Germany was being left out in the dark. — 11. We are gradually being further convinced that our modern civilisation itself is, after all, not so very superior.

β) To be going to...

weist rein zeitlich auf die allernächste Zukunft hin, fragend oder verneint oft in der bestimmten Erwartung, daß etwas nicht eintreten wird, daher auch drohend:

1. The trade-union leaders who are being, and those who are going to be, defied by the members of their unions will not attract to themselves much sympathy from outside. — 2. You are not going to tell him that? (Sie werden ihm das doch [etwa] nicht sagen?) — 3. If Englishmen are going to put up with this kind of blackmail, then the sooner the Germans come the better. — 4. If Germany is going to do us harm in the future it will not be by landing troops on our shores. (Wirklich daran denkt). — 5. England will probably be England for some considerably extensive period yet; but the radical laws of existence are not going to be suspended on her account (werden seinetwegen darum noch lange nicht außer Kraft treten).

γ) To be to...

bezeichnet den Willen eines (oft nur unbestimmt vorschwebenden) Dritten, dessen Berechtigung zu gebieten oder verbieten nicht bestritten wird: „sollen“.

1. If men are to wait for liberty till they become wise and good in slavery, they may indeed wait for ever. — 2. The functions and scope of the new Constitution have yet to be settled: for instance, how long is the President to hold office. — 3. G. Borrow reached London, intending a stay of weeks: he was to stay in England all his life.

Rein zeitlich, futurisch: 4. Princes that had been, and kings that were to be were not yet of the Teacher class. — 5. Messrs. Putnam are to issue in December a special reprint of the writings of A. H.

2. To have.

Begrifflich = „besitzen“ kann *to have* durch *to do* erweitert oder umschrieben, durch *got* verstärkt, passivisch aber nur in Infinitiv gebraucht werden. Außerdem kann es mit dem 2. Partizip kausative Bedeutung erhalten.

1. What sort of a passage did **you have**? — 2. What **have you got** for dinner? — 3. **To be had** of all booksellers. — 4. In the days of the Holy Roman Empire, the German Emperors **had themselves crowned** four times in their several Kingdoms.

Funktionell dient *to have* ausschließlich zur Bildung der zusammengesetzten Zeiten des Aktivs. Wo statt seiner *to be* auftritt, ist das 2. Partizip Prädikatsergänzung und nominal.

α) To have — to be:

1. The day of democracy **has come**. It has been slow in coming, but it **has come** at last. For good or for evil the people **have entered** upon their heritage of power. — 2. You **have come** late, Count Isolani, but you **are come**. — 3. We have all said we **are arrived** to-day at a great and critical stage—another act in the drama. To-day at all events **we have arrived** undoubtedly at the last act of this particular play, but then dramas are not made by words. — 4. It is for the generations to come to determine whether we can or can not indite epistles worthy to be read in cold blood, when both writers and receivers are become dust. — 5. The Temple and the Sacrificial System **were gone** for ever.

To have mit Infinitiv ohne *to* s. Infinitiv.

β) To have to . . .

bezeichnet ein objektives Müssen, den Zwang zur Erfüllung einer selbstgestellten oder von andern gestellten Aufgabe; es wird in der Umgangssprache vielfach durch *got* verstärkt.

Bem. Englische Grammatiker sprechen von einem „*Obligation have*“.

1. The French **have always had to have** an eye on their frontiers. — 2. Now **I have got to die** and see things clear. — 3. We **have got to live** together, how shall we do it with least vulgarity? — 4. The Bill **has got to go**, and we will start by refusing to pass it until forced to by coroneted democracy. — 5. “So you’re in? Was it a hard fight?” — “A hard fight? Oh no! One **would have had to be** a great fool not to get in.”

3. Shall — should.

Begrifflich und nicht dem Wechsel mit *will*, *would* unterworfen, bezeichnen *shall*, *should*:

α) Gebot oder Verbot,

und zwar *shall* unbedingt (indikativisch), *should* bedingt — „soll, sollte“.

1. Thou **shalt** not steal. — 2. What **shall** I do? — 3. **Shall** we home? — 4. False reports and misconceptions that might do great harm **should** at once be settled satisfactorily and with all possible energy. — 5. No man **should** do as a journalist what he would not do as a man.

β) Versprechen, Drohung oder Prophezeiung:

1. To him that hath **shall** be given this power, but from him that hath it not is taken away even that which he hath. (Bible). -- 2. As to that painfully immaculate millennium which some good persons profess to anticipate, when coal fires **shall** be no more and we shall all be steam, water, air, or otherwise heated, let it be indefinitely postponed. -- 3. If you do this, you **shall** be hanged. -- 4. The tyrant **shall** perish!

γ) Abgeschwächte Behauptung oder Zweifel, häufig in Form der rhetorischen Frage:

1. Who **shall** tell what was lost to the world by the burning of the Alexandrian Library? -- 2. "He dare not go" is more correct than "he dares not go", and, **I should think**, far more usual. -- 3. No subject need be too high or low to prove the skill of the master. **You shall hear** him discourse with equal facility of the immortal plays of Shakespeare or the squalid melodramas of a Jones. (Etwas veraltet!) -- 4. But Hastings, whom, as it **should seem**, success in ambition and in love had put into high good humour, would take no denial. -- 5. The events of this week **should** form an important stage in the development of the Constitutional crisis. (dürfte bilden). -- 6. Händel.. so killed a great deal of his work which **should have been** alive to-day. Vgl. Inf. Perf.

I should hope (ingeschoben) = hoffentlich.

δ) Bloße Annahme:

A company of old comrades **shall** be merry and laughing together, and and the entrance of a single youngster **will** stop the conversation (Thackeray).

Im *if*-Satze s. Konditionalsatz.

4. Will -- would

sind, wenn begrifflich („wollen“) gedacht, betont, in der Schrift nicht immer unterschieden, so daß meist der Zusammenhang erst erkennen läßt, ob sie begrifflich oder funktionell stehen.

Bem. To will als Vollverbum gehört nicht hierher.

α) Wille, Wunsch:

1. We (English) **would think** of their (the Germans') philosophy as we **would have them think** of Shakespeare. -- 2. The people **will have** the theatre; then make it a good one. -- 3. All ranks, from the highest to the lowest, were taught that the King **would be obeyed**. -- 4. **Will we have** national organization now to bring the war to a successful termination, or **will we acquiesce** in a more or less "drawn" war...? (sind wir entschlossen?) -- 5. When wealth was offered to any who **would betray** him, when death was denounced against all who **should shelter** him... -- 6. England is still the first Naval Power in the world and, if the struggle **will only come** soon, she will remain so. -- 7. The Commons **would have** the power of the sword; the king **would not part** with it; and nothing remained but to try the chances of war. -- 8. If a man has poetry in him it **will out**, be the obstacles what they may. -- 9. Whosoever **would** make acquaintance with the goal towards which the classic practice tends, **should seek** it in the vocabulary of the Sciences. -- 10. **I will have** it done.

β) Gewohnheit in Folge des Willens:

1. Such things **will** happen in the best regulated families. — 2. Cats **will** steal (stehlen nun [ein]mal). — 3. Pride **will** have a fall. — 4. Often when we were sitting by, **I** would see her pausing and looking at him with that memorable face.

Bem. Dieser Gebrauch ist in der ersten Person selten.

γ) Potentiales Futur; vgl. *should*, γ.

1. We **would** seem to live in an age of food experiments. — 2. If we may judge from the re-issue of his writings during recent years, there **would** seem to be a growing interest in Hazlitt.

Bem. *It would seem* wechselt mit *it should seem* in eingeschobenen Sätzen.

δ) Bitte oder Aufforderung

wird gern in die Form der Frage gekleidet:

Will you go out? — *Will you step this way?* — *Will you hold your tongue?*

Im Konditionalsatz, s. diesen.

1. If you **would** have been led by me, archdeacon, you **would** never have put a bachelor into St. Ewold's. — 2. If they (the leaders of Jewry) **would** put the welfare of poor Jews above the finances of rich Jews, we **should** hear no more of anti-semitism in Russia. — 3. She rose to her feet and **would** have hurried away (= wäre gern).

Funktionell. Auch als reine Formwörter verleugnen

shall, should, — will, would

nicht ganz ihre ursprüngliche oder begriffliche Bedeutung: „sollen“ und „wollen“.

Bem. Der Wechsel zwischen ihnen für die (schematische) Konjugation (s. diese) läßt keine festen Grenzen erkennen, bei Nicht-Engländern sogar starke Abweichungen. — In der Umgangssprache überwiegt auch in England der Gebrauch von *will* und *would*.

1. In this little series of studies, **I shall** make no attempt to estimate the later literature of the Victorian Age, nor **will** I at all refer to any living writer. Nor **shall** I deal with social and moral philosophy, poetry, art, or religion. — 2. The optimistic professor foresees a time when most of the machinery of our planet **will** be driven by sun-power, when coal **will** be unnecessary save as an instructive habit in museums, and when the factory chimney **shall** be no more.

Das Schwanken zwischen *shall*, *should* und *will*, *would* zeigt sich auch in der indirekten Rede bei Objektsätzen:

3. Mr. Lloyd George, in his speech in reply, referred to armaments and said he **would** despair of human nature if he thought that the House of Commons regarded the present warlike expenditure as destined to continue.

5. May, might

werden rein funktionell nur in Final- bzw. finalen Konsekutivsätzen gebraucht (s. diese).

Begrifflich (vgl. auch *can* und *must*) bezeichnen **may**, **might**:

α) Eine Möglichkeit, ein Nichtgehindertsein, dann auch eine Einräumung = „können“, „vielleicht“, „möglicherweise“.

1. A woman **may** always help her husband by what she knows, however little; by what she half-knows or misknows, she will only tease him. — 2. It **may** indeed happen, and **does** happen often. — 3. It **may** be so, or it **may** 'not; but, in either event, the Continental trip has ceased to be regarded as the fine thing it once was. — 4. His hour **may** not come to-day or to-morrow, but he is doomed. — 5. Wherever a true wife comes, this home is always round her. The stars only **may** be over her head; the glow-worm in the night-cold grass **may** be the only fire at her foot: but home is yet wherever she is.

Die verneinte Möglichkeit, das Gehindertsein, wird durch **cannot** ausgedrückt.

6. You **may** depend upon it, he **cannot** accept your proposal. — 7. There is just this difference between the making of a girl's character and a boy's—you **may** chisel a boy into shape, as you would a rock, or hammer him into it, if he be of a better kind, as you would a piece of bronze. But you **cannot** hammer a girl into anything.

In Fragen als Ausdruck der Ungewißheit:

8. Who **may** you be? (Wer sind Sie nur?)

Das (konditionale) **might** schwächt die Möglichkeit ab = „könnte auch“, „gegebenen Falles“, „zur Not“ u. ä.:

9. When Liddell and Scott tell you that an obscure passage **may** mean this, and other authorities suggest that it **might** mean that, this coach, it was said, tells you what it is. — 10. There **might** be a serviceable power in novels to bring before us, in vividness, a human truth which we had before dimly conceived; but the temptation to picturesqueness of statement is so great, that often the best writers of fiction cannot resist it.

β) Eine Erlaubnis auf Grund positiven Rechtes nach Gesetz oder Sitte; mit der Verneinung ein Verbot = „dürfen“.

1. All endowments are national property, which the Government **may** and **ought to** control. — 2. Send the archives to Potsdam. The town **may** make terms with the enemy. — 3. God has his own methods of enforcing extreme principles, and human legislation **may** only meddle with them at its peril. — 4. There is nothing in my pages which a lady **may** not read without indecorum, which is more than can be said of Shakespeare.

Die verneinte Erlaubnis, das Verbot, kann durch **may not** oder **must not** ausgedrückt werden:

5. A man **may not** marry his brother's wife. — 6. The Copyright of this (Tauchnitz) Collection is purchased for Continental Circulation only, and the volumes **may** therefore **not** be introduced into Great Britain or her Colonies. — 7. After 1594 **no** plays **might** be published without license and registry at Stationers' Hall. — 8. No stranger **might** abide in any place save a borough. — 9. But whatever else you **may** be, you **must not** be useless, and you **must not** be cruel. — 10. I **mustn't** speak my mind to the Chairman, but the Chairman **may** speak his mind to me.

γ) Einen Wunsch,
 doch nur mit **may**, welches an die Spitze des Satzes tritt und dem Subjekt vorangeht = „möge“, „möchte“.

May you be happy! — May he never return.

6. To do

dient im weitesten Umfange als Ersatz fehlender oder unbetonter Endungen der Vollverba, ohne seine Eigenbedeutung aufzugeben.

Es **muß** oder **kann** zur Umschreibung der einfachen Zeiten verwendet werden; neben dieser formalen Verwendung zeigt es begrifflich eine starke Entwicklung.

α) Formal.

αα) **To do** muß gebraucht werden zur Umschreibung der einfachen Zeiten fragender Sätze — ausgenommen den beim „Fragesatz“ erörterten Fall — und durch **not** verneinter Sätze:

Do you call? I do not call.

Did you call? I did not call.

Do not call.

Unterbleiben kann die Umschreibung aus stilistisch-rhetorischen Gründen:

1. If he ran she would run; if he sat she would sit; and meanwhile she would laugh with a heart of glee, though she **heard not** what he said, and **saw not** what he did, and **knew not** what he meant. — 2. Waiters have a peculiar and mysterious power of skimming out of rooms, which other mortals **possess not**. — 3. The musing spirit of a Wordsworth or a Tennyson he (Browning) **partakes not** of. — 4. Oh wonderful creature! How **came you** to enrich the earth? — 5. There would still arise the question — how **came it**?

In festen Wendungen wie:

I doubt not, know not, care not; it avails not, matters not. — What matters (it)? — If I mistake not.

ββ) **To do** kann gebraucht werden, auch im bejahenden Satze aus konstruktivischen Gründen

entweder um Adverbialien bequem einzufügen:

1. It should be remembered that most authors **do**, through a momentary confusion of thought, fall now and then into curious slips in the use of words, and such mistakes do not always get corrected in the proof-reading. — 2. It was morning; and the beautiful Aurora, of whom so much hath been written, said, and sung, **did**, with her rosy fingers, **nip** and **tweak** Miss Pecksniff's nose. — 3. Civil government **does**, by its nature, include much that is mechanical, and must be treated accordingly. — 4. This suggests the question whether the French **do** after all **possess** vigorous colloquialisms answering to ours. — 5. Nevertheless in some cases thought-statement **does** almost necessarily **imply** that the statement is false. —

oder um einen (besonders zeitlichen) Gegensatz hervorzuheben:

6. The first (lover) she **has** liked, the other she **does** like. — 7. I **did** then and **do** now suppose . . . — 8. No one says that Sir Edward Grey **neglects** his duties, or ever **did neglect** them. — 9. With regard to sickness, which fills so large a space in life these mystics (the Christian Scientists) **do**, while the Church **does not**, abide by a spiritual faith. — 10. It is very difficult to assert nowadays whether Judaism **does** or **does not** expect a personal Messiah. —

Aus stilistischen Gründen, um durch Dehnung den Eindruck behaglicher Breite hervorzurufen oder um Satz oder Satztheile rhythmisch abzurunden:

11. The power of the play ('Strife') lies essentially in the fact that the leading figures **do show** creation and are not mere puppets. — 12. Poetry in the true and high sense of the term, as we apply it to Shelley, or Tennyson, or Arnold, John Ruskin **never did achieve**. — 13. Moreover, he (Galsworthy) **does give** his characters an air of reality, **does suggest** that they are like people you **really do meet**. — 14. No debtor **does confess** all his debts, but breaks them gradually to his man of business, factor or benefactor, leading him on from surprise to surprise. — 15. At first sight there was nothing very distressing in these meditations, but they **did distress** him for all that. —

In besonderen Verbindungen, die schon in das Begriffliche hineinspielen:

16. Since that time, the two religions have **done little more than maintain** their ground. — 17. A man must be able to **do something besides stare** at her and **offer** on his knees his uncouth devotion to make a woman like him. — 18. She rather haughtily asked what she **had done but say** a chance word to Lady Fr.

β) Begrifflich.

Zweifeln oder Einwänden gegenüber besteht man auf einer Behauptung, hebt Tatsächliches mit Nachdruck hervor oder fordert, bittet dringender:

1. People **do** marry again. — 2. We may not agree with the reasoning, but it was **meant to** and **did** influence British thought. — 3. Things most **likely** to happen **never do** happen. — 4. **Do** try to come earlier. — 5. I do not mind Mr. Gladstone always having the ace up his sleeve, but I **do** object to his always saying that Providence put it there (Speech).

γ) To do als 'Proverbium',

d. h. in Vertretung der einfachen Zeiten der Vollverba, und zwar — unbetont — um Wiederholung derselben zu vermeiden oder die syntaktische Fügung klarer oder rhythmisch geschmeidiger zu machen, betont, um den Begriff des Verbs nachdrücklich hervorzuheben.

1. Still, no doubt, success **softened** (it **does not** always) Augustus' character. — 2. Our circulation **increased** and has gone on **doing so** every succeeding issue. — 3. "Does your husband drink?" the vicar's wife asks the working-man's wife. "No, ma'am," is her reply. "**Does yours?**" — 4. There was something else that if she did not see the 'nation **did**. — 5. No other English poet **has lived and died** as Gray **did** within the walls of a college.

— 6. No political leader in modern times **obtained** such a hold on the affection and the confidence of a nation as **did** Charles Stewart Parnell on the people of Ireland. — 7. Poetry makes life what light and music **do** the 'stage—strip the one of the false embellishments, and the other of its illusions. — 8. It is in this conception (of philosophy) that Spencer **differs** entirely from the metaphysicians, as **does** his great predecessor Comte, and as, in part, **did** his still greater predecessor Aristotle. — 9. Character **does not** suddenly **change** in middle age, but aims **do**. — 10. More travellers **than** 'do should **visit** the extraordinarily picturesque Republic of Andorra in the Pyrenes. — 11. **Flounder** he no doubt will continue **to do**. — 12. What ideas! **Concealing** them from me as **he has done** so cunningly! (Meredith.)

Bem.: Am Proverbum erkennt man, ob das 1. Partizip verbal oder nominal gedacht ist:

13. **Living as she** (Mrs. J. R. Green) **has done** for years past in the shadow of St. Stephen's, her house has come to be looked upon as the meeting place of all intimately connected with the inner working of Irish politics. — 14. And **satisfying** as it (Science) **does** the demands of the most rigorous logic . . . it is the conclusion we are bound to accept without reserve or qualification.

Dagegen:

15. We chatted, and watched the going down of the sun, and amused ourselves idly, **fermenting as we were**. — 16. My own private opinion is that when Christ extolled the meek and promised them their inheritance, **he was speaking** ironically (as **he often must have been**.)

7. To let

ersetzt als Hilfszeitwort die 1. und 3. Person des Imperativs und bezeichnet Aufforderung, Erlaubnis oder bloße Annahme.

Let me alone. — Let us pray. — Let him say his say.

Die uneigentlichen Hilfszeitwörter

werden nur begrifflich gebraucht und folgen formal in mancher Beziehung den eigentlichen.

must und **ought** haben nur eine Form.

1. Can, could

bezeichnen begrifflich die körperliche und geistige Leistungsfähigkeit = „können“, „verstehen“, „vermögen“ und kommen als Hilfszeitwörter nur in ihrem Verhältnis zu **may**, **might** in Frage.

Sie betonen im Gegensatz zu dem „eventuellen“, bedingten das absolute Können, mit der Verneinung auch die verneinte Möglichkeit (vgl. **may**).

Where **may** he be now? = Wo mag er wohl sein?

Where **can** he be now? = Wo in aller Welt mag er nur stecken?

Daraus ergibt sich die Bedeutung einer gemilderten Aufforderung — ironisch.

1. You **may** well blush; I am glad to see you **can** blush. — 2. A man can restrain his appetites, if he **will**. — 3. Who could be so stupid as not to know? (= Could anybody etc.) — 4. Since the Puritans **could not** be convinced, it was determined that they should be persecuted. — 5. Constitutionally the King **can** do no wrong. — 6. Sujah Dowlah had a large treasure. Allahabad and Corah were so situated that they **might** be of use to him and could be of **none** to the Company. — 7. Do **not** think you **can** make a girl lovely, if you do not make her happy. — 8. You **can** talk a mob into anything; its feelings **may** be — usually are — on the whole, generous and right.

2. Must

bezeichnet einen durch Natur-, Rechts- oder Moralgesetze auferlegten Zwang, sodann eine Notwendigkeit, die zu einer naheliegenden, selbstverständlichen Schlußfolgerung führt — alles positiv wie negativ, Gebot wie Verbot.

Es wird von den meisten Prosaikern nur für die Gegenwart gebraucht — konditional überhaupt nicht.

1. No nation can last, which has made a mob of itself, however generous at heart. It **must** discipline its passions, or they will discipline *it*. — 2. Having no true emotion, we **must** have false emotions dressed up for us to play with. — 3. It shows that the Scots **must** have been then a ferocious and barbarous people. — 4. Let us try, then, whether we cannot get at some clear and harmonious idea (it **must** be harmonious if it is true) of what womanly mind and virtue are in power and office, with respect to man's. — 5. No minister **must** be appointed, no peer created without the consent of the Houses. — 6. Milton's translations were not all the duties of the new secretary. He **must** often serve as interpreter at audiences of foreign envoys. He **must** superintend the semi-official organ. He **must** answer etc.

3. Ought to . . .

ist der Konditionalis des Vollverbuns to owe und bezeichnet eine moralische Pflicht, aber auch, daß etwas als wahrscheinlich eintretend angenommen wird:

You **ought to** know better, to love your neighbours. He **ought to** conquer (= *is likely to c.*).

1. But, of course, they (the friends) stayed too long; it was my fault — I **ought to have** prevented it. — 2. You have a great deal more money than anybody in the world **ought to have**.

4. (To) dare

wird bald als Hilfszeitwort, bald als volles Zeitwort behandelt. Seine formale Behandlung gestattet keinen Schluß darauf, ob es „wagen“ bedeutet oder sich dem „dürfen“, „das Recht haben“ nähert.

1. In a society which **dare not** face or debate ultimate questions, there is neither belief nor disbelief. — 2. 'Mr. Bourassa and his Nationalists', said this politician, 'would be swept away if they **dared to** oppose it, and I don't believe they would **dare oppose** it'. — 3. Holywell Street **dared not** have touched Mr. Long's book; nobody but a respectable bookseller **dare** sell it. —

4. Who dares **confess** that he has never read 'Paradise Lost'? — 5. Ferrer was well known as a man fighting hotly and often injudiciously for intellectual freedom, and that is what the Church **has never dared yield**. — 6. Did we **dare complain** of the dulness of modern verse? — 7. But his (Cromwell's) plan was directly opposed to the feelings of the only class which he **dared not offend**. — 8. Even that stubborn Church, which has held its own against so many governments, scarce **dared to utter** an audible murmur. — 9. There is no thought of restricting the suffrage to males. Nobody proposes such a thing or **would dare propose it**. — 10. What we are, whence we come, whither we go—these are problems which as yet no scientist **dare answer definitely**.

5. To need

ist als Hilfsverbum nur im Präsens verneinter und fragender Sätze gebräuchlich und entspricht dem „brauchen“.

Formal werden Hilfsverbum und Vollverbum nicht unterschieden.

1. It **need not be said**—it **needs not to be said** (bei Thackeray). — 2. Ch. Lamb **would need to be added**. — 3. I **need look** somewhat changed. (Ich sehe wohl etwas verändert aus oder muß wohl e. v. a.) — 4. Baronets **do not need to be careful** about grammar. — 5. It **only needs that** one . . . should stand unseen in the half-darkness . . . — 6. The world knows that Paris **need never have fallen**, could France only have produced one mediocre military genius in this her moment of need. — 7. But the moods must be strong; and the books, **need one add?**, must be of the elect. — 8. You **do not need to be reminded that** . . . — 9. A gutter journalist **may not need go** far from his gutter in order to earn the shekels of Caiaphas and to share the motor car of Iscariot. — 10. **Does a modern nation need to expand** its political boundaries in order to provide for increasing population?

Gelegentliche Hilfszeitwörter.

Die Vollverba

to become	to come	to grow	to fall
to get	to go	to run	to stand

erscheinen oft in ihrer Bedeutung abgeschwächt und übernehmen die Funktion von Hilfszeitwörtern, ohne deren formale Behandlung zu teilen; doch ist dieser Gebrauch auf bestimmte Ausdrücke oder Wendungen beschränkt.

1. It was not always an easy matter for the most irreproachable individual **to become elected** to these societies. — 2. How has it all **come to pass?** — **To come true**, natural, victorious u. a. — 3. This is **coming to be** well understood at the present day. — 4. Women's women, in fiction, **are getting more and more cultured**, logical, athletic, and formidable generally; men's women remain precisely the deliciously wayward and distracting creatures they always were. — 5. Though the Doctor tried hard, and never ceased trying, **to get Charles Darnay set at liberty**, or at least **to get him brought to trial** the public current of the time set too strong and fast for him. — 6. The railway (All-Red Route) **has got to be** the fastest on the Continent. — 7. If Charles Dickens is receiving this year his meed of worship, William Makepeace Thackeray is **not to go unhonoured** and unsung. — 8. The whole theory of the Constitution as it applies to certainly two of the three factors that **go to**

compose it, is so befogged and befuddled in the Radical brain that it calls for some wholesome attempt at elucidation. — 9. She **grew to distinguish** the movement. — 10. **To fall sick**, a victim, a prey u. a. — 11. **To run dry**, wild, mad, short u. a. — 12. The Exchequer, which has to keep both ends of taxation in view, **stands to win** in either case. — A debate **stands adjourned**; **to stand** confessed, in need, in awe (of).

C. Syntax des Zeitworts.

Die Konjugation besteht

I. aus Formen, welche das Satzverhältnis des Zeitworts mittelbar oder unmittelbar anzeigen — **beschränkende Formen**;

II. aus Formen, welche Begriff oder Inhalt des Zeitworts uneingeschränkt hinstellen — **unbeschränkte Formen**;

III. aus einer Mischform.

I. Beschränkende Formen

besitzt das Englische zur Bezeichnung von

1. Person und Numerus,
2. Genus,
3. Tempus,
4. Modus.

1. Person und Numerus

sind weniger an besonderen Formen als syntaktisch zu erkennen. Die Form auf **s (es)** ist die einzige, allen Vollverben gemeinsame, welche Person oder Zahl unmittelbar anzeigt.

2. Genus (*Voice*).

Das **Passiv** besitzt keine ihm ausschließlich zukommende Form. Zu seiner Bildung wird **to be** (Copula) verwendet, in der Umgangssprache auch **to get**.

Das **Aktiv** verwendet für alle Verben **to have**.

Aktiv und Passiv haben **shall, should** — **will, would** gemeinsam.

3. Tempus (*Tense*).

a) Gegenwart.

Das **Präsens** ist an sich „zeitlos“ und erhält seinen zeitlichen Charakter erst durch besondere Begriffswörter, Umschreibungen oder (und) durch den Zusammenhang.

Das **Präsens** kann bei lebhafter Schilderung an Stelle des **Präteritums** treten — das **historische Präsens**.

1. Fortune **favours** the brave (zeitlos). — 2. I **go to town** every morning (zeitlos) und I **go** (I'll go, I'm going) to town **next week**. — 3. Dear Mr. Pinch, I **am** your friend **from to-night**. I **am** always your friend **from this**

time. — 4. He **dines** with me **next Sunday**. — 5. **I forget** (= no longer remember) both name and author. — 6. . . . which I had never heard and now **forget**. — 7. It is what is done now, not what is done **next year**, which will decide the fate of the country at the next election. — 8. The Greeks **maintain** their ranks; the Persians **press** on; Leonidas **falls**, and the battle **rages** fiercely.

Bem. *The letter is written* kann sowohl *is being written* als auch *has been written* bedeuten.

b) Vergangenheit.

Das Präteritum (*Past*) verlegt einen zeitlichen Vorgang in die Vergangenheit; sein Fortwirken in der Gegenwart wird durch besondere Zeitadverbien oder den Zusammenhang ausgeschlossen.

Das Perfekt stellt den Vorgang als unter irgendeinem Gesichtspunkt bis in die Gegenwart fortdauernd hin (*Perfect Present*), doch auch die Tatsächlichkeit des Geschehens, unabhängig vom Zeitverhältnis:

1. We **have** almost **forgotten** that we **were** once barbarians. — 2. We **have known** him **these** three years. — 3. Clive **was** in consequence accused by his enemies, and **has been** accused by historians, of disobeying his instructions. — 4. 30,000 teachers **have been** enrolled in the active forces of France. Of this number 2,057 **fell** in the first year of war (1914). — 5. **Since** Mrs. Orr's biography of Browning **was published** a good deal of interesting matter **has appeared**. — 6. Of Hall Caine it may be said that he **took** the world by storm twenty years ago and that he **has held** himself strongly entrenched in its interest and affection **ever since**. — 7. For sixty years there **has been** a needle in Berlin, and when that needle **has pointed** to peace there **has been** no war. — 8. No other writer, ancient or modern, **had** Goethe's power of combining philosophy with art. No other writer **has been** equipped as he **was** equipped. — 9. The truth is that English education began in the monasteries and **has never escaped** from its original groove. — 10. Byron **had** a vogue of fashion, and he **has paid** for it with a consequent neglect. — 11. But by the end of that century (XVIIth) the Reformation as a force in politics **has declined**, and in the eighteenth century the ruling influence is throughout the New World. — 12. This sketch of Stepniak's political and social point of view by no means exhausts the interests of the book. He **knew** the Russian peasantry as **has** no other man save Tolstoy.

Wenn die Beziehung auf Vergangenheit oder Gegenwart gleichgültig oder unwesentlich ist, so tritt auch der Unterschied weniger scharf hervor. Doch gewinnt neuerdings das Perfekt auf Kosten des *Past* an Raum.

Bem. Der Zusatz von *in the past* hindert nicht den Gebrauch des Perfekts.

13. If she (England) **has dominated** the commerce of the world in the **past**, it is because her unconquered navy **has dominated**, and **continues to dominate**, all the avenues of commerce. — 14. Nevertheless, we do not think that the general attitude or policy of the National Union of Teachers **has in the past** been a wise one. — 15. **In the past** our Army **has been** a separate profession, with a peculiar glitter and pride of its own.

Der Infinitiv des Perfekts

bezeichnet da, wo es sich um ein Wollen, Vorhaben oder Erwarten handelt, die bloße Absicht und deutet das Unerfüllte an.

1. Probably Cromwell would have been wise to have refrained from giving help to either (wenn er beiden seine Hilfe vorenthalten hätte). — 2. She would have given the world to have taken him by the hand, to have reasoned with him, persuaded him, enjoyed him, teased him out of his project: to have overcome him . . . and to have redeemed her father at the cost of herself. (Wenn sie . . . hätte können. — 3. But I know some family secrets they wouldn't care to have told, young as I am. — 4. It would have been impossible for Wesley to have wielded the power he did, had he not shared the follies and extravagances as well as the enthusiasm of his disciples. — 5. I had hoped perhaps to have found him here. — 6. I should have liked to have been by. — 7. A large and representative deputation was to have been received by the Minister. (Der Empfang fand nicht statt. — 8. All my happiness was to have been found in the continual pursuit of this end.

Das Plusquamperfekt.

Wie durch das Präsens von *to have* das Perfekt zum Präsensperfekt gestempelt wird, so dient das Präteritum von *to have* dazu, eine Handlung vom Standpunkt der Vergangenheit als abgeschlossen zu bezeichnen (*Past Perfect*). Die zeitliche Beziehung kommt mittelbar (syntaktisch) oder unmittelbar (durch Adverbia) zum Ausdruck.

1. The Nabob **had feared** and **hated** the English, even while he was still able to oppose to them their French rivals. — 2. When a fond mother told Dr. Johnson how difficult was the piece which her daughter **had just played** on the piano, the grim critic said: "Madam, I would it **had been** impossible".

Statt des Plusquamperfekts findet sich auch das einfache Präteritum:

3. Bute **had** indeed, a short time after he came of age, been chosen to fill a vacancy which . . . — 4. Clive **was** several months in India before he became acquainted with a single family. Vgl. Clive **had been** only a few months in the army when intelligence arrived that peace had been concluded between Great Britain and France.

c) Zukunft.

Shall und *will* werden im Behauptungssatze anders gebraucht als im Fragesatze. Ihre nie ganz zurücktretende Eigenbedeutung hindert eine strenge Festlegung des grammatischen Gebrauchs (vgl. S. 14) und zwingt zu Umschreibungen verschiedener Art.

Die Antwort auf eine Frage erfolgt mit dem in der Frage gebrauchten Hilfszeitwort, in der indirekten Rede steht das in der direkten gebrauchte.

Will you come? — I will.

Shall you come? — I shall.

He said he would come. — I will come.

He said he should come. — I shall come.

Bem. Der „korrekte“ Gebrauch ergibt sich im Einzelnen aus dem im Anhang abgedruckten Gespräch.

Andere Ausdrucksformen.

Statt des Futurs kann bei einigen Verben der Bewegung auch die „progressive“ Form stehen, wenn das Zeitverhältnis durch entsprechende Adverbia oder durch den Zusammenhang klargestellt wird.

Zur genaueren Bezeichnung der (näheren oder ferneren) Zukunft dienen

to be going to . . . , about to . . . , on the point of . . .

1. "Did you ever go to Winton's at all?" she said quickly. "I am so sorry. The Duchess's maid **was going** there", said Julie hurriedly, "and she went for me." (= wollte gerade hingehen). — 2. "Lady Henry says: I may help you with the bazaar. . . . But, Evelyn—I'm **not coming**. . . . No, I'm **not coming**. . . . She says I may come—but she doesn't mean it." (= ich werde nicht hinkommen). — 3. "At Calais I will look after you if you will allow me." "You **are crossing** to-night?" she said vaguely. — 4. For the British Empire this Indian massacre (1919) **is going to** be the test — wird (demnächst, nunmehr) sein. — 5. Your ladies are always **going to go** and never do go.

Das 2. Futur (*Future Perfect*) bezeichnet vollendete Handlung vom Standpunkt der Zukunft.

1. It will be a Coronation in superlatives. Nothing like it **will ever have been** known. — 2. In two years from the time I began writing I **shall have more than finished** the second part, then I reckon a year for polishing etc.

Vgl. die Hauptzeiten in folgenden Sätzen:

1. There **is** also evidence that such mischief as **has been** wrought since the war **began is** chiefly due to spirits, and in particular to whisky, a beverage which in many parts of these islands **has only come** into common use in modern times. — 2. The grip of the extremist on his party **has hardened, is hardening, and will harden** further with every increase in the complexity of modern life. — 3. The English public **are** quite as raw and undiscerning on subjects of political economy since the nation **has been** converted to free-trade, as they **were** before. — 4. "My brother **is** twenty-five—and he **is** a captain already," . . . "He **has been** very lucky. He **saw** some service on the Indian frontier, and he **has been** through the South African War without a scratch. Twice he **was** mentioned in dispatches and they gave him a job at Durban."

4. Modus.

a) Der Indikativ

stellt etwas als tatsächlich vorhanden oder wirklich geschehen hin (*fact statement*), nimmt aber zu dem Inhalt keinerlei Stellung.

Die einfachen Zeiten der Vollverba verwenden für die direkte Frage und die gewöhnliche Verneinung die entsprechenden Formen von **to do**. Dieses tritt häufig auch da ein, wo eine Aussage gegen erfolgten oder erwarteten Widerspruch aufrecht erhalten wird oder stärker hervorgehoben werden soll. Vgl. Hilfszeitwort: *to do*.

b) Imperativ.

Für die direkte Aufforderung hat das Englische nur eine Form, die, wenn verneint, ebenfalls mit *to do* umschrieben wird. Ist die Aufforderung für einen dritten bestimmt oder schließt der Auffordernde andere mit ein, so tritt *let* mit Objekt vor den Infinitiv.

Speak; speak you; 'you . . . 'speak; be silent. Do not (don't) speak; don't you care; do not be silent; never you mind. Let him speak; let us speak. — 'Do speak (so sprich doch).

Lor, Miss Truda, **never you make a face!** You might grow so.

c) Der Konjunktiv

hat als Modus zur Bezeichnung des nur Erstrebten, (Gewünschten, Erwarteten oder unter Bedingungen Eintretenden an Formen nur **be, were** und die unflektierte 3. Person des Präsens Singular.

Der Gebrauch der letzteren gehört der literarischen Sprache an und dem Kanzleistil.

Deny it who can. — **Happen** what might. — **Come** what come may. — Each for himself, and the Devil **take** the hindmost. — Long live the King! — Grammar **be hanged!** — God preserve you! — **Be** that as it may. — **Be** it ever so good. — **Suffice** it to say.

1. **Stand out** those three boys, who have so shamefully misled me! — 2. **Whether** it be so or not, **whether** the motive **were** mixed or unmixed, the honour paid to Mr. Bridges (the Poet-Laureate) is an honour paid to poetry. — 3. It may well be asked if Europe **be** still Christian, or if it **has** ever been. — 4. Alas, is it not natural that whatever lives **try** to keep itself living? (Carlyle). — 5. In his (defendant's) case the sentence is that **he pay** a fine to the King of £500 and that **he remain** in custody until that amount is paid. (Court of Justice).

II. Unbeschränkte (nominale) Formen.

Infinitiv.

Der „reine“ Infinitiv kann nur da verwendet werden, wo er in seiner verbalen Natur unzweideutig hervortritt; sonst steht er mit **to**, welches aber seine präpositionale Bedeutung nie ganz verleugnet.

Bem. Die Fälle, in denen der reine Infinitiv als verbaler Satzteil genügt, sind naturgemäß beschränkt. Vorwiegend handelt es sich um eine mehr oder weniger erwartete Erweiterung des **Objekts**, welches zugleich als **Subjekt** des „infiniten“ Prädikats auftritt. Ist diese Zusammenziehung aus äußeren oder inneren Gründen unmöglich oder unthunlich, so werden andere Ausdrucksformen gewählt, welche „bestimmter“ sind oder selbständiger.

a) Der reine Infinitiv steht

α) als (aktive) Objektsergänzung folgender Transitiva, soweit sie eine sinnliche Wahrnehmung ausdrücken:

to hear, see, watch, view, notice, behold, mark, discern, espy, find, feel, know; to observe schwankt.

1. We have **observed** a man **laugh** at the sight of an old lady knocked down by a cab-horse; that man had humour; seen aright, seen with sufficient cruelty and Jovian detachment, the incident was funny. -- 2. An archetype of those who fail, let him still sit **watching** the gulls **fly** screaming through the air, and **mark** the fish **spring** and fall back again with a loud crash, in the still waters of the tropic beach. -- 3. I have never **known** her **make** a mistake. -- 4. I once **watched** the sun **rise** on London Bridge and never forgot it. -- 5. Most of the famous writers of whom I have been speaking in this series I have often **seen** and **heard** **speak** in public and in private, but I cannot be said to have known them as friends. -- 6. I **noticed** several other men **come** in at the gate. -- 7. I felt the burning tears **run** down my face.

Tritt die sinnliche Wahrnehmung zurück, wie es bei *to find, to feel, to know, to observe, to see* möglich ist, so wird *to* hinzugesetzt:

8. Amelia thought his diamond shirt-pin (which she had **known** him **to wear** before) the prettiest ornament ever seen. -- 9. If I **found** him **to disappoint** me in all these particulars, I should feel it my right to consider the authorities at his school somewhat to blame, because . . . -- 10. Tom's faith in his master remains unshaken for a long time; but his eyes are opened at last, and he **sees** him **to be** a consummate hypocrite and villain. -- 11. The productions represent the output of a part of the mind which we intuitively **feel** **to be** a better part than that which earns our bread and butter; or rather, they represent the activity of minds which we feel **to have** got faculties, noble faculties -- which we do not possess.

Beim Passiv kann *to* in keinem Falle fehlen:

12. A man of parts and fashion **is** often **seen** **to smile** but seldom **heard** **to laugh**.

Infinitiv — 1. Partizip.

Soll die Handlung in ihrem Verlaufe stärker hervortreten, so wird das 1. Partizip gebraucht:

13. Of one fact we are quite sure, and that is, we shall never see Turkey **openly supporting** Austria. -- 14. The writer once **heard** a Frenchman **explaining** to his family and guests that the British constitution divided Queen Victoria into two parts. -- 15. A new generation of workers **is seen** **replacing** the old, workers of a quality unfamiliar to the middle-aged and elderly men who still manage our great businesses and political affairs. -- 16. One night when he was there it rained heavily, and he **found** the rain **streaming** through the roof on to his bed. -- 17. We **find** him **being** inexpensively funny in the description of a drunken man, and **labouring** after the merely facetious. -- 18. Napoleon would humble England. . . . But he **finds** himself **conquering** Germany and at last **invading** Russia. -- 19. I had never **heard** one (a coffin) **making**.

β) nach *to make, bid, let, help,*

doch nur, wenn sie aktivisch sind und auch dann mit Einschränkungen.

to make und *to bid* gestatten *to* in gehobenem Stil und aus rhythmischen Gründen:

1. We have just enough religion to **make us hate**, but not enough to **make us love** one another. — 2. What **made** you laugh? — 3. What **made** you to swear to fatal vows? — 4. We **hate** him come: he was **bidden** to come. — 5. Money **makes** the mare to go. — 6. If he (the spiritual master) can **make himself** be believed, he can be all powerful over those who listen. — 7. The reviewer of this appalling book is not to be envied, for the mere perusal of the account which Mr. Hardenburg gives is enough to **make** the imagination reel and the gorge to rise. — 8. Our stern and Spartan mothers have sent us into the world without a shield, and have not always **bidden** us to return.

To let ist im Passiv ungebräuchlich, außer in fester Verbindung mit den (einsilbigen) Verben *fall, go, fly, pass, slip*, mit denen es einen Begriff bildet; *let wit* wird nur aktivisch gebraucht.

9. We **let** him be punished. — 10. **Let** him speak out. — 11. Does he **let slip** an exquisite phrase? — 12. I didn't **let wit** that I was taking notice.

To help tritt ohne to zum unmittelbar folgenden aktiven Infinitiv. Sonst schwankt der Gebrauch; häufig entscheidet das rhythmische Verhältnis zwischen den aufeinander folgenden Wörtern (*"contact"*).

13. His first books were novels, which he sold to **help support** his widowed mother. — 14. H. Paul does not **help us** to realise what the woman (G. Eliot) was when she still walked to and fro upon the earth, and still less to **know** her truly as an artist. — 15. Society had to coin the chilly abstraction, humanitarianism, to **help cope** with our enterprising and greedy times. — 16. **Help me** to seek that unknown land, **help me** to see the shrine, **help me** to feel the hidden hand that ever holdeth mine. (Dichtung.)

γ) Nach begrifflichem, Wunsch oder Willen ausdrückendem to have, nach **had better, sooner, rather** und nach **rather than**:

1. As we **would have** our descendants judge us, so ought we to judge our fathers. — 2. You **had better get** a porter's knot and carry trunks. — 3. These two circumstances **had better have been** separated. — 4. Certainly in time of war there will be such short-comings with the best of armies which one **would rather not have** happen. — 5. This editor, apparently, **would have had the English Revolution** of 1688 end as the Revolutions of Spain and Naples ended in our days. („Hätte gern enden sehen.“) — 6. The nation has only to wish for a boon to **have the President (Wilson) grant** it. — 7. If a customer calls in a quiet hour **have him understand** that he is by way of being an intruder.

rather than: — 8. He (Charles I.) **struggled, he evaded, he hesitated, he tried every shift, rather than** again face the representatives of his injured people. — 9. „In 1887,“ he said, „Lord Randolph Churchill **resigned rather than assent** to the proposed Estimates for the army and the navy. (Speech).

Bem. Dieses *rather than* + Inf. ohne to steht adverbiall außerhalb der Konstruktion und bedeutet eine starke Verneinung, eine völlige Ablehnung.

δ) Unabhängig in rhetorischen Fragen oder Ausrufen:

1. Why not **join forces**? — 2. Why not **have brought him**? — 3. **Settle with us!** — 4. **I affront the Colonel!** Doch auch: You to call me wicked! — 5. My nephew **marry a tragedy queen!** — 6. Any one **second that?** (Ist

einer dafür?) — 7. How reconcile the noble heritage of German poetry and philosophy with the spirit of its latter-day possessors, Goethe with Bismarck?

e) Als reiner Verbalbegriff außerhalb jeder Konstruktion:
Where talk was supremely valued, he would plunge in, sink or swim.

b) Der Infinitiv mit to.

Formales.

α) Pro-Infinitive.

In leichter Prosa und besonders in der Unterhaltung tritt **to** ohne Infinitiv auf, wenn er sich leicht aus dem Zusammenhang ergänzt. — **To** ist unbetont, enklitisch.

1. "Do you like dogs?" — "I **used to**. Perhaps some day I shall again." (Ausspr.: *jʊst*). — 2. They (the Unionists) took it (the tax on food) up because Mr. Chamberlain **asked them to**. — 3. The difference is that the European seems to live because **he has to**, and the Canadian because **he wants to**. — 4. Surely you couldn't be so selfish as to wish him **not to**. — 5. Everybody who has been out here (in the trenches), whether he **wanted to** or not, has been obliged to think. — 6. Even with you to help me I dare say I should make many mistakes and do ridiculous things without **meaning to**.

β) Split Infinitive.

To kann durch unbetontes Adverb und Zwischensätze von seinem Infinitiv getrennt werden, wenn es nur diesen bestimmen soll und durch Umstellung die Klarheit des Satzes gefährdet wird. Auch rhythmische Gründe können für die „Zerspaltung“ sprechen.

Häufig ist sie daher formal wie logisch unvermeidlich.

1. In 1792 Wilberforce, supported by Pitt, carried a motion **to gradually abolish** the slave-trade. — 2. I cannot conscientiously recommend anybody with whom I am on friendly terms **to deliberately make** himself dull and uncomfortable. — 3. There is enough legitimate work for them (clergymen) in purely religious regions **to more than occupy** all their time during the whole course of their lives. — 4. She called to the landlady in timorous tones **to please bring** up the tea-kettle. — 5. The announcement is such as **to, if it were possible, still more confirm** us in our resolve of doing our full duty in the present emergency. — 6. Such terms are useless **to a speculator**, and can only be fulfilled by a lessee who is ready **to really develop** the land.

γ) Wiederholung von to.

Sind mehrere Infinitive mit **to** nebengeordnet, so wird **to** nur dann wiederholt, wenn die Klarheit es erfordert oder rhetorische oder rhythmische Gründe dafür sprechen.

1. An act was passed **to regulate** the burden of slave-ships and otherwise diminish the horrors of the middle passage. — 2. The Anglo-Saxons, indeed, like the modern Germans, preferred **to translate, rather than to**

borrow foreign terms. (Das zweite *to* könnte fehlen.) — 3. Nearly all men, but especially bookish men, require the healthy common-sense influence of women to guide and sweetly order their lives.

Syntaktisches.

Der Infinitiv mit *to* kann selbständig und unselbständig, Subjekt und Objekt, Attribut und Prädikat sein, endlich adverbial gebraucht werden.

1. Der Infinitiv mit *to* als Subjekt:

1. *To err* is human, *to forgive* divine. — 2. With new claims of power such as these before them, *to have stood* still would have been ruin. — 3. Of late years there has been a sort of papacy to reject whose dogma, is to become anathema. — 4. *To have pitied* him would have been a mere impertinence. — 5. *To end* here would have left "the Scholar Gipsy" a well-nigh perfect delight. — 6. This was the man whom *to sway* had been her darling ambition, whom *to love* was her great sin, whom *to know*, as in this moment she seemed to know him, her bitter punishment. — 7. For centuries it has been a tradition in the Prussian nobility for its sons *to serve* as officers in the Army.

Bem. In Satz 2, 4 und 5 bekommt der Infinitiv durch folgendes *would have* den Sinn eines (irrealen) Bedingungssatzes; vgl. Konditionalis.

2. Der Infinitiv mit *to* als Objekt:

a) im weitesten Sinn, nicht nur als Inhalt, sondern auch als Grund, Ursache, Ziel und Folge einer Tätigkeit oder eines Zustandes.

He intended to come. — We hope to see him. — I don't know what to do, how to write. — I have to work; I gave him to understand. — I am sorry to tell you. We are glad to hear news.

1. The misfortune was serious. But of all generals Frederic understood best *how to repair* defeat, and Daun understood least *how to improve* victory. — 2. But one of her sisters showed her *how to write*; and, before she was fourteen, she (Fr. Burney) began to find pleasure in reading. — 3. There is a story that Milton was offered to be continued in his secretaryship.

Bem. Nach *to know* fehlt *how* nie; es steht gelegentlich nach *to understand*, *to show*, *to learn*, *to teach*.

Subjekt oder Objekt.

In der Passivkonstruktion kann es zweifelhaft sein, ob der Infinitiv des Passivs — wie vorher bei 2,3 — als Objekt aufzufassen ist oder einem Nominativ mit Infinitiv nachgebildet ist.

1 Ordered by the House of Commons *to be printed*. (Gedruckt im Auftrage). — 2. It is further established . . . that a pledge for its continuance (the slave trade), had one been attempted to be given, must have been completely void. (Speech). — 3. The simplest words are used, and they are the exact words for the expression of the meaning that was meant to be conveyed. — 4. Another leading member of the Opposition has also told us that if strategic positions had been sought to be occupied by His Majesty's

troops their occupation would have been forcibly resisted by the Ulster Volunteers. (Speech). — 5. The Order how the Psalter is appointed to be read. (Book of Common Prayer.)

β) Tritt der Infinitiv mit **to** prädikativisch zu einem Substantiv, welches zugleich direktes Objekt des Satzes ist, so entsteht der sog. Akkusativ mit Infinitiv.

Er wird verwendet bei den Verben des Wollens, Meinens oder Sagens, ist aber nicht bei allen zulässig.

Bei **to say, answer, reply** ist er unmöglich, ebenso nach **to hope; nach to tell** nur, wenn es „befehlen“ bedeutet, nach **to think**, wenn **to be** + Nomen folgt oder folgen kann. — Doch wird **to be said to** — als Nom. mit Inf. gebraucht für „sollen“ = sagen: von . . .

1. **This then, I believe to be** — will you not **admit it to be** — the woman's true place and power. — 2. Darwin expressed regret for the loss he considered himself to have suffered by excluding the influence of music and poetry from his laborious life. — 3. Each paragraph, each sentence, we may almost say, each phrase, seems to be the last which a reader would look (*look = expect*) to follow the preceding. — 4. The ancients supposed the earth to be flat like a disk. — 5. I wish you to see that both well-directed moral training and well-chosen reading lead to the possession of a power over the ill-guided and illiterate. — 6. The author has something to say which he perceives to be true and useful.

Bei präpositionalem Objekt

nur in einer beschränkten Zahl von Fällen:

1. Indeed we look to Uganda to become in the near future as popular a holiday resort as the Tyrol. — 2. I don't know of anybody to go to it. (Meines Wissens geht keiner hin.) — 3. How is it possible for a Foreign Minister to carry out his duties effectively unless he can rely upon the support of the United Empire to back him up in any action he may consider necessary? — 4. Of stimulus we have more than enough: it is to the poet of all men that we look to spiritualize the grossness of life and to console us for its sorrow. — 5. There was no boat left, and in consequence the two trawlers had to approach each other sufficiently near to allow of a rope to be thrown from one to the other, and in that weather, and in the dark and the falling snow.

For — to.

For + Objekt mit Infinitiv ermöglicht den bequemen Anschluß von Objektserweiterungen; die so entstehende Wortgruppe kann auch als (logisches) Subjekt des Hauptsatzes dienen. Vgl. Präp. *for*.

1. Leave has been given for a statue to be erected to him in Westminster Abbey. (Die Errichtung ist gestattet worden). — 2. For a nation to prevent decadence she must produce men of such physique, intellect and character as will ensure the continuance of her greatness. (Will eine N . . . so muß sie . . .) — 3. The Shakespeare-Bacon controversy has now raged sufficiently long for progress to be reported. — 4. "If he (Strafford) did not faithfully insist for the common liberty of the subject to be preserved whole and entire", it was thus he closed one of his speeches on the Petition, "it was his desire that he might be set as a beacon on a hill for all men else

to wonder at". — 5. It is impossible for a battle to have been more decisively lost. — 6. For education to be effective its chief work must be to build up character. — 7. There seemed to grow within me a conviction that it was absolutely unnatural and impossible for there ever to be any conflict between England and Germany.

3. Der Infinitiv mit to als Attribut:

1. Honesty is a **strong** staff to lean upon. — 2. It is the glory of Trinity (College) that she has an abundance of famous men from whom to choose. — 3. Cromwell was not **one** to talk and not to act. — 4. The first ambition to **awake** in him (Hobbes) was that of the scholar. — 5. A Dictionary of quotations is a **book to read in**, not through. — 6. England and Germany have **nothing to fight about**, have no **prize to fight for**, and have no **place to fight in**. (Speech.) — 7. The fellow here to **interrupt us!** Vgl. Inf. ohne to. — 8. The king to **visit Biarritz**. (Headline = Der bevorstehende Besuch.) — Other volumes **to follow**. — House **to let**. — Room enough and to spare.

So kann der Infinitiv mit to zu einem Partizip des Futurs werden, aktiv und passiv; wenn passiv, kann er sogar seinem Substantiv vorangehen.

1. We do not recall any chair of Geography in the Universities — soon to **number 15** — of these islands. — 2. Will **soldiers taken** from the proletariat, and **presently to return** to the proletariat, obey orders when commanded to fire on them? — 3. The book describes the work **done and to be done** in agricultural organisation. — 4. The facts that he (a man) will die and that his body will decay, are facts which complete in outline the **changes to be hereafter gone through** by him. — 5. Distinctions and oppositions are the breath of freedom and moral life. They are, no doubt, distinctions *to be overcome*, but between *to be overcome* and *overcome* there is all the world of difference. — 6. One of **the most to be dreaded** (travelling companions) is the old maid who takes up her position in front of you, and asks you point blank if you are prepared to meet your Maker. — 7. Our ever-lamented, never-to-be-forgotten Queen. — The never-to-be-sufficiently-hated War of Partition.

To read — to be read.

Attributiv gebraucht bezeichnet der aktive Infinitiv transitiver Verba die allgemeine Eignung, der passive die Notwendigkeit des Handelns im gerade gegebenen Falle. Jener entspricht daher dem eigentlich attributiven, dieser dem prädi-kativen Verhältnis.

1. The book is most emphatically **one to be read**. — 2. It is a remarkable book, **a book to read and to remember**. — 3. We have said enough to show that the exhibition as a whole is **one to be visited**. — 4. The collection of original etchings . . . is assuredly **one to visit**. (Lohnt einen B.) — 5. A more serious defect is a dearth in Thackeray of women **to love and to honour**.

Bem. Der aktive Infinitiv im passiven Sinn hat sich „erhalten“ fast immer bei **to blame** und immer bei **to seek** im Sinne von *to be wanting in sthg.*

6. If the nation is lethargic, **who is to blame?** — 7. Perhaps Anglo-Saxon authors **are to seek** in this respect; but in France, where everything

that relates to woman is appreciated at its true value, the reverse is the case. — 8. Nor, with all his Latinities (the supposed excessive proportion of which is grossly exaggerated) **was** Browne **to seek** in the vulgar tongue. (War ebenso tüchtig.)

4. Der Infinitiv mit **to** als Prädikat oder Prädikatskern (doch vgl. Satzsyntax):

To see is to believe.

1. And now I must repeat one thing I said in the last lecture: namely, that to use books rightly, **was to go** to them for help: **to appeal** to them, when our own knowledge and power of thought failed: **to be led** by them into wider sight, — purer conception — than our own. — 2. The man's work for his own home is **to secure** its maintenance, progress and defence; the woman's **to secure** its order, comfort, and loveliness.

5. Der Infinitiv mit **to** adverbial

kann die verschiedensten logischen Beziehungen zum Hauptsatz ausdrücken: Absicht, Zweck, Ziel, Bedingung, Folge, auch ganz außerhalb der Satzkonstruktion stehen:

1. The chief nurseries and homes, **so to speak**, of slipshod English are the daily papers. — 2. **To talk** like that! (Wie kann man so reden!) — 3. To be sure, to wit, to proceed, to judge from . . . — 4. Bentham's individualism — every man **to count** for one and no man for more — gave them (the middle classes) an aim. — 5. Montaigne could not understand how any man could hold an opinion **so fiercely as to burn** another at the stake, because he did not agree with him, and nowadays we are all of Montaigne's opinion. — 6. The English are a race apart. No Englishman is **too low to have** scruples: no Englishman is **high enough to be** free from their tyranny. (B. Shaw.) — 7. M. Nobel made dynamite **to blow** men up and founded prizes for those who teach humanity not to use it for that purpose. — 8. Both nations, **to start with**, may have little to reproach themselves with on that score. — 9. **To look** at the labourer not as he is, but as he tends to be, it will appear that one current of events is carrying him to a better, and another to a worse, fortune. — 10. **Any woman to express** such views (wife-beating!) must be, to say the least, of a very coarse grain. (Um . . . zu äußern, muß . . .) — 11. **To see** them, you **would suppose** there was nothing to look at and no one to speak with (wenn ihr sie seht).

Try and learn.

And learn steht statt des Objektsinfinitivs **to learn**. *Try* und *learn* verschmelzen zu einem Begriff und stellen eine besondere „Aktionsart“ des zweiten Verbums dar.

Der Gebrauch beschränkt sich auf einsilbige Verba und bei diesen auf Infinitiv und Imperativ:

1. Wait and see (Abwarten!) — 2. The Government is still determined **to try and force** through Parliament this Session the Bill for the Disestablishment and Disendowment of the church in Wales. — 3. When first I was put into prison some people advised me **to try and forget** who I was. Dagegen: Now I am advised by others **to try on my release to forget** that I have ever been in a prison at all. — 4. It is the merest audacity **to come and talk** about thieves bringing a bad name on the school! Don't let me ever hear these tales again. — 5. Let me **try and summarize** in the briefest possible

way, the various dissentient opinions expressed on both sides. — 6. Everything which another man would have hidden, everything the publication of which would have made another man go and hang himself, that he (Boswell) has told about himself.

Die Partizipien.

Formales.

Als nominaladjektivische Form des Verbalbegriffs sind die Partizipien einfach oder zusammengesetzt, die einfachen ansich zeitlos und geschlechtslos:

calling — called.

Zeit und Geschlecht werden durch die Hinzufügung der Partizipien von *to have* und *to be* kenntlich gemacht:

having called — being called — having been called.

Die einfachen Formen sind zugleich adjektivisch (attributivisch wie prädikativisch) und verbal, die zusammengesetzten nur prädikativisch und nur verbal.

Zeitlich betrachtet — im Sinne des Konjugationsschemas (s. S. 3) — gehören

calling — being called

der Gegenwart an,

having called — having been called

der Vergangenheit; für die Zukunft ist ein Ersatz durch die Präsensinfinitive mit *to* in beschränktem Umfang vorhanden.

Geschlechtlich betrachtet sind

being called — having been called

passivische Formen.

Syntaktisches.

Die Partizipien gehören entweder attributivisch zum Substantiv (Substantiversatz), dann sind sie verbunden, oder sie gehören prädikativisch zu einem besonderen Substantiv als ihrem Subjekt, dann sind sie unverbunden, satzbildend.

In beiden Fällen können sie zur Satzverkürzung dienen und logische Beziehungen zum Hauptsatz enthalten.

Das 1. Partizip.

a) Verbunden.

α) Nominal—adjektivisch:

An amusing story; a law-abiding nation; a pleasure-hunting fellow.

β) Verbal—partizipial:

1. The heirs of **the century now closing** stand on a vantage ground never reached in any previous age. — 2. Every one knows that the Bill cannot

be carried by the Parliament now being chosen. — 3. Nevertheless some knowledge and twenty years' practical experience of it convince me that, of all expedients being discussed, none has so few drawbacks and so many advantages. — 4. He went away vowing vengeance. — 5. It has been said by some cynic that we spend the first half of our lives anticipating to-morrow, and the second half trying to recall yesterday. — 6. Knowing nothing, they (the demagogues) attack everything. — 7. To remain sitting; to set a house burning; to send one flying.

Das (formale) Subjekt ergänzt sich leicht:

8. Now, by chance, idly turning the leaves of a volume . . ., it (?) cried out to me again, bringing back the time when I had first heard it. — 9. If having done his duty, such applause comes his (the critic's) way, so much the better for him. — 10. While educating the young it may be said that the teacher's chief aim should be to stimulate interest in work which otherwise may be merely a distasteful task.

Vgl. auch in Überschriften:

Forcing the Dardanelles. — Lighting London-Streets in Fog.

b) Unverbunden

oder „absolut“: die sog. Partizipialkonstruktion. Das Partizip ist Prädikatsnomen zu einem besonderen Subjekt:

1. I am continually remarking that men who write well have agreeable voices — the voice being a sort of index to sense of rhythm and style. — 2. The king having already mentioned Delhi (for the Coronation), probably no change will be made.

Eine andere Form der Partizipialkonstruktion ist:

3. As for Ireland being an independent nation, we all know that that will never happen so long as the British empire exists. — 4. I believe the Germans are the most submissive people on the face of the globe; and as for being aroused they have not the capacity for it. — 5. The testator devised the Ardmore estate in trust for his eldest son for life, with remainder to his male issue in fee, whom failing to testator's other sons, according to seniority.

Das Subjekt schwebt nur vor:

6. The Greeks, who have so deeply influenced the world by their civilisation, were never a nation, seeing that they were essentially opposed to any political union. — 7. Leaving the forces of disorder out of account, neither of the great parties (Whigs and Tories) can claim that they have received an unequivocal vote of confidence. — 8. The toast was drunk standing. — 9. Supposing a phonetic system could be established to suit all, would not the inevitable changes in pronunciation soon render it obsolete? On the whole, is the game worth the candle?

Bem. So sind Partizipien wie *during*, *notwithstanding*, *considering* zu Präpositionen oder (und) Konjunktionen geworden; s. diese.

Das Partizip „schwebt in der Luft“ (*is hanging*) — selten in der guten Prosa:

10. Being Sunday we had service on deck. — Coming nearer, the shores were seen to be wooded. — 11. Arriving at correct judgments on disputed questions, much depends on the attitude of mind we preserve while listening to, or taking part in, the controversy . . .

Das 2. Partizip

dient zugleich zur Bildung aktiver und passiver Zeiten; s. Konjugation.

So hat es auch als selbständiges Wort in gewissen Verbindungen aktiven Sinn oder wird aktivisch empfunden.

a) Passivisch.

Adjektivisch: α) Reines Eigenschaftswort:

1. The allied powers; the least read book. — 2. This is a very well got-up volume. — 3. Europe rubbed astonished eyes, for the despised race (the Bulgars) had charged with the bayonet.

β) Eigenschaftswort und Partizip oder Verbaladjektiv:

1. A stolen horse. — 2. A watched pot never boils, they say, and a watched-for thief has a way of not putting in his appearance. — 3. To these must be added a number of air-ships built or building. — 4. Derivation . . . necessarily alters the meaning of the derived word. — 5. The bill had its desired effect. — 6. Childhood has no forebodings; but then, it is soothed by no memories of outlived sorrows. — 7. There I found . . . Mrs. Creakle with an opened letter in her hand.

Verbal: α)

1. Born clever, he has written a great deal too much; rendered wise he might never have written at all. (= *had he been rendered wise*.) — 2. From the first moment the Irish people, granted an articulate political voice, pronounced . . . in favour of Home Rule.

β) In der Partizipialkonstruktion (s. 1. Part.) wird das 2. Partizip gewöhnlich durch *being* oder *having been* vervollständigt; ohne diese steht es meist nur in formelhaft gewordenen Zeitbestimmungen:

1. The troops overthrown, and their indomitable little master away in Ireland, it was thought that our side might move on London itself. — 2. Their work (the Revolution) was only in and about the preliminary or destructive process: that ended, their achievements remain but matter of curiosity and example. — 3. The English will not look ahead. A famine ceasing, a rebellion crushed, they jog on as before, with their Dobbin trot and blinker confidence in Saxon energy. — 4. On the conclusion of peace, he (Joseph Hume) returned to England, his fortune made. — 5. These (letters) perused, the Major took out his pocket-book to see on what day he was disengaged.

γ) Als Objektserweiterung steht das 2. Partizip nach Verben der sinnlichen Wahrnehmung und nach gewissen Verben des Wollens oder Wünschens; besonders häufig nach *to have* und (im leichten Stil) nach *to get*.

1. Yet with all his lack of literary skill, we would not wish the book unwritten. — 2. It appeared, under the circumstances, rather agreeable to him to see the common people dispersed before his horses, and often barely escaping from being run down. — 3. I insist on having earnest matters earnestly and reverently discussed. — 4. I am glad to have had it (the

truth) doubted. — 5. It is not difficult to tell the truth; the difficulty is to **get the truth believed**.

Mit Umstellung des Objekts:

6. We **have had renewed** in our hearts the **eternal hope** that the modern Greek would in time rise to something like worthiness of his glorious ancestry. (Es ist uns die Hoffnung erneuert.) — 7. We recently **have had published** authentic documents upon this matter.

To have wird oft gebraucht, um das Sinnsubjekt an die Spitze des Satzes zu bringen: „persönliche“ Konstruktion:

8. Mrs. Roberts who **has her hand pressed** to her heart, takes it away, and tries to calm her breathing. — 9. The custom of the country — that weighty, wingless creature born of time and of the earth — **had its limbs fast twined** around her. — 10. And I **had** a grand conception **laid** before me of changes to be effected in the condition of mankind through that doctrine. — 11. Most boys or youths who **have had** much knowledge **drilled** into them, **have** their mental capacities not **strengthened**, but **overlaid** by it. — 12. No word in the language **has had** such mountains of meaning **piled upon it** (as criticism.).

δ) Das dem (meist artikellosen) Substantiv nachgestellte 2. Partizip kann der Rest eines Attributsatzes sein; es rückt den Vorgang selbst in den Vordergrund und ist daher rein verbal aufzufassen:

1. The single study of the young Hidalgo (Loyola) **had been chivalrous romance**; and his existence **had been** one gorgeous day-dream of **princesses rescued** and **infidels subdued**. — 2. The British advance still continues, and each day brings fresh records of **new positions won**. — 3. He was growing sick with **hope deferred**. (Vom Aufschub der H.) — 4. From the point of view of morality and sentiment he considers that it means a **great opportunity lost** (den Verlust). — 5. More recently the forecast of new measures . . . measures of **unprecedented taxation**, of **imports prohibited** and **luxuries abolished** has been received, not merely without a murmur, but with positive enthusiasm by those who will be affected most. — 6. Those who have thanks to return for **favours received** find easy admittance to the halls of the great . . . — 7. Possession without obligation to the object **possessed** approaches felicity. — 8. "Between ourselves he is", replied Diana, smiling at a **secret guessed**. — 9. With the revival of learning, the number of **subjects taught**, and the number of students grew.

b) Aktivisch.

Der Gebrauch des 2. Partizips als Teil des Perfekt Aktivs ist beschränkt auf eine kleine Gruppe intransitiver oder „neutraler“ Verba (s. S. 9, B), bei echten Transitiven nur in Verbindung mit Adverbien.

a) Prädikativisch:

1. I am a living being on the earth with a body **ascended** from animals and a spirit **descended** from God. — 2. When **arrived** at manhood, we do not willingly submit to the, perhaps, necessary drudgery of committing dry rules to memory. — 3. **Fallen** on evil days, she called on Rachel to beg her to play at her "benefit". — 4. From that (the company of the Dead) **once entered** into it, you can never be outcast but by your own fault. — 5. He stands **confessed** (as one who **has** confessed and is awaiting the consequences).

Bei der Partizipialkonstruktion:

6. Her visitors gone she rang for the children. — 7. The last vanished through the gate, the crowd dispersed. — 8. The service over, and the clergyman withdrawn, Mr. Dombey looks round.

β) Attributivisch.

Die so gebrauchten Partizipien weisen nicht auf die Tätigkeit oder den Vorgang hin (*to have!*) sondern auf den erreichten Zustand (*to be!*), die Eigenschaft.

A fallen hero

ist "not a hero who **has** (just) fallen but one who **is** (lies) down now."

1. The **revolted** troops and the mob then attacked the barracks. — 2. I believe I see before me many of the **rising** members of one of the great parties in the State, and a good many also of **the risen**. — 3. Buckley was at once **an arrived and a coming man**. — 4. The latest-arrived Colonial Premier (unter einem Bilde). — 5. A **retired** soldier. — 6. To the **Fallen**. (Denkmal.) — 7. The **coalesced** forms.

A travelled gentleman

ist a g. who **has** much **travelled** and is an expert at travelling.

1. A candid **travelled** Englishman will really confess that the manners of his countrymen abroad are about the worst of those of **any** civilized people. — 2. Like St. Peter's or Piccadilly, the "Decline and Fall" has become a *point de repère* for **the travelled** and the educated.

An unread, well-read man.

A *read man* ist unmöglich.

1. Mr. Le Gallienne has been writing in the *New York Journal Supplement* on "What should **an unread man** read?" . . . — 2. It would be truer to say that the vividest historians are best—for **the unread man**.

A plain-spoken man

ist "a man who **has** contracted a habit of plain speaking, **is** given to plain speaking".

Das Gerundium (Mischform)

hat 4 Formen, 1 einfache und 3 zusammengesetzte:

calling

being called

having called

having been called,

die gleichzeitig verbaler und nominaler Natur sind. Als Substantiva dulden sie die Voransetzung von Präpositionen und gewissen Attributen und bilden einen Plural; als Verba übernehmen sie alle Funktionen des Partizips auf **-ing**.

a) Das Gerundium als verbaler Satzteil:

α) Als Subjekt:

1. Building tombs for prophets whose words were disregarded brought down reproof upon the Jews two thousand years ago. — 2. It is not **repealing this Act** of Parliament, it is not **repealing** a piece of parchment, that can restore America to our bosom. (Speech.) — 3. Have you ever had a brother? — No. — Then you don't know what **being brother** feels like. — 4. **Seeing** is believing.

β) Als Objekt:

1. If I had loved any one sufficiently to make **confiding my griefs** a necessity, I should not have been in the condition I was. — 2. Surely when a reform of crucial importance is being carried through, it is worth **doing thoroughly**. — 3. And, without exception, there is one question which I never escaped **being asked** after having been shown a school. "Which country has the best schools, in your opinion?" — 4. If love can mean **sinking** yourself in another person, **living** in and through him, **meaning** him when you say life, then I did love him.

Präpositional:

5. It is a more remarkable fact that the dog, **since being domesticated**, has learnt to bark in at least four or five distinct tones. — 6. On what principle was Hampden to be attainted **for advising** what Lesley was ennobled **for doing**? — 7. Sterne preferred whining over a dead ass to **relieving** the necessities of a living mother. — 8. There is no secular law **against woman** engaging in any occupation. — 9. Months passed **without any action being taken**. — 10. What is the real difference **between destroying** a national enemy in battle, and a private enemy in his bed? or, what was the difference between Alexander and the pirate captain? — 11. No impartial body has investigated the matter, and the fate of the nation in war depends **upon the decision** that has been made **having been right**. — 12. We have taken **to criticising** the Creator of late. If only He had taken our advice during those first six days. — 13. I have studied these Labour troubles too long and too closely to dream of **any legislation**, or conference, or agreement whatever **doing** more than patching up a truce for the moment. — 14. The Opposition object: 1) To a Liberal Government "using the King" to get them out of a tight corner. 2) To any pressure being brought from that quarter to modify their opposition. 3) To the speaker having been chosen as chairman.

γ) Als Prädikat:

1. Seeing is **believing**. — 2. To build upon any other foundation (than religion) is **building** upon sand. — 3. Much of the current college study of Shakespeare is little better than **parsing him**.

b) Das Gerundium als **nominaler Satzteil** duldet **vor sich** als **Attribut** nur

α) die adjektivischen **Possessiva**,

β) **no** und **any**,

γ) den bestimmten **Artikel**,

δ) **Substantiva** im Sächsischen Genetiv.

Possessiva:

1. The step you dread **my taking**, I shall never take. — 2. Mr. Goldwin Smith's friends and admirers have **always** looked forward to his one day

giving the world a political history of England. — 3. In consequence of there being or **my having**, no index to the work . . . — 4. The argument of **their** both **using** the word **<and>** is really devoid of any sense.

no — any:

1. **Without any making** real to himself what God or what death is, Richard II. can put himself, if need be, in the appropriate attitude towards God and towards death. — 2. **There is no arguing** with Johnson," said Oliver Goldsmith, "for when his pistol misses fire he knocks you down with the butt-end of it." — 3. **There is no accounting** for tastes, no telling, no knowing . . .

Best. Artikel:

1. Hegel conceived the task of philosophy to be the **thinking** together, the **seeing** in their mutual relation, **all the various facts** presented in isolation by the separate science. — 2. It is **not the being** an artist that is wrong, but **the being** too conscious of it. — 3. This is one of the most dangerous mistakes; it first destroys the foundation of our moral judgments, and ends in pure fanaticism—the **accounting** evil good, and good evil. — 4. In a Christian man, what else is goodness but **the being** like God, and **the having** those qualities which we ascribe to God in the highest perfection? — 5. As to **the promoting the torture** of a bull for the amusement of her young neighbours, it need hardly be said that Miss Thorne would be the last to think of it.

Sächsischer Genitiv:

1. He did not think that there was much danger of **the Government's trying** to curtail further the powers of the Second Chamber during the course of the present Parliament. — 2. The day before it was to come off a put-up quarrel was brought about . . . which ended in **Romeo's being banished** to Mantua. — 3. Frederick William IV. consented to **Austria's entering** the Confederation with her whole empire. — 4. The letter was neatly written in the somewhat large caligraphy, firm, bold, ornate, which Sir John had insisted on **Jack's learning**.

Der beschränkte Gebrauch des sächs. Genitivs verbietet das allgemeine Vorkommen von Konstruktionen wie:

5. I have only just returned, and that must be my excuse for **this letter's coming out** a week after the others which you have received in connection with the new start that the paper is making. — 6. Liberals have been very busy of late calculating the chances of the Parliament **Bill's passing** without a special creation of Peers. — 7. The interest the object had excited warranted **the last's being** taken up and exhibited. (Th. Hardy.)

Das Gerundium in Konkurrenz mit andern Formen.

Die konkurrierenden Formen sind das 1. Partizip, der Infinitiv und das Verbalsubstantiv — entsprechend dem Wesen der „Mischform“.

Nicht überall treten bei diesen Formen syntaktische, auch nicht immer stilistische Rücksichten in den Vordergrund. Wohl aber können formale Gründe für die Wahl der einen oder der andern Form entscheidend sein.

a) Gerundium — 1. Partizip.

Selbst da, wo das Gerundium möglich oder zulässig ist, wird der Gebrauch des Partizips im allgemeinen vorgezogen, der des Gerundiums dem literarischen Stil überlassen.

Grundsätzlich weist das Gerundium auf ein attributives, das Partizip auf ein prädikatives Verhältnis. Das Gerundium fügt durch die (attributive) Erweiterung eines Substantivs eine geschlossene nominale Wortgruppe in den Hauptsatz ein, das Partizip als Prädikat des Substantivs eine verbale Wortgruppe, durch welche auch logische Beziehungen zum Hauptsatz ausgedrückt werden.

Die partizipiale Form ist daher die lebhaftere, kräftigere; in der Bedeutung tritt der Unterschied beider Ausdrucksweisen nicht immer hervor.

1. A clergyman was interrupted in the midst of his sermon by three gentlemen leaving the church. — 2. I tremble at the thought of gentlemen indulging themselves in the argument which I am combating. — One way . . . is by the association accepting my views, the other by me accepting theirs. — 3. I understand you fighting . . . (Ich verstehe es wenn.) — 4. The hostess of a great house has to depend on the women being discreet, the men civilized. — 5. Look at me jumping. (Wie ich springe.) — 6. If they (the state papers) remain here (in Berlin) much longer, it will end in him (the Emperor) seizing them. (So übersetzt G. H. Perris aus einem Briefe Bismarcks an Busch.) — 7. I insist on your pleasing yourselves. — 8. You must excuse me asking so much. — 9. I promised to impart his views to the world by a medium that would ensure them receiving serious and profound attention. — 10. Then it was that I could think earnestly of Prince Ahmed and the kind and beautiful Peribanou, whom I would not have minded his marrying. (Die er meinetwegen hätte heiraten können.) — 11. "But who ever heard of them (the English) eating an owl or a fox, madam?" says Reynard: "or their sitting down and taking a crow to pick?" adds the polite rogue. — 12. I do not mind Mr. Gladstone always having the ace up his sleeve, but I do object to his always saying that Providence put it there. — 13. He insisted upon our all tasting the nice things that came from his home (*upon all of us t.*).

Nicht zu erkennen z. B. in:

14. She could fancy her having risen from the dead.

It als Subjekt des Partizips wird meistens durch **its** ersetzt:

15. Quite recently the underwriters there insured the American parents of a valuable baby against its being kidnapped. — 16. It misses the amusing point, which was the fact of it happening. — 17. Events had prepared the way for this change and had prevented it attaining the character of an upheaval.

b) Gerundium — Infinitiv mit **to**.

a) Wo es sich um Subjekt oder (direktes) Objekt handelt, entscheidet der — wechselnde — Sprachgebrauch, welche Wendung die bessere ist. Im allgemeinen wird das Gerundium bevorzugt, nach einigen Verben ausschließlich gebraucht: z. B. nach *I cannot help, forbear; to avoid*.

Vgl.: 'Seeing is believing' mit 'To see is to believe'.

1. To see with one's own eyes men and countries, is better than reading all the books of travel in the world. — 2. Shall we then delay rendering this justice to Africa? — 3. Old Graham never delays to send his son the sound word of advice. — 4. I hate being listened to. — 5. We could not help laughing. — 6. All day she imagined hearing a distant cannonade. — 7. To philosophize wittily is by no means the same thing as expounding a belief or forcing into the reader's unwilling hand a lesson-sheet for his embarrassment. — 8. Democracy to-day is like a giant infant just awakening to a consciousness of its powers, but without a full control of its limbs or muscles. It needs educating, disciplining, encouraging, inspiring; it needs to think not of rights only but of duties; it needs to learn the responsibility which belongs, and cannot but belong, to an Imperial people.

β) of seeing — to see.

Statt des von *of* abhängigen attributiven Gerundiums kann der Infinitiv mit *to* stehen, ohne daß die Bedeutung verschieden ist:

1. It is true that, at the Revolution, the sovereign was not deprived by law of the power of naming his ministers. (Das Ernennungsrecht.) — 2. What other infallible means of ascertaining the judgment of the people . . . can be suggested than the Referendum? — 3. Both realists and dynamiters are well-meaning people engaged in the task, so obviously ultimately hopeless, of using science to promote morality. — 4. Kipling lacks altogether the faculty of attaching himself to any cause or community finally and tragically. — 5. Nor is the implied contract to flatter the only thing which impairs the value of these biographies. — 6. No great poet has been further removed from the wish to concentrate the eyes of the world upon himself (than Wordsworth). — 7. Kipling, with all his merits, is the globe-trotter; he has not the patience to become part of anything. — 8. All previous ages have sweated and been crucified in an attempt to realize what is really the right life, what was really the good man. — 9. The liberty to make laws is what constitutes a free people.

γ) to seeing — to see.

Da *to* vor dem Infinitiv nur die abgeschwächte Präposition ist, so wechselt bei einigen Verben der Gebrauch von Gerundium und Infinitiv; ersteres ist dann im allgemeinen der literarischen Sprache vorbehalten. Bei anderen, wo *to* zweifellos den Kasus einführt, kann der Infinitiv nicht in Frage kommen:

1. The king was accustomed to have, to having, well dressed people about him. (G. Krüger.) — 2. They cannot be good poets who are not accustomed to argue well. — 3. There are moods in which I fall to envying those old hermits who frankly and with courageous cowardice, shirked the problem of life. — 4. It is not remembered that titles can be made so cheap that no self-respecting persons would submit to being labelled with one. — 5. You will not submit to be guided. (G. Krüger.) — 6. Wm. H. Taft must prefer for the sake of his own peace of mind never to be President to being a poor President.

c) Gerundium — Verbalsubstantiv auf . . ing.

Ein Verbalsubstantiv kann von allen Vollverben gebildet und in den Plural gesetzt werden. Aber es berührt sich konstruktivisch so eng mit dem Gerundium, daß eine syntaktische Scheidung häufig unmöglich ist.

Zweifelloes Verbalsubstantiv:

1. I have my **dislikings** as well as my **likings**. — 2. All Erin danced to meet the hero; but this ball was the pick of **the dancing**, the pick of **the supping**. — 3. But if he (the lad) have a mind of any strength or originality, to him the years of his later teens will be **the making** or **the marring of him**. — 4. The stories he tells brim with life and strength and interest; the manner of **their telling** is as good as the matter. — 5. For England **the making** of a mighty navy is natural as is the extension of the army and general conscription for Germany (1912). — Vgl. England in **the making**. — 6. Real life is always interesting, and I don't want anyone else to do **my observing** for me. — 7. There is much hidden paper treasure in this country which would be well worth **the finding**. — 8. This article is interesting, but it appears to me that it needs **some correcting and supplementing**. — 9. **Solitary living** breeds envious habits.

Das Substantiv.

A. Form.

Das Substantiv wird als solches erkannt an gewissen ihm eigentümlichen Endungen, an Begleitwörtern oder syntaktisch; diese Erkennungsmittel können einzeln oder zugleich vorhanden sein.

Das Substantiv selbst zeigt im allgemeinen nur eine Formveränderung; sie besteht in der Anhängung eines (lautlich weiter zu unterscheidenden) s-Lautes. Dieser Laut dient zur Bildung des Plurals und zur Bezeichnung des Besitzverhältnisses.

a) Pluralbildung.

Sie unterbleibt nur in wenigen Fällen und ist eine tote oder lebende, vereinzelt eine gemischte.

1. Die tote Pluralbildung

ist nur in einer — nicht erweiterungsfähigen — Zahl von Hauptwörtern erhalten:

ox — oxen; child — children; brother — brethren,
foot — feet; goose — geese; louse — lice;
man — men; mouse — mice; tooth — teeth;

woman -- women.

deer, sheep, swine stehen für Sing. und Plur.

Zusammensetzungen.

Dormouse und titmouse haben den Plural des Stammwortes, ebenso die mit man und woman gebildeten Wörter. — Normans sind die Normannen, Northmen Nordmänner. — Turcoman bildet Turcomans; Musselman zeigt beide Formen.

2. Die lebende Pluralbildung

ist die herrschende, nach der sich alle andern Hauptwörter richten, einerlei, ob sie wirkliche Hauptwörter sind oder andere Wortarten, Wortgruppen oder Sätze, die als Hauptwörter verwendet werden:

1. We still seem to be at **sixes and sevens**—or to be more precise at **fives and sixes**—over the date of Edmund Waller's birth, which has come to be generally accepted as having taken place on March 3, 1605. — 2. And amid all the cards and "**loving tokens**" and "**farewell dearests**" and "**not-post-but-gone-befores**"—not one unfeigned expression of true sorrow. — 3. Not that this study detects no spots in the sun. Occasionally its **amazings** and **infinitelys** and **most bewitchings** dip even into the severe.

a) Englische Wörter.

Der Plural hat

gesprochen 3 Formen: **s, z, ɔz**,

geschrieben 2 Formen: **s** und **es**.

Lautliches.

Tonloses **s** erhalten die Hauptwörter, welche auf tonlosen, tönendes **s** die, welche auf tönenden Konsonanten oder Vokal ausgehen, silbiges **s** (**ɔz**) die auf Zischlaut endigenden:

book-s; monarch-s; state-s; rat-s; rap-s; cape-s;

bog-s; lad-s; cab-s; — boy-s; shoe-s; day-s;

dish-es; image-s; genius-es. The Adams-es.

th tönt nach langem Vokal, z. B. paths, mouths, births;

th wird tonlos nach kurzem Vokal, z. B. cloths, deaths, moths; — truths schwankt; houses hat tönendes **s** (**hauzɔz**).

Orthographisches.

Die Substantiva auf **o, y, f, fe** haben eine zum Teil abweichende Schreibweise, die bei **f** und **fe** auch verändertem Laut entspricht.

... oes bilden die meisten eingebürgerten auf **o**; Fremdwörter begnügen sich mit **os**; z. B.:

negro-es, no-es, cargo-es, tobacco-es, fresco-es;

octavo-s, solo-s, quarto-s, memento-s, Cato-s, cameo-s, folio-s;

cuckoo-s, kangaroo-s.

...ies bilden die Hauptwörter auf **y**, wenn diesem kein Vokal vorangeht; z. B.:

abbey-s, boy-s, day-s, — replie-s, pennie-s; jedoch:
Henry-s, Mary-s; why-s.

Fortnightly-s, Quarterly-s neben ...ies; Germany-s.
flys sind Wagen, flies Fliegen.

...ves (tönend) bilden:

leaf, sheaf, loaf, thief — calf, half, wolf — elf, shelf,
self — life, knife, wife.

...fs, fes (tonlos) bilden:

belief, chief, grief — roof, proof — strife, safe, fife —
dwarf, turf, gulf.

...ffs: alle, ausgen. staves = Stäbe.

...ves oder fs: scarf, wharf, hoof.

Buchstaben und Ziffern hängen 's an den Singular:
the o's, the S's, the three R's.

β) Fremde Wörter

bilden den Plural auf englische Weise, soweit es lautlich an-
gängig ist. Gelehrte- und Fachwörter behalten den fremden
Plural, einige derselben den englischen, zum Teil mit besonderer
Bedeutung; z. B.:

chorus-es, bonus-es, syllabus-es,
alarum-s, eulogium-s, simile-s,
atlas-es, excursus-es, omen-s, iris-es, orchis-es,
alibi-s, ignoramus-es, fata-morgana-s.
Italienische auf o: s. S. 44 u.

Die fremde Form zeigen z. B.:

larva — larvæ; magus — magi (*dž*); datum — data;
phenomenon — phenomena; soprano — soprani;
crisis — crises; radix — radices; species — species.

Doppelformen, z. B.:

dogma — dogmas, dogmata; pagan — pagans, paynim;
mammal — mammals, mammalia; stamen-s, stamina;
vertebrate — vertebrates, vertebrata.

Doppelformen mit verschiedener Bedeutung, z. B.:

genius — geniuses, genii; index — indexes, indices.

γ) Zusammensetzungen.

αα) Nur substantivische Bestandteile.

Das Pluralzeichen tritt zum Grundwort; z. B.:

coal mine-s; men-of-war; earl-marshal-s;
Queen-s-regent; poet-s-laureate(s); lady-swimmer-s.

Liegt appositionelle Auffassung vor, so tritt doppelte Pluralbildung ein:

Knight-s-Templar-s; lord-s-justice-s; men-servant-s;
child-player-s und children-player-s;
lord-s-lieutenant-s (lord-lieutenants; lords-lieutenant).

ßß) Gemischte Bestandteile.

Das Pluralzeichen tritt — rein mechanisch — an das letzte Wort; z. B.:

lock-out — lock-outs; M. P. — M. P.'s;
Many God bless you's; the hear-hims;
Musical at homes; the stay-at-homes.

Hingegen: lookers-on; passers-by.

Bem. In der Anwendung des Apostrophs und Bindestrichs herrscht keine Übereinstimmung; das Zusammenschreiben zu einem Wort läßt erkennen, daß das betreffende Kompositum als ein Begriff empfunden wird.

Der Akzent des Plurals

entspricht dem des Singulars, doch tritt zuweilen bei silbigem ...es gleitende Betonung ein: s. Sächs. Gen.

b) Der sächsische Genitiv.

... 's kann, wie das s des Plurals, tönend, tonlos und silbig sein; bei silbigem ... 's folgt die Aussprache der Schrift. Im Plural wird nur der Apostroph geschrieben.

Moses' laws; for Jesus' sake.

Antike Eigennamen, wie Venus's, Aeneas's, Socrates's haben meist silbiges s, auch wenn ungeschrieben.

Goose's, geese's, ox's werden, falls überhaupt beliebt, zweisilbig; calf's, path's behalten tonloses f, th und s.

Princess's, princesses' (u. ä.) haben gleitende Betonung.

Vermieden wird doppelter s Laut bei for—sake:

Men did battle, even in those days, not for Purse sake, but for Conscience sake.

Men's, women's, children's, brethren's, oxen's; aber feet, lice, teeth werden nicht so gebraucht.

The boys' brigade; the Historians' History; a Miners' War.

1. Emma Isola, the Lambs' adopted daughter. — 2. . . . to resist the ills of fortune, mine or others'. — 3. Browning is the poet of musicians and of painters, the poet of lawyers and physicians, and Rabbis . . . but he is not the poets' poet.

Dickens' Novels — Dickens's Novels. James' neben James's Park.

B. Lexikalisches.

1. Substantiva mit zwei Pluralformen, denen besondere Bedeutungen entsprechen; z. B.:

cloth — cloths, clothes; penny — pennies, pence.

2. Die besondere Bedeutung des Plurals besteht neben der des Singulars; z. B.:

spirit — spirits; part — parts; letter — letters.

3. Aus formalen, geschichtlichen oder logischen Gründen sind z. B.:

nur singularisch: knowledge, furniture, merchandise;
nur pluralisch: aborigines, bowels, tactics, measles, blues;
unveränderlich: news, means, alms.

4. Aus zwei Teilen bestehende Einheiten erfordern die Pluralisierung durch **pair of** — falls nicht der Gebrauch den Plural ohne weiteres als Einheit faßt; z. B.:

two pair of spectacles; three pair of tongs;
a (silver) scissors, those scissors; a shambles.

C. Syntax des Substantivs.

Kasus — Deklination.

Vorbem. Um das syntaktische Verhältnis der Substantiva zu bezeichnen, besitzt das Englische nur eine Form. Es wendet entweder rein syntaktische Mittel an (Stellung) oder besondere Verhältniswörter, so daß streng genommen weder von Kasus noch von Deklination die Rede sein kann.

Die Stellung gehört in die Satzsyntax, die Verhältniswörter bilden ein besonderes Kapitel der Wortlehre.

Trotzdem ist es angezeigt, für die allerhäufigsten Beziehungen des Substantivs (wer? wessen? wem? wen?) den Namen „Kasus“ beizubehalten, einerlei, ob sie in besonderer „Form“ auftreten, wie beim sächsischen Genitiv und beim Pronomen, oder ob sie durch besondere Formwörter ausgedrückt werden: **of** und **to** (s. diese Präp. II, funktionell).

Für eine „Deklination“ verbleiben daher lediglich aus praktischen Gründen drei „Kasus“:

Subjektskasus (Stellung — **he, who** etc.)

Besitzkasus (Stellung — **'s, s'**)

Objektskasus (Stellung — **him, whom** etc.).

Für die Wortlehre kommt nur der Besitzkasus in Betracht.

Der sächsische Genitiv

ist der Bedeutung nach auf die Bezeichnung des Besitzverhältnisses im weitesten Sinne beschränkt. (*Possessive Case.*)

Besitzer können sein: alle Personen, sowie Lebewesen und Sachen, denen persönliche Eigenschaften beigelegt werden.

Eine weitere Verwendung findet die **'s-Form** bei Maßbestimmungen und allgemein auch bei Sachen, wenn die

Satzfügung es wünschenswert erscheinen läßt oder es sich um älteres Sprachgut handelt.

Der sächsische Genitiv ist seiner Natur nach attributiv und steht vor dem weiteren Begriffswort. Fällt dieses (als selbstverständlich) aus, so tritt er formell selbständig auf -- attributivisch wie prädikativisch.

a) Besitzverhältnis:

1. All other **the Queen's** Dominions. — 2. The Oxford Professor of **Poetry's** Inaugural Lecture. — 3. "At **You All's** House". (Roman.) — 4. All his (Gladstone's) ends were his **country's**, his **God's**, and **Truth's**. — 5. The **King of England's** dominions; **William the Second's** speeches. — 6. There is perhaps no national literature so little known in Europe as the Polish, no national character so little illumined for us by accessible evidence as the **Pole's**. — 7. Falkland at least was a **people's** man. — 8. The fault is **history's**, not **hers**. — 9. Why should we be told to assume the greater interests of **the bricklayer's** over **the duke's**? — 10. . . . without having first asked **the owner of the foot's** permission. — 11. Every **looker-on's** inside. — 12. Anybody's else and anybody else's. — 13. The follies (at Terry's) may put too considerable a tax on **the audience's** patience. — 14. Priests . . . make havoc of its (the novel's) **hero's** and **heroine's** simple human happiness.

Das Begriffswort kann, falls sich von selbst ergänzend, fortfallen oder braucht nicht wiederholt zu werden:

At the baker's (shop); in St. Paul's (Cathedral); to subscribe to Mudie's (Library); King's (College); Selfridge's (Stores).

15. **Scribner's** (Magazine) is capital as ever. — 16. As a standard record of the language **Murray's** is invaluable, and more philological curiosities are to be found in it than one could possibly expect.

Mit Spitzenstellung und Trennung von Besitzer und Besitz:

17. **Shakespeare's** was evidently an uneducated **mind**, both in the freshness of his imagination and in the variety of his views.

A letter of the poet's.

Sehr häufig ist der Gebrauch, mit dem Besitzverhältnis zugleich das Partitive auszudrücken, ein Konkretum zugleich als mehrfach vorhanden hinzustellen:

18. Why he (Crabbe) did not starve, Canon Ainger now first reveals through a **letter of the poet's** to Burke.

β) Maßbestimmungen, besonders zeitlicher Natur:

The **Thirty-years' War**; after a **nine days' siege**.

An **hour or two's sleep**.

Yesterday's preacher; **to-day's sermon**.

This year's crop; **this week's mail**. A **2 miles' walk**.

Years ist häufig statt **years'**, da lautlich kein Unterschied.

γ) **Älteres Sprachgut** (oder ihm angeglichen); z. B.:

Out of **harm's** way; within a **stone's** throw; at **arm's** length.
— **Life's** little ironies; the **world's** work. — The **sea's** surface;
to one's **heart's** content.

Socialism and Socialists cannot reasonably complain that they do not
bulk fairly largely in **the world's mind's** eye nowadays.

δ) for — **sake**

gestattet die Verwendung der 's-Form im weitesten Umfange:

For **Heaven's** sake. — To walk for **walking's** sake. — For old **sake's** sake.

Numerus.

Form und Inhalt oder Bedeutung decken sich nicht immer. Substantiva können in der Form singularisch, der Bedeutung nach pluralisch sein, und umgekehrt; der Gebrauch kann in beiden Fällen sogar innerhalb desselben Satzes schwanken.

Abstrakta und Stoffnamen können, wenn konkret gebraucht, Sammelnamen, wenn sie die Gesamtheit als neue Einheit auffassen, in die Mehrzahl treten.

1. Abstrakta.

α) Die weitaus meisten Abstrakta können in der Mehrzahl gebraucht werden, wenn die Eigenschaft als einzelnen Trägern anhaftend hingestellt wird, oder die Vorstellung besonders lebhaft ist:

1. A world of **samenesses**. — 2. The **ambitions** of Dupleix. — 3. We permit, or cause, a thousand **deaths** daily, but we mean no harm. — 4. Education is one of Mr. Haldane's **enthusiasms**. — 5. The **growths** of towns. — 6. Mr. Swinburne is a creature of passionate **loves** and equally passionate **hates**, and all who dare to differ from his decrees are "dunces." — 7. There were four pages of **loves** and **fears** and **forebodings**. — 8. He had mad **hungers** that grew more ravenous as he fed them. — 9. Through the window the Southern night faced her, and the throbbing clusters of stars in the vast **silences**. — 10. At last their two **impatiences** had nearly come to a deadlock. — 11. The **fortunes** of Pitt seemed to flourish; but his health was worse than ever.

β) Die Beziehung des Abstraktums auf einen besonderen Fall wird gern durch besondere Substantiva ausgedrückt, die dann auch in der Mehrzahl verwendbar sind:

This **act** of poetic justice; this **piece** of luck; a **piece** of folly; a **system** of tactics; a hundred **pieces** of quaintness.

Über den Numerus substantivierter Adjektiva s. diese

2. Stoffnamen,

an sich abstrakt, lassen — mit wenigen Ausnahmen — pluralische Auffassung zu, wenn sie die aus dem Stoff hergestellten Dinge.

verschiedene Arten des Stoffes oder die Vorstellung des Massenhaften oder Bunten ausdrücken sollen; z. B.:

copper — a copper, coppers; **clay** — a clay, clays; **salt** — a salt, salts; **sand** — sands; **rain** — rains.

Farben.

Werden die Farben rein stofflich aufgefaßt, so lassen sie ebenfalls den Plural zu; der Gebrauch entscheidet auch hier über die Zulässigkeit (s. Adjektiv als Substantiv)

1. The **golds** and **blues** of late spring are then still fresh and sweet. — 2. A blazing intensity of light . . . each tint and outline, sharp and vehement, full-bodied and rich,—the greenest **greens**, the bluest **blues**, the most dazzling **gold**;—this was Versailles, as she saw it on that autumn day. — 3. There are my friends decked out in **yellows** and **blues** and **browns** and **white**.

3. Sammelnamen.

a) Persönliche Sammelnamen.

α) **people**, **police**, **foot** (Infanterie), **horse** (Reiterei), **counsel** (Rechtsanwalt) bleiben als Sammelnamen und mehrere Einzelwesen bezeichnend ohne Pluralzeichen:

1. **People** came in crowds. — I met 4 **people**. — In fact, there are practically no uneducated **people** in Germany. — 2. In Germany witnesses are not examined by **counsel**, but by the judge. — **Counsel** stand by and twirl their thumbs.

gentry, **clergy**, **police** werden statt *gentlemen*, *clergymen*, *pollicemen* gebraucht:

3. The indifference of which **all clergy** complain is treated wrongly. — **We clergy** are all, of course, full of a vague fellow-feeling for the aspirations of the labourer. — 4. Where are the **police**?

folk ist gebräuchlicher und edler als **folks**:

5. **Folks** in the provinces have extraordinary notions of London.

youth kann sein 1) Jugend (abstrakt), 2) Jugend (kollektiv), 3) Jüngling (pl. youths):

6. If **youth** but knew! — **A youth** to fortune and to fame unknown. — It was a fiction kept up by himself and his contemporaries that **youth** was exclusively the period of folly.

β) Substantivierte Adjektiva

bleiben in der Form meist singularisch und haben den Artikel; es sind besonders

the public(s), the general, the vulgar, the military.

1. The **public** is just a great baby. — 2. Events will only be chronicled if the newspapers think them interesting to their **publics**. — 3. Somehow, the British **public** maintain a very considerable belief in price values. — 4. The **public** are supposed to be greatly interested in it, but as a fact are not. **They** have always been able to obtain etc.

b) Tiernamen.

Jagdbare oder der Ernährung dienende Tiere können in ihrer Gesamtheit als Einzelwesen oder wieder als besondere Arten aufgefaßt werden, auch als Stoffnamen (*food, flesh*).

Der Gebrauch wechselt daher mit der Bedeutung. Eine Unterscheidung ist häufig belanglos.

Die meisten Fischnamen lassen keine Pluralbezeichnung zu; **fish** selbst schwankt durchaus.

Keinen Plural bilden

grouse, deer, cattle, game; dazu kommt *vermin*.

1. *These snipe* of California are specifically identical with our own. — 2. *Grouse* are a commercial factor of the highest importance. — 3. We cooked **two** wild *duck*. — 4. *Trout* are often overrated, as *those* of lakes are sometimes condemned as muddy. — 5. **Two fish** take precedence of all others in the Near East, and *these* are the red mullet and the bass. — . . . the keen remark (of Goldsmith's) that Johnson, if he wrote a fable about **fishes**, would make all the little **fishes** talk like whales. — Fresh water **fishes** of many kinds have been introduced with great success, but *salmon* have proved hard to establish. (Ch. Encycl.) — There is much sport to be had with **chubs**. . . . It is true that **chub** do not taste like *trout*. . . . **Chubs** are coarse **fish**. — **Fish** are capable of making long journeys. — **Fish**, during Lent, *rises* in price. — 6. "I was ever moderate in my desires," said the Cardinal with a smile; "I shoot at none of *these* high-flying **game**." — 7. Deep down in their slums and alleys **fester the vermin** that *gnaw* at the heart of Empire. — 8. **Buffalo** in a papyrus swamp, without detracting from *lion*, is unrivalled for distracting the attention of the mind from the past. (Roosevelt.) — 9. It is always possible to kill enough birds and **antelope**. — 10. . . . A viand which the hosts called mutton, but which the guests strongly suspected to be **dog**. — 11. This fact was in itself suspicious, for **elephants** are not so plentiful as *buck*. — Aber: The animals in the Jardin des Plantes were eaten. **Elephant** sold at from 13 f. to 45 f. a pound

c) Sachnamen

werden wie die geschlechtlichen Sammelnamen behandelt:

Fruit, hair, shot, shell u. a.

brain und *brains* eigentlich und figürlich.

craft nimmt im Sinne von Schiff nie ein **s** an. Vgl. *people, cattle*.

1. The ladies' sculling eight . . . At different periods **such craft** have been seen on the Upper Thames. — 2. Colonies are like **fruits** which only cling till they ripen, said Turgot; vgl. Turgot compared Colonies to **fruit** which **hangs** on the tree only till it is ripe: in demselben Schriftsteller. — 3. When the Armada came up Channel the nimbleness and seaworthiness of the English **craft** and the indomitable skill with which **they** were handled, enabled the stripling to lay the giant low.

Scheinbarer Widerspruch zwischen Form und Bedeutung:

a barrack(s),

a glass works, a golf links zeigen im Grunde dieselbe Auffassung wie *thirty clergy, many people, these craft* u. ä.:

4. Those rules (of evidence), at **every assizes**, save scores of culprits whom judges, jury, and spectators firmly believe to be guilty.

Bäume, wenn **Sammel- oder Stoffnamen**, bleiben singularisch:

5. Plantations of **oak** are slow in coming to marketable value, except in the shape of copsewood, for which **the oak** is one of the best adopted trees . . . **copsewood oak** is valuable for firewood.

Personennamen stehen singularisch für die Gesamtheit, pluralisch für einzelne der Werke, welche die Personen zu Verfassen haben, oder für Dinge, die nach ihnen benannt sind:

6. There are **the Thackerays** and **Scotts**, **the Dickens** and **Tennyson**, a volume or two of the first printed Indian books of Rudyard Kipling, **some Ruskin** and **Church** and **Newman**. Then there is **all Pater**. — 7. One remembers also that one time, when he was staying at Marienbad, it was noticed that his late Majesty wore a red tie every day, and forthwith all the hosiers in Vienna made a great display of red cravats in their windows, and called them **King Edwards**.

4. Zahl- und Maßbegriffe.

Hauptwörter, die Zahl, Menge oder Maß bezeichnen, lassen das Pluralzeichen besonders dann fallen, wenn der weitere Begriff folgt (mit oder ohne *of*) oder sich von selbst ergänzt. Vgl. Zahlwörter.

Je mehr sie zum Zählen oder Messen im technischen Sinne dienen, desto geneigter sind sie zum Fallenlassen des **s**.

hundred und **thousand** werden nur bei bestimmten Zahlangaben adjektivisch behandelt.

dozen, **score**, **myriad**, **legion**, **million** sind adjektivisch oder substantivisch, **milliard** und **billion** (amerik. = *milliard*) nur subst.

brace, **gross**, **head**, **yoke**, **stand** adjektivisch;

pair, **ream**, **couple**, **fathom**, **quire**, **ton** schwanken;

stone erhält kein **s**, **hundredweight**, **pound** (*sterling*) nur, wenn keine Münzsorten folgen.

1. **Hundreds** instead of **scores** of ewes and lambs have to be provided for. — 2. There are **hundreds** and **hundreds of thousands** just starving. — 3. The **myriad** delights of the place. — 4. The aggregate number of reporters did not exceed **threescore**. — In those days, the wealth of Bruges grew upon the trade that was brought by the **six score** ships that every day entered her canals and brought up by her quays . . . — **Some two score** of its congregations remain without a pastor. — 5. In this poem we notice that he has seen, apparently in recent days, **three yoke** of black oxen used for waggon and plough. — 6. I wanted some gloves; **three pair** cream and **three pair** fawn coloured, **six pairs** altogether. — Sometimes **two pairs** of lovers turned up at the same time, and Margaret had to drive a four-in-hand. But she tried if possible to keep them in separate **couples**. — 7. Over the last five years our ovine population has thus diminished by upwards of two **million head**. — 8. There have passed through my hands recently **some dozens** of novels . . . — 9. **Fifty stand of colours**, a hundred guns . . . fell into the hands of the Prussians.

All manner of . . .

Manner, kind und sort lassen vor partitivem **of** den Plural häufig unbezeichnet:

10. **All manner of doleful prophets** continue to assure us that bad times are coming. — 11. There are women as well as men who can thoroughly enjoy **these sort of romantic spots**.

Kürzungen.

Auch die üblichen Zahlen gestatten die Zusammenfassung zu einer Einheit, besonders im leichteren Stil, wo **sum, number, space** u. ä. vorschweben:

12. Mr. Asquith had a rather bad **ten minutes** yesterday afternoon at the hands of the Opposition. — 13. In a hasty **two pages**. — 14. To **this twelve months**, J. de Heredia was fond of referring with pleasure. — 15. The King and Queen . . . spent a really happy and friendly **four hours** in the grounds of the King's London home. — 16. The passenger by rail from the south, in **that wonderful sixty miles** between Berwick and Edinburgh, gets only kaleidoscopic glimpses of the country.

Das Geschlecht.

Es gibt nur ein natürliches, kein grammatisches Geschlecht. Was nicht von Natur männlich oder weiblich ist, auch nicht männlich oder weiblich gedacht werden soll, ist geschlechtslos.

Form und Bezeichnung.

Das Geschlecht kann am Substantiv selbst oder durch besondere Geschlechtswörter oder aus dem Zusammenhang erkannt werden, direkt oder indirekt.

α) Das Geschlecht wird durch das Hauptwort selbst ausgedrückt, das Hauptwort ist Geschlechtswort:

cock—hen; earl—countess; boy—girl.

β) Das Hauptwort hat eine besondere Form oder Endung, englische oder fremde, als lebende nur **..ess**:

lion—lioness; czar—czarina; hero—heroine;

suffragist—suffragette.

γ) Das Hauptwort verbindet sich mit Geschlechtswörtern — auf verschiedene Weise, z. B.:

he-goat; tom-cat; lady-nurse; girl-bachelor;

Mr., Mrs., Miss Miller.

δ) Das Geschlecht wird aus dem Zusammenhang erkannt sowie durch besondere Formwörter (s. Satzsyntax):

1. A Mistress Attaway, lacewoman in Bell-alley and **she-preacher** in Coleman Street, had been reading Master Milton's book. — 2. Mrs. Fitzherbert allowed her lover to put a ring on her finger in the presence of three of

the Prince's **men friends** and of the duchess. — 3. A **friend** of rank and fortune once told the writer how **she** met her future husband for the first time. — 4. The greatest **male pianist** of the day has married the greatest **female violinist** of the day. — 5. *The Chronicle* is anxious to know where **women workers** and particularly **women journalists** should live in comfort combined with cheapness.

Syntax des Geschlechts.

Vorbem. Wo sich die Bezeichnung des natürlichen Geschlechts nicht umgehen läßt, machen sachliche oder wissenschaftliche Unterschiede (oder Unterscheidungen) eine durchaus übereinstimmende Behandlung durch die Schriftsteller unmöglich. Die Eigenart verlangt ihr Recht. Stilart und Rhetorik ihre Berücksichtigung. — Fast bis zur Schrankenlosigkeit geht diese Freiheit bei der Personifikation, der mehr oder weniger **alle** Neutra unterworfen sind.

a) Das Geschlecht lebender Wesen.

α) Personen:

1. When the callow **infant** is first seized with the desire to hold converse with those around him, **he** does not concern **himself** with considerations of gender, number, and case. — 2. Every human **baby** has latent in **him** at birth all the potential brutalities of the savage, or even of the sub-human ape. **He** begins . . . — 3. The **child** who teachably and undoubtingly listens to the instructions of **his** elders, is likely to improve rapidly. — 4. Don't object to my calling the **baby** "**it**". I didn't know he was a **girl**. (Punch.) — 5. I would beg those whose cry is for an 'education that will fit the **child** for its future career' to have a care lest they rob the **child** of its growing and storing time, and thus **unfit him** for anything but a tired, jaded cynic at middle age . . . — 6. Heaven has blessed us with a **child** which each loves for **her** resemblance to the other. — 7. Regardless of its parentage any **child** born on English or American soil becomes instantaneously a citizen of the Land of **his** birth.

Wörter für gemeinsame Geschlechtsbezeichnung können zu allerhand Eigentümlichkeiten oder Schwerfälligkeiten in der Wahl des Wortes oder der Konstruktion führen.

αα) Das Maskulinum übernimmt die Mitvertretung des Femininums:

1. **Victoria** was a **Statesman** when the Tsar and the Kaiser were in their cradles. — 2. Let Germany be a **man**. Let Germany formulate **her** territorial demands. — 3. A little attention might discover more instances, showing how dear to **humanity** is the very jingle of **his** speech, and how **he** loves, even in **his** riper age, to keep up a sort of phantom of that harmony which in **his** infancy blended sound and sense in one undistinguishable chime. (Earle.) — 4. **Mankind** has made many ugly things with **his** hands and the tools which those hands could use.

ββ) Jedes Geschlecht wird durch die Geschlechtsform des Pronomens besonders bezeichnet:

1. A rather large party . . . was asked to decide on the ten novels best worthy of preservation. Each made **his** of **her** selection. — 2. I know of **no one** who has written many books who would willingly lay down **his**

or her pen. — 3. It is a very rare **spirit** that can put **himself** or **herself** in the place of a child.

γγ) Daß bei unbestimmten Fürwörtern im Singular an Männer und Frauen gedacht ist, wird häufig nur an der Bezugnahme darauf durch **they** oder **their** erkannt; s. Satzsyntax. *Concord*.

Has **everybody** got what **they** want?

Weitere Beisp. s. Indefinita, *none*.

β) Tiere.

Tiere können, besonders wenn die ganze Gattung gemeint ist, als geschlechtslos aufgefaßt werden.

Zur Bezeichnung einer ganzen Gattung dient bald das Männchen, bald das Weibchen, was durch die S. 53, γ angegebenen Mittel erkannt wird oder aus dem Zusammenhang zu schließen ist.

Soll überhaupt das Geschlecht festgestellt werden, so hat auch die gewöhnliche Prosa ziemlich freie Hand, kann sogar aus den verschiedensten Gründen innerhalb desselben Gedankenganges wechseln, auch innerhalb desselben Satzes.

Das männliche Geschlecht wird in diesem Falle ungleich häufiger gewählt als das weibliche, selbst bei kleinen und kleinsten Tieren.

Haustiere erhalten in der Regel eine Geschlechtsbezeichnung. Wo der Gegensatz zwischen männlicher und weiblicher Spielart desselben Tieres hervortreten soll, wird stets daran festgehalten.

“The learned horse” (Berlin) war nur **männlich**. (Der gelehrte Hans.)
Calf, whelp, cub, kitten sind meist sächlich (vgl. *child*); puss weiblich.

1. The strength of the **lion** is such that **he** can carry off a heifer as a cat carries a rat . . . It was anciently much more common in Asia . . . If compelled to defend **himself**, **he** manifests great courage . . . It has a horror of fires and torch-lights . . . The mane is not fully developed till **he** is six or seven years old. — 2. That is how **the spider** waits for the fly. The spider spins **her** web. And if the **fly** shows a strength that promises to extricate **him** how swiftly does **she** abandon her pretence of passiveness, and openly fling coil after coil about **him** until **he** is secured for ever! — 3. The females come forth from their retreats . . . The **bee** builds a nest of withered grass . . . On this **she** lays several eggs. — 4. In Mythology, **the eagle** represents the sun; its beak, its talons, or the whole bird itself, the lightning and the sunbeam . . . **He** holds the bolts of Zeus in **his** talons . . . Ptolemy Soter made it the emblem of the Egyptian Kingdom . . . Even in Christian symbolism the eagle has preserved its significance. — 5. Will the old **Lion** still sleep and forget **its** cub? (Unter einem Bilde.) — All through Central Africa **the grim beast** (the lion) is more or less abundant, **his** (the lion's) numbers depending chiefly on the presence of the game from which **he** derives his sustenance. — 6. Innocent youths should, I think, also receive the same instruction; for . . . it has never struck me that **the spider** is invariably male and the **fly** invariably female. — 7. A child asks “why” out of idle curiosity just as a **puppy** explores the ins and outs of a room new to him.

b) Sachen — Personifikation.

Die fast unbegrenzte Freiheit, geschlechtslose Substantiva zu personifizieren, ohne an ein bestimmtes Geschlecht gebunden zu sein, gestattet es, der gewöhnlichen wie getragenen, besonders auch der humoristischen Rede ein eigenartiges Gepräge zu geben.

Die folgenden Gruppen sind demnach nur bedingte, da gerade die Abweichung von dem gewöhnlichen Gebrauch besonders wirksam sein kann.

(Mit Vorliebe) männlich

werden gebraucht:

Death, (the) Deity, Despair, Fate, Love, Providence, Sun, Time;

Flußnamen;

Abstrakte Bezeichnungen männlicher Wesen: a free-lance.

(Mit Vorliebe) weiblich

werden gebraucht:

Allgemeine:

Länder, Städte, Schiffe (in Luft und Wasser), *Colleges*, Universitäten, Blumen;

Tugenden, Laster, Künste, Wissenschaften, Fertigkeiten.

Besondere:

Democracy u. ä.	Labour	Power
Fame	Moon	Religion
Fancy	Nation	Rumour
Fashion	Nature	Scandal
Fortune	Panic	Society
History	Peace	State.

1. **Panic** we will . . . assume to be of the feminine gender and a spinster, though properly **she** should be classed with the large mixed race of moral and mental neuters which are the bulk of comfortable nations. — 2. But the few who have ears to listen to the voice of life **herself**, must work by faith. — 3. Of theology **she** (Oxford) has spoken aloud. In those roaring forties of the last century **she** sent a blast over the quiet waters which raised a storm that is not set. — 4. **Edinburgh** has with **her** beauty the proud intolerance of the time of Mary, Queen of Scots. **London** is magnificently human and nothing human is alien to **her**. — 5. The real strength of the **Church of England** is not ascertainable until **she** is attacked. **She** has more absentee supporters, more friends among 'the unbelievers' than any Church in Christendom. — 6. It is likely that the European powers will prove more reasonable on this subject (Peace Conference) than the United States, or that **the United States herself** will change **her** mind. — 7. A weak **Power** can be forced to fulfil an agreement, whereas a strong **Power** does as **she** likes. — 8. **The North**, anxious to make up **her** quarrel with the South, is tired of the Negro. — 9. Let us give Art a rest for a little. I think **Art** can take care of **herself**. — 10. **The Summer** looks out

from **her** brazen tower through the flushing bars of July. — 11. **The Public School Product** is not worth the price that is paid for **him**. — 12. And in this assertion of a Reality utterly inscrutable in nature. **Religion** finds an assertion essentially coinciding with **her** own. — 13. When **the sun** makes **his** appearance (in London) **he** is photographed, that folks may not forget.

Wechsel des Geschlechts in demselben Satz:

14. Ah! People need to rise early to see **the sun** in all **its** splendour, for **his** brightness seldom lasts the day through. — 15. And it was the love, devotion, and pride for **Eton itself** which inspired all this splendid proof of how **her** children regarded **her**. — 16. Throughout all Europe, **Spain** alone rears **its** head, the unspoiled race, content in philosophic guise to fail in all **she** does, and thus preserve the individual independence of **her** sons.

Humoristisch:

17. Though **necessity** has no law, **she** has **her** lawyers. — 18. **English** as **she** is spoke, wrote. — 19. All the **World** and **his** (its) wife. — 20. The **monster on the Thames** is shapeless, formless, even sexless. For who is there who can say with authority whether London be a **he**, or a **she** or an **it**? — 21. The **lordly guinea** not only held **his** own, but had risen in **value** to twenty-eight or thirty shillings; and this because **his** humble **sister silver** had fallen very low in the world. — 22. 'Twas there that the **inner man** dissolved itself, and poured **itself** out in streams of pleasant chat.

Das Adjektiv.

Form des Adjektivs.

Das Adjektiv hat eigentliche Abänderungsformen nur für die Steigerungsgrade; als vollwertiges Substantiv hat es dessen Flexionsformen:

bad — worse — worst; great — greater — greatest.
an innocent, innocents, an innocent's, innocents'.

Syntax des Adjektivs.

A. Das eigentliche Adjektiv

oder „Eigenschaftswort“ wird in den weitaus meisten Fällen an seiner Stellung erkannt; s. C.

Der Unterschied zwischen attributivem und prädikativem Gebrauch ist im wesentlichen graduell oder auch individuell. Der prädikative Gebrauch ist nicht auf die Zuhilfenahme einer Kopula angewiesen; wo diese nicht verwendet wird, kann es indessen oft zweifelhaft sein, ob die Eigenschaft dem Hauptwort dauernd oder nur für den besonderen Fall beigelegt wird.

I. Das Adjektiv in „adjektivischer“ Form mit Einschluß der einfachen Partizipien.

a) Das attributive Adjektiv

bedarf eines Stützwortes; dieses ist entweder ein Substantiv oder eine als Substantiv verwendete andere Wortart oder Wortgruppe. Ersatz findet das Stützwort

1. formell — durch **one(s)**.

One(s) vertritt das bereits genannte oder allgemein bekannte Substantiv, oder es dient zur Substantivierung des Adjektivs.

α) **one(s)** nach dem Adjektiv:

1. Strong minds have undoubtedly an ascendant over **weak ones**. — 2. It is very curious how some women are born with a distinct disapproval of work; and perverse fate demands that they should be **the very ones** to have to buckle to. — 3. In the fourth volume Dr. Frazer enumerates various theories of the origin of totemism, including two **old ones** and **one new one** of his own. — 4. Pedantic hostility to good usage insists that some **particular one** (construction) is not only a **proper one**, but that it is **the only proper one**.

In festen Verbindungen wie:

A knowing one, (the) knowing ones.

The Evil one — the Holy one — the (an) only one.

β) **one** vor dem Adjektiv:

1. Simple as is this conception of rhetoric, it is **one hard** to keep in mind. — 2. **The one** mentioned above: der (die) oben Erwähnte. — 3. This classification is open to criticism, but for practical purposes it will probably serve our ends better than **one more exhaustive**.

2. syntaktisch

durch Anlehnung an ein Substantiv oder durch Selbstergänzung desselben:

1. Home Rule which, in 1895, seemed to us among **the most urgent**, and to some of us to be **the very one most urgent** of all the necessities of the day . . . — 2. Only the fear of a **stronger** keeps many a **man** from taking life for a trifle. — 3. He was of old France, she of **new**. — 4. The piano, a **grand**, is on the Shakespeare side. open, with the keyboard at right angles to the wall. — 5. He was a grave man, and a **noiseless**. — 6. In which we see Nature making of a woman a maid again, and a **thrice whimsical**. — 7. In every case, the relation between the woman and the man is the same: she is the pursuer and contriver, he **the pursued** and disposed of. (B. Shaw.)

The Baltic (sea); the Pacific (ocean); the Oceanic (ship).

Durch gegenseitige Stützung:

8. There are **poor and poor**. — Rulers and ruled. — 9. The struggle was not between Patrician and Plebeian, between rich and poor. — 10. Pro-

perty demands a government framed on the ratio of **owners** and of **owning**. — 11. The following table shows the proportions of **unmarried**, **married**, and **widowed** in the United Kingdom.

Biblisch anklingend:

12. There can be no manner of doubt that Isidora Duncan is a **greater** **than** Maud Allan. — A **greater than** Johnson donned the suppliant's robes.

b) Das prädikative Adjektiv.

1. Im vollständigen Satz:

Men **are mortal**. Great **is** the Lord.

2. Sich ohne „Kopula“ an das Hauptwort anschließend:

α) Nur für den besonderen Fall aussagend oder betonend, oft auch aus rhythmischen Gründen:

1. It is not for us to depreciate sources of knowledge of which we know nothing, and still less would we venture to meet **confident prediction** with **prediction as confident**. — 2. The Channel, **unswimmable**, **untunnelable**, and **unbridgable**, has been flown. — 3. Congratulations had been showered upon the Chancellor of the Exchequer by **supporters loyal** and **supporters recently doubtfully loyal**. (Speech.) — 4. Mr. Lloyd George is in effect asking it to sanction the raising of revenue for some future date and for **purposes unknown**.

Weiteres s. Stellung des Adjektivs.

β) Als Objektserweiterung, besonders bei faktitiven Verben, mit finalem oder (und) konsekutivem Sinn:

1. Nobody alive can **prove me wrong**. — 2. People **shot him dead**; he was **shot dead**. — 3. Pitt and Murray might **talk themselves hoarse**. — 4. An employer wants a man **quick**, and he **wants him worth his wage**. — 5. I like **things sour**. (Ich liebe Saures.)

In festen Verbindungen:

to keep fresh, intact; to lay waste, open;
to sweep bare; to make good, perfect u. ä.

c) Attributivisch und prädikativisch, ersteres in der Form, letzteres in der Bedeutung:

1. Froude honestly believed that his side of the case was **the just one**, but he was the advocate, not the philosopher. — 2. It was a solemn moment and **one unique** in the history of the land. — 3. A first sentence should seldom be a **long**, and never an **intricate one**.

II. Das Adjektiv in „nichtadjektivischer“ Form.

Ein Ersatz des Adjektivs durch andere Wortarten, durch Wortgruppen und ganze Sätze findet in ausgedehntestem Maße statt.

Bem. Ermöglicht wird dieser Gebrauch lediglich dadurch, daß der Ersatz die übliche Stellung vor dem Substantiv erhält; in den meisten Fällen zwingt Rücksicht auf das grammatische Verhältnis das Vorhergehen eines Artikels oder Fürworts.

a) Ersatz des attributiven Adjektivs.

1. Durch einige wenige **Adverbia**,
örtliche und zeitliche, nicht abgeleitete:

The above remark; the above and greater enormities. — A down train. — The home and foreign industry. — The then colonial empire. — The hither (off, on) side. — The Never-Never Land.

1. The Jews are still by courtesy called a nation, in remembrance of their *whilom* condition. — 2. Unluckily a book is now so *everyday* a thing that no one is provoked into marginal activity.

2. Durch Substantiva.

a) Gattungsnamen und Abstrakta:

1. Poets make *spring flowers* and *autumnal bloom* at the same time. — 2. The advantage of a *country life* over a *town one*. — 3. The *open-access library*. — The *centre one* of three (tombstones). — The *minority law* report. — 4. The publication of the Official Report of the *Nature Study Exhibition Association* marks, in a sense, the recent introduction and recognition of a new element and feature in English schools and methods of teaching.

A four-wheel carriage ist ein bestimmter «Typ»: *four-wheel* ist adjektivisch, unveränderlich.

A four-figure payment. — The *Thousand-mile* run. — The *Two-Power* standard. — A *two-mile* walk. — A *twenty-four-Horse power* combined harvester. — The *three-volume* collected works. — A *forty-parson* Power of conversation. (Byron.)

A three-cornered fight. Die Partizipialendung ... *ed* wird dem Substantiv *corner* angehängt:

A two-barrelled rifle. — 5. The contents of the work tell one where to go, what fees are charged, what hotels provide streams, and *what sized fishes* may be expected (adjektivisches *what size* + *ed.*, s. 3, b).

The *Seven-Years' War* ist die übliche Schreibweise, welcher die S. 47 a besprochene Auffassung zugrunde liegt. Ebenso berechtigt ist die Fortlassung des Apostrophs:

6. The question ... was whether the Marshal was to be "the *President* of a *seven-years Republic*" or "the *seven-years President* of a Republic."

The poor rates — a mad doctor:

Der Ton entscheidet, ob *poor* und *mad* Adjektiva sind oder substantivisch = *for the poor, mad* stehen. — On sick leave.

Mit Verbalformen:

A parting kiss (at parting). — The retired list (of those ret. from service). — A retiring allowance. (granted on ret.)

β) Stoffnamen.

Hier sind drei Fälle möglich:

Das Adjektiv ist durch das Substantiv verdrängt;
Eine Adjektivform wird überhaupt nicht gebildet;
Beide Wortarten bestehen nebeneinander.

Alle eigentlichen Stoffadjektiva endigen auf ...en.

Bem. Wie weit sie ausschließlich gebraucht werden, wie weit sie der Bedeutung nach von Ersatzformen verschieden sind, wie endlich der Gebrauch schwankt, veraltet oder dichterisch ist, lehrt grundsätzlich das Wörterbuch.

γ) Eigennamen.

αα) Ortsnamen.

Von **einheimischen** Ortsnamen sind Adjektiva kaum vorhanden; die vorhandenen werden meist nur **substantivisch** gebraucht, z. B.:

An Etonian, a Salisburian, a Londoner.

The Edinburgh Review. — An Eton boy, Eton boys. — Yarmouth bloaters. — The Glasgow Herald. — Salisbury plain. — The all India Queen Victoria Hall at Calcutta.

1. Gower was really not a **North of England**, but a **South of England man** (= a Southerner). — 2. Our correspondence columns bear witness to the widespread interest aroused by the **Cambridge proposals**. — 3. William and Robert Chambers were the sons of a **Peebles cotton manufacturer**.

Für die Verwendung von eigentlichen Adjektiven ausländischer Ortsnamen ist es entscheidend, ob ihre Bildung möglich oder bequem ist. Viel verwendet aber werden sie überhaupt nicht; am gewöhnlichsten sind die auf ...ese, ...ian ausgehenden:

A Parisian merchant, a Viennese bootmaker.

Bem. Bei a Parisian merchant denkt man mehr an seine Herkunft und seine Eigenschaften als Pariser; a Paris merchant kann auch ein Nicht-Pariser sein, der sein Geschäft dort hat.

ββ) Personennamen.

A Gladstone bag — Gladstone bags.

1. In fact Lord Dalmeny was a Gladstone and not a Chamberlain free-trader. — 2. The **Macaulay sentence** is plain as that of Swift himself. — This does not affect sentences like the **Macaulay** one above. — 3. The average is about the **Hall Caine level**. — 4. The **Bacon** and other letters. — 5. The **D'Annunzio** and the **Shelley** and the **Shaw plays** were probably refused on account of their subjects. The **Brieux** and the **Ibsen ones** because they were immoral.

Adjektiva von Personennamen.

Anerkannte Größen können das Stammwort zu einem Adjektiv (oder Substantiv) abgeben, welches die dem Träger des Namens

notorisch oder in besonderem Grade zukommende Eigenschaft bezeichnet. — Auch hier ist die bequeme Bildbarkeit der Adjektiva Voraussetzung.

Wo aber bei lebenden Persönlichkeiten die Adjektivform gebildet wird, behält sie etwas Fremdartiges.

The Homeric age; Byronics, Byronic pose; the Whitmanic form. — The Khedivial Law School, Cairo. — Caroline Literature. — The Victorian era.

Bem. Die Tagespresse gebraucht diese meist mit fremdsprachlichen Endungen gebildeten Adjektiva mit großer Ungeheuerlichkeit, vielfach im ironischen Sinn, zum Hohn, zum Spott, verächtlich.

6. "He is a most brilliant writer." "**Macaulayese**," said Ashe per-
versely: "and not very good at that." — 7. The reproach conveyed in the
phrase "**Johnsonian English**" must not mislead us. It is aimed at his words,
not at his structure. — 8. Flee **Carlylese** as the very Devil! (M. Arnold.) —
9. He uses the words "**Diocletian repose**"; if there is an adjective of that
Emperor's name, it must be (*horribile dictu*) "**Diocletianian**."

3. Durch Wortgruppen und Sätze

in der mannigfachsten Zusammenstellung und vielfach mit Übertreibungen, welche in der edleren Sprache vermieden werden:

1. The **well-to-do** middle classes. — 2. An **all-give-and-no-take** policy. —
3. The **would-be-widow** wife. — 4. It was an avarice which thwarted itself,
a **penny-wise-and-pound-foolish** cupidity. — 5. The **stay-at-home** Briton. —
6. The ideal held up to girls nowadays is apparently the **sexless sort** of
Diana one.

b) Ersatz des prädikativen Adjektivs.

Dieser Gebrauch ist weit beschränkter als der vorige, da syntaktische Schwierigkeiten besonders dann im Wege stehen, wenn das Prädikatsverbum nur vorschwebt.

Bem. Die Nachstellung des Ersatzprädikates ist in der Rede leichter möglich als in der Schrift, wo sich die Grenze gegen andere Satztheile eher vermischt, da die Betonung nicht bezeichnet wird.

1. A journal the **other side of us** has just become vacant. — 2. The
money-market is the place in which **money down** is exchanged for the promise
of **money some day**. — 3. Both of these texts are **tenth century**. — 4. We
are very "**Reform**" here you know—phonetics and "**direkte Methode**." —
5. The narrative errs on the side of being too **matter-of-fact**. — 6. Even
irreligious people don't feel **week-day** on Sundays.

Statt einer gewissen Art von Eigenschaftswörtern können Hauptwörter eintreten, bei denen das „qualitative“ of fehlen kann; doch verlangen sie ein adjektivisches Attribut:

7. He is twice **my** age. — 8. **What (no)** use talking about it? — 9. Indeed,
the book is **wonderful value** for the money. Yet—how little even these
excellent illustrations yield the genius of the man! — 10. Look at these hands.
This is an Englishman. You never see fingers **this shape** in Russia. — 11. Look,
the dirt rubs off and leaves the hand quite a **good colour**. — 12. **What**

size do you want to be? — 13. . . . and being **so many different sizes** in a day is very confusing. — 14. "Whoever lives there," thought Alice (in Wonderland), "it'll never do to come upon them **this size**."

B. Das substantivische Adjektiv,

d. h. das **ohne Stützwort** auftretende, selbständige Adjektiv.

a) Das substantivisch gebrauchte Adjektiv.

Das Adjektiv bleibt unverändert und übernimmt die meisten Funktionen des Substantivs, bedarf aber des Zusatzes des best. Art. oder adjektivischer Pronomina, falls nicht der Zusammenhang eine Unklarheit ausschließt.

α) Geschlechtlich — (meist) pluralisch

für eine ganze Klasse von Personen, nicht im sächsischen Genitiv gebraucht.

the poor, the aged poor, the London poor. our poor, the poor in mind, the intellectually poor. — The deaf and dumb. — The easily pleased, imposed-upon. — The out of work.

1. He has been a wholesome, inspiring influence on **the young of talent**. — 2. We are all interchanging **our rich**. — 3. Let **the dead** bury their dead. — 4. **The needy** sell it and **the rich man** buys. — 5. I respect the burglar more than I do **the idle rich**. — 6. There is a vulgar idea among **the second-rate** in this country that a man should never speak of the matter, or the matters which he best understands. — 7. Unhappily for this touching theory, **our intellectually underfed** choose to drink crude spirits rather than matured vintages. — 8. They saw ever fresh forms of that truth which formed the material of the instructions which **the initiated** into the mysteries received. — 9. Her quick nature realized **the out of prison** as suddenly and suddenly as it had sunk suddenly and leadenly under the sense of imprisonment.

Im Falle solcher Erweiterung wie in 1, 8 und 9 ist statt des Artikels **those** das Übliche:

10. The most miserable, and therefore the most urgently in need of assistance, are **those convicted of unpardoned crimes**. — 11. Many of **those not unfriendly to him** (Jowett) thought the sum of his own beliefs was no system but a series of compromises. — 12. This industry allowed many of **those engaged in it** to amass large fortunes.

Der Zusammenhang läßt keine Unklarheit aufkommen:

13. Every day, through the stony streets, the tumbrils now **filled with** **Condemned**. — 14. There would be **no honest unemployed** until no land was capable of better than its existing use. — The Premier received a deputation of **unemployed**. — 15. Locked up securely in countless desks, hidden away from the irreverent eyes of **dearest and nearest**, like budgets of odes and sonnets that will never see the light . . . — 16. Both sea and land hold **mighty dead**, and mighty memories.

Bem. Sind nur einzelne Vertreter der Klasse gemeint, so verlangt das Adjektiv ein Stützwort:

17. The analogy between individuals and races has some weak points and may not hold good here; but civilizations do grow old and perish, and it is the old and decrepit ones that trouble themselves excessively about children. — 18. Some few of the great ones have, I believe, thus spoken themselves forth (*ones* geht auf vorher genannte "authors").

Singularisch.

wo die Beziehung durchaus klar ist:

19. The mighty dead, sagt Rosebery am Grabe Gladstones. — 20. He was the caressed of the waiters, and escorted to the door by the host. — 21. And not sorry, perhaps, to hear that such was the state of things, and that Pen's forsaken was consoling herself, Warrington took his leave of the irascible musician.

The English u. ä.

Die mit **man** (**men**) gebildeten Völkernamen folgen der allgemeinen Regel, wenn auch weniger streng.

Vgl. the rich man — plur. the rich.

Die einzelnen Personen verlangen ein Stützwort, auch im Plural. Der sächsische Genitiv wird auch hier nicht gebraucht.

1. Four millions of **Irishmen** are even harder to govern than the whole of Hindustan. — 2. "That's just like **those English**," said an Irish professional man of moderate views, "they never can make allowances for poetic license!" (höhnisch!) — 3. The **Manchester Irish** are advised by Mr. Redmond to vote against the candidate. — 4. Many were the **Englishmen** who wished well to the **French** at the commencement of their revolution. — 5. The **English** prevented the **Welsh** from the use of fairs and markets, as you do the Americans from fisheries and foreign ports. — 6. The foreign players know their work, while the **Englishmen**, perhaps equally good players, don't know it (*the E. players present*). — 7. We **Englishmen** stop very short of the principles upon which we support any given part of our constitution; or even the whole of it altogether. — We **English** are really beginning to get a bit smarter.

Bem. Pedantisch ist die Sprache auch hier nicht.

8. In the existing condition of things so many **British** leave the country and will only return when there is some prospect of resuming business. — 9. The chief impression left on the reader of Mrs. Alfred Sidgwick's lively and interesting book on "Home Life in Germany" is that **English** and **Germans** are *au fond* remarkably alike. — Jedoch: The **German man's** shrewdness in business, his invulnerability to the wiles of deceit and trickery, I attribute to his early training in the mazes of his own alphabet.

Chinese.

Adjektiva, die Völker oder Stadtbewohner bezeichnen und auf einen Zischlaut endigen, bleiben, wenn pluralisch gebraucht, unverändert:

1. **Japanese** have a heart like **Englishmen**, but religion prohibited love and that made us hypocrites. — 2. Calvin and Beza were **Genevese** by residence. — 3. A **Swiss**—two **Swiss**.

β) Geschlechtslos — singularisch.

Hier sind zu unterscheiden:

αα) Adjektiva als echte Neutra. (*The sublime.*)

ββ) Adjektiva mit zu ergänzendem Stützwort. (*The past.*)

γγ) Frei gebrauchte Adjektiva.

αα) *The sublime.*

Im Gegensatz zu dem Substantiv, welches eine Eigenschaft als abstrakt gedacht hinstellt und artikellos bleibt, bezeichnet das ihm entsprechende Adjektiv die Eigenschaft als etwas Konkretes, wobei der bestimmte Artikel auf das (wissenschaftlich oder notorisch) unter dem Eigenschaftswort zu Verstehende nachdrücklich hinweist.

Wie **the poor** alle, welchen diese Eigenschaft zukommt — **those who are notoriously poor** — umfaßt, zwingt der bestimmte Artikel bei dem geschlechtslosen Adjektiv zu der Auffassung von **that** (*which is, or is generally looked upon as*) **sublime**.

Die letzte Erklärung, zu welcher die Sprache in gewissen Fällen selbst greifen muß, läßt das Adjektiv als echtes Neutrum erkennen, bei dem höchstens ein neutrales *that* als Stützwort vorschwebt, nicht aber ein — wenn auch noch so unbestimmtes — Hauptwort. (Vgl. Adj. als vollwert. Subst.)

1. In the minds of men **the useful** has succeeded to **the beautiful**. — 2. The whole deportment indicated a fine sense of **the becoming**. — 3. **The best** needs better conditions and dies out; **the worse**, being **the fitter**, survives. — 4. Possibly it may be necessary to continue to demonstrate **the already demonstrated**. — 5. The sole aim of art is to attain **the supremely beautiful**.

Mit unbestimmtem Artikel oder Possessivum; vgl. at Präp.

6 It is Mr. James at his **most subtly psychological**, at his **most overwhelmingly copious**, at his **most exasperatingly deliberate**. — 7. Burke at his **best** is English at its **best**.

Eine freiere Verwendung zeigt sich z. B. in:

8. There is even **worse** to follow. — 9. Theosophy in **Little**. (Buchtitel.) — 10. But to destroy corruption and faction by introducing despotism would have been to cure **bad by worse**. — 11. Reading them you suspect there is no background of beauty or passion, no secret **holy of holies**, in his mind. (Allerheiligstes.)

In philosophischer Sprache:

12. He was humble, compared with those who profess to understand not only the relation of **the Creating** to **the created**, but also how **the Creating** is constituted. — 13. A **Known** cannot be thought of apart from an **Unknown**; nor can an **Unknown** be thought of apart from a **Known**. (H. Spencer.)

Ersatz des substantivischen Neutrums bieten:

1. Die Umschreibung durch **what is** (sublime), besonders wenn formale Schwierigkeiten vorliegen:

1. He (Browning) thinks of it (evil) philosophically as a condition of **good**, or again, as an excess or a distortion of **what is good**. — 2. In every venerable precedent they pass by **what is essential**, and take only **what is accidental**; they keep out of sight **what is beneficial**, and hold up to public imitation **all that is defective**. — 3. The Suffragist movement has always been exactly what it is to-day—namely a revolutionary and dangerous movement supported by **all that is worst and least reputable** in the community.

2. Die Anlehnung an das als Pronomen Indefinitum (s. dieses) verwendete **thing**, wodurch die konkrete Bedeutung des (nunmehr attributiven) Adjektivs mehr hervortritt:

1. Proceeding, Mr. Morley said that to be a Liberal was a **fine thing**. — 2. If there was one **thing still finer** it was to be young. (Speech.) — 3. Biography and criticism are deftly blended into an intermediate **something**, and the **last thing** the reader need apprehend is to be bored. — 4. The **only thing** that many schools are thoroughly successful in teaching is inattention. — 5. The one **thing needful**. („Das Eine, was not tut.“)

ββ) The (a) past.

Die adjektivischen Bezeichnungen der Zeit werden wie Substantiva behandelt, können als solche durch Adjektiva näher bestimmt werden, aber nicht in die Mehrzahl treten.

Sie bedürfen eines Artikels, adjektivischen Fürworts oder possessiven Genitivs:

1. No sooner are they (Milton's words) pronounced than **the past** is present and **the distant** near. — **The** dim and distant **future**. — **The** woman with a **past**. — 2. Perception of **the present** is always blended with conception of a **past**, if not also with anticipation of a **future**.

γγ) Freigebrauchte Adjektiva.

Farbenadjektiva können wie (stoffliche oder abstrakte) Substantiva behandelt und pluralisiert werden (s. S. 69):

Sprachadjektiva bedürfen nicht immer des Artikels:

1. **English**, with its grammatical simplicity, with its brevity, has produced the best political eloquence of the modern world. — 2. The works of Darwin and Mill were soon rendered into **Japanese**. — 3. Of **Italian**, the king had not enough to read a page of Metastasio with ease; and of **the Spanish and English**, he did not... understand a single word. — 4. What is **the English** for . . . (scil. *word, equivalent*)? — 5. To translate **from the German**, **from G. into English**. — 6. **The Latin** was in the sixteenth century all and more than all that **the French** was in the eighteenth.

b) Das Adjektiv als vollwertiges Substantiv.

Sobald durch Adjektiva Gruppen, Klassen, Mengen von Einzelwesen oder Sachen bezeichnet werden, die häufiger vorkommen und bei denen das Substantiv sich von selbst ergänzt,

kann dieses als Ergänzung fortfallen; was nach der allgemeinen Auffassung selbstverständlich ist, wird ausgelassen; was tatsächlich Hauptwort geworden, erscheint auch formell als solches.

α) Geschlechtlich — meist Personenbezeichnungen.

Nicht romanische Adjektiva:

1. Sir Wilfrid Lawson was a **stalwart** of the **stalwarts** in the war against war. — 2. Would any man, however strongly self-controlled, hear his sister called a **wanton** and proceed to discuss the likelihood of the charge being true? — 3. **The heathen** (Plural) und the **heathens**; a **heathen**. — 4. A **black's** knife; doch the **white man's** grave, burden. — 5. Are we sure that the **white man** will always lead?

Romanische Adjektiva:

Der Umfang des Gebrauches ergibt sich aus folgenden Sätzen:

6. He came to me to know whether he should become a **religious**. — **Most religious** spent a large part of their working day in the cloister. (Hier sind es Nonnen!) — 7. You are as silent and as gloomy as a **mute** at a funeral. — 8. I am a **mortal** and liable to fall. — **We mortals** pass our lives at the bottom of a great ocean which we call the atmosphere. — 9. Mr. Keary considers that Scott was an **Intellectual** rather than an **Imaginative**. — 10. **The other neutral** concerned is Russia. — 11. Of course it is several thousands of years since such **grotesques** were ramping about alive and well, but that is no excuse for preserving them. (Riesentiere im Kensington Museum.) — 12. **We moderns** are to the **ancients** what the **poor** are to the **rich**.

The innocent — the innocents.

Innerhalb einer ganzen Klasse derer, die unschuldig sind, bilden *the innocents* eine bestimmte Gruppe, z. B. die „Kindlein“ in *“the Murder of the Innocents”*.

Bem. So erscheinen periodische Bildungen, welche besonders für die Tagespresse und Reden wertvoll sind, häufig literarischen Kurs erhalten, sonst vielfach scherzhaft oder verächtlich sind. — Die meisten kommen und gehen.

Nur der Gebrauch entscheidet, welche von ihnen auch singularisch verwendet werden können:

1. I pride myself on not being one of these **susceptibles**. (B. Shaw.) — 2. You can lay no possible restraints on almost any of them (the colonies) which may not be presently eluded, if you do not confound **the innocent** with **the guilty**, and burthen those whom . . . you ought to exonerate. — 3. The flat adverb is all but universal with **the illiterate**. — **Illiterates** = Analphabeten.

The (a) Voluntary, Voluntaries bezeichnet die Anhänger einer vom Staat unabhängigen Volksschule. — **The Wees — the Frees** hießen die beiden Parteien im schottischen Kirchenstreit 1904. — A **commoner** — the Commons. — **The Heavies, Buffs, Eighth, 74's** (Regimenter.) — A **three-year old** — the new **three-year olds**.

Blues.

Bei manchen Adjektiven kann das vorschwebende Hauptwort Personen- und Sachname sein:

1. The Oxford **Blues** Committee has decided to award **half-blues** to the Varsity Boxing representatives. (Punch.) Das erste «Blues» bezeichnet Personen, das zweite Sachen. — *A blue (blues)* bezeichnet ferner *a blue coat boy* und *one (of the regiment) of the Blues*. — 2. On ordinary nights, too, they keep back **undesirables** (Theaterstücke). — The **socially** and **industrially undesirables** (Personen) it is intended to exclude come wholly from happy countries blessed by a high Protective tariff.

My betters.

Einige vergleichende Adjektiva können als vollwertige Substantiva gebraucht werden. Es sind

better, equal, elder, junior, senior, superior, inferior, während *like* kein Pluralzeichen annimmt.

Bem. *Thy, greater, thy weaker* sind archaisch-dichterisch; vgl. *a greater than* . . . S. 59₁₂.

1. He is the **senior** of his bride by five years. — 2. I sent away a **better** than him. — Make way for **your betters**. — 3. Intellectually **the equal**, in some ways even **the superior** of his European ruler, the Indian does not believe that he has anything of importance to learn from the West. — 4. Man has not lost his terrible prerogative and stands **an equal** amidst **equals**. — 5. . . . the personal charms of this goddess, **whose like** he had not beheld until now. — They and **their like** were doomed. — What service is your money to **the like** of her? — 6. Scott remains as great a favourite with the young of the day as he was with **their elders** in the early part of the 19th century. — **An elder** = Kirchenältester.

β) Sachnamen.

aa) Konkreta.

Auch für die Verwendung von Adjektiven als Sachnamen kommen nur vereinzelte germanische Adjektiva in Frage.

Der bei *innocent* und *illiterate* festgestellte Bedeutungsunterschied fällt fort.

Bei Sachnamen dient daher die Substantivierung — neben dem als solchem fortbestehenden Adjektiv — lediglich der Spezialisierung, jedoch mit der weiteren Einschränkung, daß ganze Klassen dieser Adjektiv-Substantiva nur pluralisch im Gebrauch sind.

Im wesentlichen lassen sich drei Klassen unterscheiden:

Preßerzeugnisse — singularisch und pluralisch:

daily, weekly, fortnightly
monthly, quarterly, annual
editorial, a penny dreadful u. a.

Kleidung, Tracht — pluralisch:

smalls, shorts, tights
regimentals, canonicals, pontificals u. a.

Stoffe, Waren, Produkte, Farben — meist pluralisch:

woollens, worsteds, linens, eatables
drinkables, necessities (a. nec.), goods, vegetables (a veg.)
greens, colonials, artificials (an a.) u. a.

Dazu kommen Bildungen wie empties, simples, free-and-easies, yellows, the Rockies u. a.

1. Even when arable was not converted into pasturage, enclosure ended . . . (Per.) — 2. The best currants are the small black, rich and fleshy kind; the ordinary provincials which are commonly used are far inferior. (Per.) — 3. Here they stretch almost unbrokenly from Barking to Upminster, in the spring a quiet study in greens and earth-browns, in summer and autumn a marvellous panorama of colour, where greens of every shade in nature are splendidly varied by prodigal efforts in golds and reds. (Per.)

ββ) Abstrakta.

Die Möglichkeit, echte Abstrakta zu pluralisieren — *loves*, *hatreds* — erstreckt sich auf eine große Zahl von Adjektiven, welche aber in vielen Fällen nicht mehr singularisch vorkommen und dann als abstrakte Kollektiva aufzufassen sind.

Bem. Der tatsächliche Gebrauch schwankt von Periode zu Periode. Was vielleicht nur *ad hoc* oder in einem besonderen Zusammenhange gebildet ist, kann in die allgemeine Sprache übergehen oder auf den speziellen Gebrauch beschränkt bleiben, kann auch wieder ganz verschwinden.

1. A few happy words and phrases . . . are all that reach posterity; the rest pass into oblivion with the other perishables of the age. — 2. These are bygoners. — Bygoners are bygoners. — 3. She understands how the great function of the historian is to separate constants from variables. — 4. The contrary; by the law of contraries. — An unseen, unseens = Extemporalien. — 5. The misspents of every minute are a new record against us in heaven. (Lord Avebury.) — 6. He would be sorry if that became a general practice. for it would probably only lead to disagreeables. (The Speaker, H. of C.)

Ethic — ethics.

Die adjektivische Endung . . . ic, ics dient fast ausschließlich zur Bezeichnung von Wissenschaften; doch herrscht in bezug auf ihren Gebrauch keine Übereinstimmung; s. Satzsyntax, *Concord*.

1. The Ethic, the Ethics of Spinoza. — The ethics of game. — To Spencer, also, . . . ethics was the crown of all human thought. — 2. Politics were not a poem or a novel or a philosophy, they were a battle. (Speech.) — The wits of the Restoration were as much tired of literary sublimities as of heroic politics or morals. — She spoke like a leisured gentlewoman who had spared the time from her idleness to cultivate a language or two, a little music, a few politics. — A new scheme of politics.

s. S. 49 u. — The politics of the smaller States are quite as interesting as, and sometimes much more interesting than, those of their bigger brothers. — 3. Now people are surfeited; their interest for the seemingly miraculous is hardly more than momentary, and the amazing truth is that they seem to be tired of all this mechanics and all this science. — 4. Statistics show that most centenarians die orphans. (Punch.) — Now the death-rate is perhaps as familiar as any statistic. — Given sufficiently bad logic and a sufficiently ingenuous and critical observer, there is no lie that cannot be bolstered up by statistics. — 5. Even if the tactics of the general do not wholly approve themselves to his subordinates, they can achieve nothing but disaster by trying to set up a different system of tactics. — But then he was told that these were tactics. — He, however, would not have liked to have adopted a great many of the tactics of his opponents. (Speech.)

C. Die Stellung des Adjektivs.

Grundsätzlich kann das Adjektiv vor und hinter seinem Hauptwort stehen.

- a) Wo steht das Adjektiv gewöhnlich?
- b) Wann muß es nachstehen?
- c) Wann kann es nachstehen?

a) Die gewöhnliche Stellung.

Das attributivische Adjektiv (Partizip.) steht mit den dasselbe bestimmenden Modaladverbien vor dem Substantiv überall da, wo nicht besondere Gründe die Nachstellung nötig oder wünschenswert erscheinen lassen:

A truly wise man; a really good man. — An amusing story; a highly amusing story. — A long forgotten song; an otherwise useful book.

1. The result—the now completely forgotten result—was rich in humour. — 2. He seems to have been in an unusually gentle mood. — 3. Our objection to this seeming-harmless little book is based on much graver grounds than these.

Soll das Adjektiv den wesentlichen Begriff bilden, so fehlt der Schrift eine allgemein gültige Bezeichnung. In

4. We wish to see the development of our classical language verlangt nach dem Zusammenhang *classical* den Hauptton. Daher erklären sich Wiederholungen wie:

5. Art beauty is the embodiment, adequate, effective embodiment, of co-operative intellect and spirit. — 6. Yet there was still a chance, a slender chance, of escape.

Eine größere Anhäufung von Attributen wird in der guten Prosa vermieden. Die folgenden Sätze stellen die Grenze des Erlaubten dar:

7. German society in its wider sense is a prism of many, but by no means harmoniously blended, colours. — 8. There still remains in the

public mind a far from clear appreciation of the vast difference between the churchgoer and the churchmember. — 9. Many of Donne's poems are like a jotted record of adventure in an unknown country filled full of observation of strange rather than of beautiful things. — 10. I doubt whether Lord Kitchener is of sufficiently pliant a nature to find favour with the War Office as at present constituted. — 11. Government must no longer... allow them (the lower classes) to grow up in worse than heathen ignorance.

Beschränkt ist auch die Voranstellung des 2. Partizips der mit Präpositionen gebildeten Transitiva. Man sagt:

an unheard-of crime; his much talked-about policy; jedoch: the result arrived-at; the speech alluded-to.

Umstellung — Heraushebung.

Eine Trennung des Adjektivs von seinem Substantiv durch den Unbest. Artikel tritt ein, wenn das Adjektiv durch

how, however, so, as

hervorgehoben werden soll. Die Umstellung ist gestattet auch bei

no + (germ.) Komparativ und bei too.

Weitere unbetonte Adjektiva bleiben an ihrer Stelle.

1. He is as bold a man as any in the army. — 2. How strange a question this is! — 3. He is not so stupid a fellow as he looks. — 4. However great a sinner he may be, he is sure to be pardoned. — 5. In French how quickly, how neatly, how gracefully, you can say just what you want to say to your interlocutor! How blunt and heavy and ugly an old instrument, in comparison, English seems! — 6. To be the champion of lost causes is to the individual as fine an impracticable ideal as may be. — 7. Such conviction animating so stubborn a natural courage, was a force irresistible. — 8. He is no worse a man than his friend.

b) Das Adjektiv muß nachstehen:

α) aus formalen Gründen, damit falsche oder unklare Beziehungen vermieden werden; vgl. Anhäufung S. 70 u.

1. An army six thousand men strong. — 2. I should tremble to have to offer an explanation to critics of Milton so acute as these two. — 3. The English is a character not to be hastily studied; for it always puts on a repulsive and ungracious aspect to the stranger. Vgl. S. 32. — 4. The best style, if we admit the phrase at all, can mean only the style best for a particular conception. — 5. Newcastle was greedy after power with a greediness all his own.

Bei similar, dissimilar, different, analogous, opposite, seltener bei other, findet gern eine Zerlegung statt, indem das Adjektiv voransteht und seine Ergänzung dem Hauptwort folgt:

1. Pitt's contemporaries did not altogether understand him; his mind moved in a different plane from theirs. — 2. Blake played a somewhat similar part in our naval war with the Dutch to that which Lord Roberts has played in the Campaign against the Boers. — 3. Analogous changes to this have taken place in other parts of the island. — 4. . . . the still

subsisting practice of looking on the government as representing an **opposite interest** to the public. — 5. Scott's *proof-copy* of the *Talisman* it was my fate to hold, in which his hero bears **another name** from that he later assigned to him. — His revelations need but little modification to make them applicable to **countries other than Russia**.

Ähnliche Zerlegungen sind:

6. London is an expensive place to live in. — 7. It is a melancholy sight enough. (*enough* ist intensiv.) — 8. A likely question to succeed. — 9. It is time to call attention to the fact that the American writers of to-day are much **inferior artists** to Hawthorne.

β) wenn es zweifellos prädikativisch ist:

αα) der Form und Entstehung nach

afraid, akin, alive, alone, aloof, ashamed, asleep, awake, aware, worth:

1. He did not hate the Winter now, for he knew that it was merely the **Spring asleep**. — 2. He started and resumed, in the manner of a sleeper that moment **awake**.

Bem. Well = wohl, gesund steht nicht ohne Kopula.

ββ) der Bedeutung nach, sobald etwas als selbständiger Satz Gedachtes zum Substantiv tritt:

1. Count Andrassy will accord to **Russia beaten** many advantages he would have to refuse to **Russia victorious**. — 2. A play read affects the mind like a **play acted**.

γ) Oppositionell — hervorhebend oder erweiternd:

1. Professor Geddes has had the **opportunity, surely unique**, of studying a small city with a view to spending half a million of money in its amelioration. — 2. France is so different from Paris. **Paris the most modern, the most cosmopolitan of cities; France the most provincial of countries**, where the peasants still keep their old costumes, talk in obsolete French ... — 3. **M. Arnold, careful, cool and scholarly**, held decided opinions on the poetic art.

δ) Something great u. ä.:

Nach unbestimmten geschlechtslosen Fürwörtern, s. Pron. Indef.

1. Many people think they are enjoying themselves, merely because they are doing **nothing useful**. — 2. That right thus exerted is allowed to have **something reprehensible** in it; **something unwise**, or **something grievous**. — 3. The **one thing certain** is that Togo, who has already sent some of his cruisers south as far as Singapore, will be ready to meet them. — 4. Mr. Austin Dobson, a delightful authority on **everything eighteenth century** ...

ε) Things — matters:

1. I have a little friend, a German, whose parents are enthusiastic admirers of **all things English**. — 2. Circumstances have conspired to bring Germany, and **things German** to the forefront of the world's stage. — 3. There is a soul of good in **things evil**. — 4. I knew there was something behind the veil, **things powerful and beautiful**, but my eyes were too weak to see

through the mist of words. — 5. Moreover Dr. Murray is regarded as an authority on **matters bibliographical**.

Bem. "Things impossible" is more striking than "**impossible things**."
(Meiklejohn.)

η) In einer großen Zahl fester Verbindungen, meist technischer Natur, z. B.:

Prince Royal, Attorney General, Bishop Designate, Cousin-German,
Lord Major Elect, Poet Laureate, heir male, apparent, sum-total,
body politic, gum Arabic, (from) malice prepense ..

In the **body politic**, as in the **natural body**, morbid languor generally succeeds morbid excitement.

θ) Die Bedeutung wechselt mit der Stellung:

A lady **present** (anwesend); a sum **certain** (fest abgemacht);
battles **royal** (Hauptschlachten); India **proper** (britisches Indien);
a revolution **proper** (properly speaking): to give the **lie direct**.

The **quotation proper** should be terse, surprising, apt, not too familiar even to scholars.

c) Das Adjektiv kann nachstehen.

Hier kommt weniger das Grammatische in Betracht als das Stilistische und Rhetorische; es handelt sich um eine Auffassung des Syntaktischen von einem andern Gesichtspunkt aus. Das tritt besonders auch da hervor, wo mehrere Adjektiva zum Substantiv treten und allgemeine rhythmische Gesetze sich Geltung verschaffen. Endlich kann es sich um älteres Sprachgut handeln oder um Zitate.

α) Das Adjektiv soll stärker hervortreten:

1. It was a word not to be mentioned in **ears polite**. — 2. Pitt rendered to his country a **service greater still**. — 3. In a **manner unique** Lord Salisbury had the faculty of standing apart from his fellow-men. — 4. **Truth absolute** is not attained by any one of the speakers: that, Browning would say, is the concern of God. — 5. The consequence was that, during the whole space of time just mentioned, Mr. Benjamin Allen had been wavering between **intoxication partial**, and **intoxication complete**. — 6. There are **dangers many** and **rocks terrible** which belong to each sea. — 7. For what if the poetic ecstasy had not been of **origin divine**? — 8. Whisky **hot**! — Soldiers **Three**. — Honour **bright**.

Die Hervorhebung geschieht auch formell durch steigende oder vergleichende Adverbia der verschiedensten Art. Substantiv mit Attribut rücken mit ihrem „Schwergewicht“ an das Ende des Satzes, wo grundsätzlich der Hauptton ruht:

9. Never has a community taken its place amongst the nations of the earth with **auspices so fair**. — 10. Its (liberty's) immediate results are often atrocious crimes, conflicting errors, scepticism on **points the most clear**, dogmatism on **points the most mysterious**. — 11. Vel. I purpose to write the history of England . . . down to a time which is within the memory of **men still living** und: This new room . . . forms now the central portion of that great reading-room (the Bodleyan) so affectionately

remembered by thousands of **still living students**. („der ältesten Leute“ — „noch lebender Studenten“.)

In chiastischer Form:

12. Addison's timidity averted that envy which would otherwise have been excited by **fame so splendid** and by **so rapid an elevation**. — 13. The University was fulfilling . . . its mission of cherishing **the life intellectual**, for **the intellectual life** begins where utility ends . . . (*Morning Post* über Willamowitz-Möellendorfs Oxfordor Vorträge, Juni 1908). — 14. In the words of Dugald Stewart, the great secret of happiness is to **accommodate ourselves to things external**, rather than to **accommodate external things to ourselves**.

β) Vor- oder nachstehen können einige temporale Adjektiva wie

consecutive, ensuing, following, previous, succeeding:

1. Milton commenced residence in the **Easter term ensuing**. — 2. In the long **years following** nothing Henrietta Maria could do is to be considered of the first importance.

Auch **born** kann ohne Bedeutungsunterschied die Stelle wechseln:

3. There is something extremely genteel in this sort of self-denial. Sarah Battle was a **gentlewoman born**. — 4. Thackeray was not a **born historical romancist**, as were Scott and Dumas; nor was he a **born historian** at all.

γ) Ferner die Adjektiva auf . . . **able** und . . . **ible**, besonders wenn sie zur Einschränkung eines dem Substantiv vorangehenden Superlativs oder von

all, every, any, only, no
dienen und passivisch (gerundiv) aufgefaßt sind:

1. It appeared to him (Goldsmith) **wealth inexhaustible**. — 2. This is **the most pitiful nonsense imaginable**. — 3. The method . . . adds a piquancy to the view as well as showing the beauties of the work in the **best manner possible**. — Against the Ecclesiastical Commission and its timely reforms Sydney Smith protested in the "Letters to Archdeacon Singleton", which put **the worst possible arguments into the best possible English**. — 4. My plan, being formed upon **the most simple grounds imaginable**, may disappoint some people when they hear it. — 5. Her definition of realism is one of **the most curious imaginable**. — 6. The Pope, Luther, or Calvin were **the only leaders visible**. — 7. As a child Martin tortured him; but the torture was tuned by time into **a thing bearable**.

δ) In Verbindungen wie

life immortal — love eternal — right divine

time immemorial — the law social — wisdom infinite,

in manchen andern, besonders dem Kanzleistil und der Kanzelsprache entlehnten Ausdrücken, endlich in Zitaten, ist die Nachstellung das Übliche geworden.

1. . . . Wide fields of delight and **pastures new**. (Milton.) — 2. The **City Wonderful**. (Bunyan; *W.* ist *Name* bei B.) — 3. There is no need to ascend the **mountain perilous** or to explore the **sea adventurous**; there is no need to search for strange environments or to nose out unsavoury corners.

(Nach Bunyan.) — 4. Scarce a rumour, we doubt, of Meredith the poet drifts to the many who are tempted by fame upon the *emprise perilous* of the novels.

Mehrere gleichwertige Adjektiva können sämtlich vor oder nach dem Substantiv stehen oder auch durch das Substantiv getrennt werden. Der Rhythmus ist naturgemäß in stärkerem Maße entscheidend:

1. This is a quite **good sentence, brief and pithy**. — 2. **Better colonists and more successful** did not exist than the Dutch. — 3. It is never good for a lot of men to live together apart from **home influence and feminine**. — 4. (Biblisch.) A good man and just. — Thou shalt not be affrighted at them: for the Lord, thy God, *is* among you, a **mighty God and terrible**.

Damit vgl.:

5. He procured a posting-chariot, **an ancient and musty**, of a late autumnal yellow unrefreshed by paint. — 6. For reasons **good or bad**, many of the ablest Irish Roman Catholics have taken up an attitude of extreme hostility to the government of the country. — 7. All her (Oxford's) efforts have so long been centred on the formation of the high mediocre type of **man, sound, urbane and estimable**—in fact, the good citizen. — 8. To forget an **enmity so long and so deadly** was no light task for a nature **singularly harsh and implacable**. — 9. **Lovely girls; bright women, brown-haired, black-haired, and grey; youths; stalwart men and old; gentle born and peasant born; all red wine for La Guillotine.**

Die Steigerung der Adjektiva.

I. Form.

Es gibt eine dreifache Form der adjektivischen Steigerung:

- a) die germanische,
- b) die romanische,
- c) die gemischte.

Die germanische besteht in der Anhängung von silbigem **er (r)** und **est (st)** an das Adjektiv, die romanische in der Voransetzung an sich steigernder Adverbien, die gemischte ist durch einige erstarrte Bildungen vertreten.

a) Die germanische Steigerung.

α) Regelmäßig.

Die Bildung erfolgt nach Gesetzen, welche die beim Substantiv und Verbum festgestellten graphischen Veränderungen nötig machen:

high, higher, highest	shy, shyer (shier), shyest (shiest)
gay, gayer, gayest	happy, happier, happiest
free, freer, freest	fit, fitter, fittest
noble, nobler, noblest	cruel, crueller, cruellest.

β) Unregelmäßig:

bad, ill, evil — worse — worst
good, well — better — best

far — farther, further — farthest, furthest
 late — later, latter — latest, last
 little — less, lesser — least
 much, many — more — most
 old — older, elder — oldest, eldest.

Bem. Elder und eldest sind nur attributivisch.

b) Die romanische Steigerung

verwendet nur

more, most — less, least

d. h. selbständige und selbständig gebrauchte Steigerungsformen:

fortunate — more, less fortunate — most, least fortunate.

c) Die gemischte, unvollständige Steigerung

hat — bei fehlender Positivform — nur germanischen Komparativ, den Superlativ **most** in fester (organischer) Verbindung entweder mit dem (fehlenden) Positiv oder mit dem Komparativ, außerdem Doppelformen, wenn **most** zum Positiv und zum Komparativ tritt:

(fore)	— former	— foremost
(hind)	— (hinder)	— hindmost, hindermost
(in)	— inner	— inmost, innermost
(mid) middle	—	— midmost, middlemost (midst)
(neath)	— (nether)	— nethermost
(nigh)	— (nigher)	— next (nighest)
(out)	— outer, utter	— { outmost, utmost outermost, uttermost
—	— (under)	— undermost
(up)	— upper	— upmost, uppermost.

Die Komparativa werden nur attributivisch gebraucht, zum Teil nur in festen Verbindungen.

Dazu kommen einige Superlativa wie
 easternmost, topmost.

Begrifflich entweder komparativisch oder superlativisch, formal nicht mehr zur Komparation gehörig sind:

a) nur komparativisch (Ergänzung mit to):

anterior,	major,	senior,
exterior,	minor,	superior,
inferior,	posterior,	ulterior,
interior,	prior,	second.

β) Nur superlativisch:

extreme, postreme, supreme.

II. Gebrauch.

Der germanischen Bildungsweise können alle einsilbigen, die zweisilbigen auf ...y und auf ...le mit vorhergehendem Konsonanten, von den zwei- und mehrsilbigen diejenigen folgen, welche auf der letzten Silbe betont sind.

Bem. Unverkennbar ist die Neigung, auch andere Adjektiva germanisch zu steigern, besonders alltägliche wie *clever, handsome, pleasant*.

Für alle andern Adjektiva ist die romanische Bildungsweise die Regel; zulässig ist sie bei allen.

Die Wahl der verschiedenen Steigerungsformen ist von lautlich-formalen und syntaktisch-stilistischen Verhältnissen abhängig, nicht selten auch Sache des persönlichen Geschmacks:

1. Of all railway journeys that one seemed one of the **shortest** and the **most full** of human sunshine. — 2. The candidates will look forward to rest after weeks of the **most arduous**, the **fiercest**, and the **most bitter** electioneering of our time. — 3. Is any rule **more plain** than this? — 4. Struggling a good while with these thoughts, by degrees I felt myself **more firm**. — 5. Dryden made the **grossest** satire of Juvenal **more gross**. — 6. This overland route was much the **shorter**, but by far the **more irksome** (*irksomer* zulässig). — 7. All Protestantism, even the **most cold** and **passive**, is a sort of dissent.

III. Syntaktisches.

a) Eine allmähliche Steigerung wird durch Wiederholung der germanischen, des *more* bei der romanischen Form, nicht selten auch durch Verbindung beider Formen ausgedrückt:

1. The Nightingale pressed closer against the thorn, and **louder and louder** grew her song. — 2. Things grew **worse and worse**. — 3. Her sacred flower has grown **rarer and more rare**. — 4. As children multiplied and grew, the household of the priest became **more and more beggarly**. — 5. ... and **quieter and more quiet** grew the air until all was still.

b) Relative und absolute Steigerung.

Schwebt der Vergleichungsgegenstand nur unbestimmt vor, so können die Steigerungsformen lediglich zur Abschwächung oder Verstärkung dienen, dem Positiv nur eine besondere Färbung geben.

Im allgemeinen läßt beim Superlativ der bestimmte Artikel auf die relative Auffassung schließen; ohne denselben konkurriert der Superlativ mit andern Steigerungsformen, ist absolut aufzufassen:

1. It remains a fact that of all European nations the sons of Britain **are the easiest** to set in motion. — Of all the Highland princes whose history is well known to us, he was **the greatest** and the **most dreaded**. — 2. Wordsworth was **the most essentially conservative** and thoroughly English of all our national poets. — 3. **The best** style if we admit the phrase at all, can mean only the style **best** for a particular conception. The estimate of style being relative, no style can be absolutely **best**. — 4. But intellectually the father was the very antithesis of the son. He seemed to be **strongest**, where his brilliant son was **weakest**. There were moments when the father

seemed the stronger in sense, breadth, and hold on realities. — 5. Henry VIII., most wasteful of kings, excelled Charles to an extent which may be studied in Mr. Thorold Rogers's delightful *Six Centuries of Work and Wages*. — 6. Rivers are widest at their mouths. — 7. Darkest Africa. — Dearest friend! — 8. It is evident that, all other circumstances being supposed equal, the inns will be best where the means of locomotion are worst.

Eine beliebte Form relativer Steigerung ist auch:

9. The result is a quantity of undigested thought flung together at random and expressed in the vilest of English. — 10. A man may have the best of causes, the best of talents, and the best of tempers

c) Die Verwendung des Superlativs in Fällen, wo nur zwei Personen oder Sachen verglichen werden, ist häufig:

Her mother seemed the youngest of the two.

d) Stellung der Steigerungsformen.

Grundsätzlich gelten die allgemeinen Regeln über die Stellung des Adjektivs.

Bei mehreren Adjektiven pflegt die kürzere germanische Form der romanischen voranzugehen:

1. The longest and most emphatic words are used for simplest and most trivial statements. — 2. There cannot be a juster and more concise definition of fine writing.

Das Adverb

bestimmt den Satz und alle seine Teile, hat mithin keine selbständige Bedeutung und ist der Form nach unveränderlich.

Diejenigen Adverbien, welche außerdem oder ausschließlich das syntaktische Verhältnis von Satzteilen zueinander bezeichnen, heißen **Präpositionen**; diejenigen, welche außerdem oder ausschließlich das Verhältnis von Sätzen zueinander bezeichnen, heißen **Konjunktionen**.

Wir unterscheiden daher

Adverbien im engeren Sinn — **eigentliche**,

Adverbien in besonderen Funktionen

Präpositionen,

Konjunktionen.

Hier kommen nur die **eigentlichen** Adverbien in Frage.

Das Adverb im engeren Sinn.

Einteilung und Form.

Adverbien im engeren Sinn sind ursprünglich oder abgeleitet.

Die ursprünglichen Adverbien, unter denen die pronominalen am zahlreichsten, sind mit ihren Zusammensetzungen zum

Wortschatz zu rechnen, in ihren sonstigen Funktionen bei den Präpositionen oder Konjunktionen zu erörtern. Sie sind als Adverbien sofort zu erkennen, an welcher Stelle sie auch stehen mögen.

Abgeleitet sind die von Eigenschaftswörtern gebildeten Adverbien. Nur diese haben eine besondere Form in der Endung **... ly**.

Die Endung **... ly** wird an das Adjektiv gehängt; dabei ergeben sich einige lautliche oder (und) graphische Veränderungen des Positivs:

due	— duly	docile	— docil(e)ly
blue	— bluely	dreadful	— dreadfully
noble	— nobly	jolly	— jollily
gay	— gaily	frugal	— frugally
whole	— wholly	amazing	— ly
sole	— solely	conceited	— ly
pale	— palely	mistaken	— ly.
genteel	— genteelly		

Die Adjektiva auf **... ic**, von denen die meisten eine Nebenform auf **... ical** haben, bilden das Adverb nur von dieser:

characteristic	— characteristically
historic, historical	— historically.

Ausgen. public, publicly; melancholy, melancholically.

Gebrauch und Bedeutung.

Allgemeines.

Nicht alle Adjektiva bilden ein besonderes Adverb; die Bildung kann aus äußeren und inneren Gründen unterbleiben.

Ein Adjektiv kann zugleich Adverb sein, und dieses Adjektiv-Adverb (*flat adverb*) kann noch die besondere Form auf **... ly** bilden, die dann meistens eine besondere Bedeutung hat (Doppelformen).

Einzelnes.

a) Nicht beliebt oder veraltet sind die Adverbien von Adjektiven, welche **... ly** bereits als Endung besitzen.

α) Stets adjektivisch und adverbiell werden z. B. gebraucht

αα) *bodily*, *deadly*, *lowly*, (*very*, *more*, *most*) *likely*, *leisurely*, *cavalierly*:

1. I rose hastily to adjust the wreath at a mirror, and then returned, and **leisurely** resumed my seat. — 2. We must not pass over the wooing so **cavalierly**. — 3. The wounding of our vanity is always spoken of as in its measure "mortal"; we call it mortification, using the same expression which we should apply to an incurable **bodily** hurt.

ββ) Alle einen Zeitabschnitt bezeichnenden Adjektiva:

daily, *fortnightly*, *hourly*, *monthly*, *nightly*, *quarterly*, *weekly*, *yearly*—*early*.

β) Andere auf . . . ly ziehen für das Adverb eine Umschreibung vor, z. B. in a friendly manner; doch sind friendly, kindly, holily gestattet; comely, homely werden überhaupt nicht adverbial gebraucht.

b) Von mehrsilbigen Adj. auf . . . ile sind Adverbien möglich, aber wenig beliebt.

c) Von einigen Adjektiven ist das Adverb in keiner der beiden Formen gebräuchlich. Es sind besonders:

alien	difficult	left	old
past	small	tall	young.

d) Farbenadjektiva bilden das Adverb auf . . . ly, besonders in übertragener Bedeutung; blackly, redly, bluely sind auch im eigentlichen Sinne verwendbar.

e) Doppelformen.

α) Von diesen haben die meisten (einsilbigen!) eine besondere Bedeutung, z. B.:

late	— late, lately; fair	— fair, fairly;
just	— just, justly; pretty	— pretty, prettily;
very	— very, verily.	

β) Bei einigen tritt der Bedeutungsunterschied, wenn überhaupt, nur schwach hervor.

Bald ist die Adjektiv-, bald die . . . ly-Form die übliche, abgesehen von den Fällen, wo die Adjektivform aus syntaktischen Gründen stehen muß. (Vgl. Satzsyntax, Prädikat.)

Bem. Volkstümlicher sind die einfachen Formen. Auch rhythmische Rücksichten können entscheidend sein, endlich das Streben, die Häufung der . . . ly Endungen zu vermeiden.

1. The younger son laughed loudly, the elder less loud, but he laughed. — 2. Many books have been written about architecture, most of them have been exceeding dull, and a few have been exceedingly erudite. — 3. Charles Churchill was a foulmouthed tavern-loafer, a harddrinker, and exceeding bitter in his cups. — 4. Like the ripples caused by a stone cast into a pond, this influence spreads wide and more widely.

f) Zugleich Adjektiv und Adverb sind
ill, worse, worst — well, better, best.

Steigerung des Adverbs.

Besondere Formen zeigen:

well, better, best; badly, ill, worse, worst;
much, more, most; little, less, least.

Nur komparativisch: rather.

Die Adjektiv-Adverbien steigern auf die germanische Weise, die übrigen auf die romanische:

loud, louder, loudest;

luckily, more luckily, most luckily.

Die Artikel.

Der bestimmte Artikel

ist in der Schrift unveränderlich, gesprochen *də*, *dɪ* oder *dɪ*. Von seiner allgemeinen Verwendung als bloßer Begleiter des Substantivs kann er sich jederzeit zu einer bedeutsamen Stellung erheben, kann das Substantiv bestimmen und beschreiben, andere Wortarten, besonders das Adjektiv, substantivieren und — negativ — durch sein Zurücktreten das Substantiv in seiner uneingeschränkten, abstrakten Bedeutung hervortreten lassen.

I. Der begriffliche Gebrauch des Artikels.

Der Artikel berührt sich in Form und Bedeutung mit dem Determinativum und wird nach zwei Richtungen verwendet, die nicht immer scharf zu trennen sind.

a) Der Artikel hebt — unbetont — konkrete Namen aus der Gattung heraus, entweder für alle Fälle oder für besondere Fälle. So entstehen neue Eigennamen oder — durch den Zusammenhang — Sondernamen.

Bem. Die Schrift wählt für erstere große Anfangsbuchstaben, für letztere gelegentlich den Artikel im Schrägdruck oder mit Anführungszeichen.

The Saviour, the Redeemer, the Conqueror, aber Messiah, da dieses Wort als Gemeinname nicht bekannt ist.

1. That first coalition which is emphatically *«The Coalition»* was formed. — 2. William's position as an *English* king remained unaffected. He became *the Conqueror* only in face of a national revolt. — 3. Like *the Bourbon*, *the Jew* forgets nothing; but unlike *the Bourbon*, *the Jew* is always learning. — 4. When not merely any Londoner but any Britisher refers to *the Park*, there can never be any doubt that it is to the most historic park of all — Hyde Park.

Einzelnes.

The nativity ist nur die Geburt Christi. — The profession bedeutet ohne nähere Bezeichnung den Stand der *Ärzte*, sonst die in Frage kommende besondere Berufsart. — The Service = the navals. — The Faculty ist meist die *medizinische Fakultät*. — The Bar, the Bench = die bar, an der die (studierten) Anwälte auftreten, die bench, auf der die

(höheren) Richter oder (im Oberhaus) die Bischöfe sitzen. — *The Peninsula* ist nur die pyrenäische Halbinsel. — *The City*. — *Princes of the Blood*. — *The street* ist bei Börsenmännern in London "Throgmorton", in New York "Wall Street".

b) Der bestimmte Artikel läßt — betont — das Personen und Sachen Eigentümliche besonders hervortreten, macht sie zu Typen, faßt sie rein begrifflich auf — im Gegensatz zum unbestimmten Artikel (vgl. auch *any*).

Die Verwendung ist entweder allgemein üblich geworden oder gilt nur für den besonderen Fall:

1. *Thucydides is the great historian.* The others one may hope to reach: him never. — 2. Like Addison, we are not writing of a storm but of **the storm** — schreibt die *Sat. Rev.* über die Dezemberstürme 1886. — Women desire to marry a man; men to marry **the woman**. — I can find words, but Pitt always finds **the word**. (Fox.) — 3. Things and **the Man** (R. Kipling.) — Arms and **the Man**. (B. Shaw.) — 4. No writer is more essentially and continually **the poet** than Tennyson. — 5. When Farintosh had made up his great mind, that **the time** was come and **the woman**: he was ready to give a Marchioness of Farintosh to the English nation. — 6. It is no longer **the thing** to admire Mr. Shaw. If you wish to be of the elect, you must have passed beyond that.

II. Syntaktisch — funktionell.

Der Artikel „bestimmt“ — unbetont — das Nomen, indem dieses entweder nur einmal vorhanden (ohne Eigennamen zu sein) oder das bekannte, vorher erwähnte ist, oder indem dieses bestimmte Exemplar als Vertreter einer Klasse, Gattung oder Art hingestellt wird.

Bem. Letzteres kann auch durch den unbestimmten Artikel (s. sp.) geschehen, der zunächst nur das einmalige, beliebige (= *any*) Vorkommen des Nomens bezeichnet, deswegen aber nicht weniger zur Verallgemeinerung verwendet werden kann.

Andererseits können — abgesehen von wirklichen Eigennamen — einzelne Hauptwörter und ganze Wortklassen die Stütze des Artikels verschmähen; hier spielt auch der Numerus eine Rolle.

1. Eigennamen.

Eigennamen sind an sich „bestimmt“, bedürfen also keines bestimmten Artikels. Werden sie aber selbst weiter bestimmt oder als Appellativa verwendet, so unterliegen sie den allgemeinen Gesetzen.

Attribute aller Art können den Eigennamen begrifflich entweder nur vervollständigen, ihm etwas Bekanntes, Notorisches attribuieren oder ihn wirklich bestimmen, präzisieren (vgl. Adjektiv S. 65). Im ersteren Falle steht der Artikel nicht.

a) Personennamen.

α) Alleinstehend — ohne Artikel:

Alexander (of Macedon), aber:

Charles XII. was the Alexander of the North. — There was nothing in him (Alfred the Great) of the Alexander or of the Caesar. (Speech.)

Personifikationen werden wie wirkliche Personen behandelt:

Fate, Time, Nemesis, Dives u. a.

Einzelnes.

Schiffsnamen — nur mit Artikel: The Bellerophon.

Sterne und Sternbilder — der Gebrauch schwankt:

Wenn die Bezeichnung von wirklichen Personennamen entlehnt ist, wie Orion, Mars, Andromeda, oder der Name in der fremden Form beibehalten ist, wie Auriga, Libra, so steht gewöhnlich kein Artikel.

Ist es ein Sammelname (im Plural), wie the Plejades oder ein Appellativum, wie the Dragon, the Arrow, oder tritt das fremde Appellativum in englischer Form auf, wie the Scorpion, the Centaur, so steht der Artikel.

Kunstwerke — der Gebrauch schwankt. Da der Name des Verfassers vorschwebt, so ist der Artikel das gesetzmäßige: Antigone — the A. (of Sophocles).

In der Gerichtssprache werden plaintiff, defendant und counsel, in der Unterhaltungssprache cook, boots und Verwandtschaftsbezeichnungen ohne Artikel gebraucht.

β) Mit Attributen.

αα) Substantivische Attribute.

Personennamen mit — voranstehenden! — landesüblichen Bezeichnungen für Würde, Stand, Rang, Verwandtschaft bleiben ohne Artikel.

Bem. „Landesüblich“ ist kein allgemein feststehender Begriff.

Auch ist selbst bei den landesüblichen Bezeichnungen der Artikel im begrifflichen Sinne nicht ausgeschlossen. — This tale ("The Two Cities") is inscribed to the Lord John Russell.

Gelegentlich steht er auch, wenn die englische Bezeichnung zu fremden Namen tritt.

The Huguenots had become a formidable party under the guidance of the Admiral Coligny.

Queen Victoria
Count (von) Moltke

Messrs. Macmillan & Co.
Father Mathew

Marshall Soult
Friend Elwood (the Quaker)

Cardinal Newman
Primate Stone
Captain Cuttle
King Demos

Secretary Root
Dean Swift
Doctor Johnson
Canon Alexander

Speaker Lowther
Squire Western
Dame Fortune
Rabbi Joshua.

Pluralisch:

Lords Holland and Capell — Deans Stanley and Goulburn — Professors Bergmann and Gerhardt — Drs. Furnivall and Bradley — Comrades Keir Hardie and John Redmond.

Einzelnes.

Statt der (fast ausnahmslos vom Landbesitz entlehnten) Titel der "Nobility", welche **the** — (of) verlangen würden, z. B.:

the Earl of Crewe,
hat sich vielfach der Familiennamen eingebürgert, z. B.

Viscount Kitchener (of Khartoum) — Lord Curzon (of Kedleston).

Lord Tennyson, Lord Macaulay sind „geistiger“ Adel.

Herzöge schreiben nur den Familiennamen, Bischöfe den ihres Bischofssitzes:

Devonshire — Hereford.

Princess, Pope, Sultan, Protector stehen mit und ohne Artikel:

The Misses Smith, seltener Miss Smiths.

Mr. Consul-General Schwabach — Mr. Acting-Consul Erskine — Admiral the Duke of Edinburgh — General the Right Honourable Henry Ponsonby.

Steht die weitere Bezeichnung in Apposition, so bedarf es besonderer Gründe, um den Artikel zu dieser zu setzen; z. B.:

The formation of the Union was answered by the formation of a Catholic League . . . under Maximilian, **the Duke of Bavaria**. (der damals Herzog von B. war.)

Ausländische Bezeichnungen.

Bei ausländischen oder (noch) nicht eingebürgerten Bezeichnungen fehlt der Artikel selten oder nie.

The Emperor William	The Director Barras (1795)
The Empress Eugénie	The Lord Sejanus
The Czar Peter	The Infante Fernando
The Archduke Rainer	The Infanta Eulalia
The Grandprince Wladimir	The Consul Flaminus
The Elector Frederick	The Abbé Liszt
The Electress Sophia	The Captain General Marlborough
The Landgrave William	The Senator Boëthius
The Rhinegrave Otto Lewis	The Pharaoh Ramses III.
The Palatine John Casimir	The Constable Bourbon
The Dauphin Charles	The Augur Cicero.
The Abbess Hilda	

Bem. Der Artikel wird häufig zum Adelstitel gesetzt, um diesen als ausländischen zu kennzeichnen, z. B.:

The Baroness Imhoff The Countesses Terzky and Kinsky
The Count Lanowitch The Marquis Tseng.

The Prince Louis Napoleon ist ein anderer als **Prince L. N.**, der im englischen Heere diente (Lulu).

Ist das Grundwort **kein Eigennamen** oder das Attribut kein üblicher Titel oder kein Verwandtschaftsname, so steht der Artikel, z. B.:

The Lord Mayor	The poet Pope
The Lord Chancellor	The Jew Shylock
The Virgin Mary	Ss. Philip and James the Apostles.

ß) Adjektivische Attribute.

Alltägliche Adjektiva, die nicht zur „Bestimmung“ des Substantivs dienen, sondern mit ihm begrifflich verschmelzen, lassen den Artikel fallen. Es sind besonders:

dear, fair, honest, little, old, plain,
poor, saint, silly, sweet, worthy, young.

Ausgedehnt wird dieser Gebrauch auf die edlere Sprache oder auch, wenn Ironie oder Hohn im Spiele sind:

Plain Mrs. Morley and Plain Mrs. Freeman. — Stout old Johnson; Old Nick; Little John. — The Young Milton. (Überschrift eines Artikels.) — Almighty God oder God Almighty.

1. The attachment (of the companions) was, not to the Stadtholder or to the king, but to plain William of Nassau. — 2. The spirit of prose—argumentative and partisan—entered into verse. The spirit of poetry breathed only in pensive Gray, pastoral Dyer, and homely religious Cowper. — 3. Perfidious and arrogant Albion has provided Europe with a chairman (Sir Edward Grey) to charm the whole meeting of nations and give us (the Americans) at last a good name from end to end of the continent.

Reverend (Rev.) und Honourable (Hon.) stehen nur mit Artikel:

The Rev. Goldsmith „Hochwürden“. — The Right Rev. the Bishop of Peterborough. — The Right Honourable the Lord Mayor. — The Hon. Harriet Phipps (Hofdame).

b) Geographische Bezeichnungen.

Der Gebrauch muß vielfach schwanken, besonders da, wo Appellativa in ihrer geographischen Individualisierung noch nicht Gemeingut geworden sind, oder wo Unkenntnis herrscht, wie es auch bei keltischen Ortsnamen der Fall ist.

α) Ländernamen.

Ländernamen stehen ohne Artikel.

Mit Attributen unterliegen sie demselben Gesetz wie Personennamen:

Merry old England — Portuguese Africa — Rhenish Prussia — All Spanish-Flanders — Darkest England — Unhappy Ireland — French Congo — Half France — Free-trade England — Little Britain, Great Britain, Greater Britain.

1. Modern England, the England among whose thoughts and sentiments we actually live, began, however dimly and darkly, with the triumph of Naseby. — 2. Roman Catholic Europe and Reformed Europe were struggling for life and death. — 3. The Chamber established by Louis XVIII. belonged neither to the old France nor to the new France. — Education in the New Japan: Überschrift eines Artikels. — The Real Siberia: Titel eines Buches. — 4. United Canada sends greetings to United Australasia. — lautete das Telegramm zum 1. Jan. 1901. — 5. If we pointed to the example furnished by the Republican Rome, the democratic lecturer would reply

that **Republican Rome** does not exist in the nineteenth century. — 6. The history of England, of the old **England**, pure and simple, is our history.

Empire wird (schon!) als „Land“ ohne Artikel gebraucht, ebenso fatherland, das mit Artikel (etwas verächtlich!) Deutschland bedeutet:

7. Our Ignorance of **Empire**. (Überschrift.) — 8. The stages of consolidation of Great Britain itself into a single state are of course the first steps to **British Empire** . . . — 9. Japan not merely retained a peculiar devotion to fatherland, but developed it into a religion. (Speech.)

Mythische Ländernamen folgen der Hauptregel:

Chaos, Elysium, Hades, Heaven, Hell, Limbo,
Olympus, Orcus, Paradise, Purgatory, Tartarus.

Heaven im biblischen Sinne stets ohne Artikel; the sky = Wolkenhimmel und Himmelsgewölbe; für sky auch the heavens.

Ländernamen mit Artikel.

αα) Pluralische Ländernamen, soweit sie als pluralisch erkennbar oder bekannt sind:

The West Indies; The Netherlands; The Highlands; The Balkans; (The Autocrat of) the Russias; The Grisons; the Cameroons (eig. Gebirge).
Flanders und Algiers sind echte Singularia.

The Balkan Peninsula, the Netherland(ish) Government; the Balkan(s) danger, the Balkan(s) question.

ββ) Folgende singularische, meist außereuropäische, weniger bekannte oder (noch) als Appellativa erkannte:

The Levant, the East, the Orient, the Argentine (sc. Republic);
The Ecclesiastical State, the Palatinate, the Carnatic.

Dagegen:

Provence, Normandy, Barbary, Brittany, Lombardy, Congo, Turkey, Switzerland.

The Hinterland bezeichnet kein besonderes „Hinterland“ mehr.

Irische Grafschaften stehen mit Artikel ohne of: The county Mayo.

γγ) Der Gebrauch schwankt — je nach dem Grade der geographischen Kenntnisse — bei:

Crimea, Deccan, Herzegovina, Morea,
Peloponnesus, Tyrol, Ukraine.

β) Inseln.

Singularisch ohne, pluralisch mit Artikel:

Cyprus, Malta, St. Kitts, New-Providence.

The Antilles, the Bahamas, the New Hebrides.

The Mauritius findet sich gelegentlich. — Barbado(e)s, scheinbar pluralisch, steht noch häufig mit Artikel. — Bermuda bezeichnet immer häufiger die ganze Gruppe. — The Bahamas ist noch nicht von Bahama verdrängt. — The Brazils, das (wie the Indies) geographischer Unkenntnis den Ursprung verdankt, heute meist Brazil.

r) Städte und Dörfer — ohne Artikel:

St. Petersburg; New Amsterdam; Old Sarum;
Merry Islington.

1. Fashionable London assembled at St. James' under the chairmanship of the Prince of Wales. — 2. Then as now official Oxford was very often the antithesis of the real Oxford. — 3. Tedious it may be, through interminable pages; but his method does drive into the reader the whole spirit of Imperial Rome, of early Christian Rome, of Papal Rome, of the living and growing New Rome, with all their contrasts, all their resemblances, all their rivalries. — 4. Twentieth century Cambridge prides itself that it is nothing if not up-to-date.

δ) Straßen

sowie Lokalitäten, Bauten und bauliche Sehenswürdigkeiten aller Art folgen dem Namen, der ohne Artikel steht:

Broad Street	Russell Square	Buckingham Palace
Oxford Street	Hyde Park	Waterloo Bridge
York Road	Kensington Museum	New College
Palace Court	Westbourne Grove	Trinity College
Petticoat Lane	Change Alley	York Minster
Southampton Row	(The) Albert Hall	Charterhouse School
Warwick Crescent	Kew Gardens	Earl's Court
Montague Place	Holland House	Grosvenor Gallery
Carlton Terrace	Westminster Abbey	Victoria Station.
Fifth Avenue	St. Paul's Cathedral	

Sind die Bezeichnungen nicht von Personen oder Ortsnamen entlehnt, so verlangen sie den Artikel, mit Ausnahme von Straßennamen, welche ihn niemals haben:

The British Museum	The Court Theatre	The People's Palace
The Crystal Palace	The National Gallery	The Tower Bridge.

Einzelnes.

The Bank (of England), the Exchange, the Treasury, the Paragon, the Haymarket (Theatre), Haymarket (Street). — The York Road ist die Chaussee nach York. Dickens kannte noch the Edgware Road.

Übergänge verschiedener Art zeigen:

The Strand, welches den Artikel noch hat, Pall Mall selten, West End nicht, wenn «Fashionable London». — The High Street (urspr. high road) im Sinne von Hauptstraße häufig bei Provinzstädten (kurz: the High, z. B. in Oxford). — Green Park und Regent's Park haben den Artikel fallen lassen. — Noch ziemlich neue Gebäude erscheinen mit dem Artikel. — Die Oxforder und Cambridger Colleges werden ohne Artikel gebraucht: University, King's, Trinity. — The Westminster Cathedral ist der katholische Prachtbau in Westminster. — White House, Washington hat den Artikel nicht mehr.

e) Meere, Meeresteile und Seen:
mit Artikel.

The Baltic	The Aegean	The Straits
The Pacific	The Channel	The Caspian (Sea).

Lake (Loch, Lough) und Port haben den Artikel nicht, wenn sie dem Namen unmittelbar vorhergehen:

Lake Lemane oder Geneva — The Geneva Lake;
 Lake Constance — the Lake of C.;
 Loch Lomond; Lough Corrib; Lake Superior;
 Lakes Meero and Bangueolo; Port Hamilton.

Bay, Harbour und Haven haben, wenn hinter dem Namen stehend, keinen Artikel:

Galway Bay; Cork Harbour; Milford Haven (zur Stadt geworden).

η) Flüsse — mit Artikel.

Selbst bei bekannteren Flüssen tritt gern „the river“ hinzu:

The Thames; the Arno; the Tigris;

The river Mersey — the Mersey river.

Auch die edle Prosa kann geschichtlich oder literarisch bekannte Flüsse ohne Artikel setzen, darunter:

Euphrates, Jordan, Tiber, Nile, Arno, Niagara, Styx, Isis (Themse), Cam.

1. Man is but a small thing in a great land, and those who live by Nile, or Guadalquivir, or Volga seem to hold their lives on condition. — 2. Nile nor Trafalgar has power to raise an extra bubble in a steam-kettle. — 3. It matters very little whether Trent cuts you a cantel out here, or Rhine rounds you a castle less there.

θ) Gebirge mit, Berge ohne Artikel:

The Grampians; the Hartz (Mountains); the Alleghanies. — Etna; Chimborazo; Snowdon; Parnassus.

Mount, Ben (schott.), Cairn (schott.), Slieve, Cape und Fort stehen ohne Artikel und voran:

Mount Sinai, Ben Nevis, Cape Horn;

Fort St. George, Capes Florida and Breton, Cape Land's End (the Land's End); Cairn Gorm (Cairngorm), Slieve Donald (Co. Down), Fort Christina.

Hill, Head, Point stehen ohne Artikel und nach dem Namen:

Primrose Hill, Constitution Hill, Malin Head, Lizard Point.

Doch schwankt der Gebrauch bei deutschen Bergen, wenn sie ohne Attribute stehen:

(the) Brocken, (the) St. Gothardt, (the) Righi.

ζ) Himmelsgegenden

stehen mit Artikel, besonders wenn sie zur Bezeichnung von Ländernamen dienen; als Adverbien — ohne Artikel:

1. The Duke of Monmouth turned to the south east. — 2. The wind stood north. — North of the Trent. — 3. While the West was thus rising to confront the King, the North was all in a flame behind him. — 4. The American may have learnt something by going West, though it is from the East that wisdom has always come.

2. Gattungsnamen.

Der Artikel stellt das Einzelwesen als Vertreter einer Gattung hin. Dasselbe geschieht durch den artikellosen Plural.

Der artikellose Plural ist zugleich der Plural des unbestimmten Artikels; vgl. diesen.

The dog is vigilant — dogs are vigilant.

a) Geschlechtlich:

1. Sympathy is **the child's** greatest craving. To **the child**, even more than to **the man**, the world is centred on himself; **the child's** "ego" is very sturdy. — 2. **Spirits** are supposed to haunt the places where their bodies most resorted. — 3. A more perfect example of **the English gentleman** . . . never sat in the House of Commons. — 4. To look **the lady**, **the gentleman** (= *di*: the perfect type of what is meant by the notion 'lady' or 'gentleman'). — 5. To a race like ours there is no more fascinating branch of literature than the record of exploration. Most of the really great books of travel have been written by **the Englishman**.

Man und Woman nehmen eine Sonderstellung ein, da sie als Gattungsbegriffe „abstrakt“ aufgefaßt werden. Man bedeutet Mensch und Mann.

6. Beware of all, but most beware of **man**. (Mann.) — **Man** (Mensch) wants but little here below, nor wants that little long. — 7. The heart of **man** and of **woman** recoils from solitude, and nowhere is **mortal** so much alone as in the heart of a great city in which he does not know a single soul.

Dagegen:

8. The intellectual superiority of **the Man** over **the Woman** was one of Milton's characteristic tenets. — 9. In England there is one standard of matrimonial conduct for **the woman** and another for **the man**.

Bem. Der Bedeutungsunterschied zwischen man, woman und men, women tritt häufig scharf hervor:

10. Wordsworth's love of Nature was no more destroyed by that than his love of **Man** was destroyed by the selfishness and cruelty of **men**. — 11. **Men** die, but **Man** is immortal. — 12. Most thinkers write and speak of **man**; Mr. Browning of **men**.

Völker, Sekten, Familien, Geschlechter, Parteien.

Die Grenze zwischen den Gruppen und Einzel- oder Personennamen ist nicht scharf zu ziehen; oft sind beide Auffassungen zulässig.

Der Artikel fällt fort, wo seine Anwendung die Verallgemeinerung ausschließen würde. Mit Artikel liegt die konkrete (persönliche, zählende) Auffassung zugrunde (s. Personennamen), ohne Artikel die abstrakte:

History of the Jews; the last of **the Mohicans**, of **the Barons**.

Mary, Queen of Scots. auch: the King of Scots; House of Lords, Commons; Chamber of Deputies.

1. Britons never shall be slaves. — 2. Morari Row declared that he had never before believed that Englishmen could fight. — 3. In Scotland a coalition was formed between the Royalists and a large body of Presbyterians who regarded the doctrines of the Independents with detestation. — 4. When James boldly required from the Scots the toleration of Catholics, they refused to pass such an act. — 5. Sir Thomas More, the greatest of the Humanists, had an extremely limited public, and his ideas made correspondingly small progress. — 6. The fall of the Carlovingians furnishes the nearest parallel to the fall of the Moguls. (The Mogul = der Großmogul.)

b) Geschlechtslos.

Affairs, matters, things u.ä. übernehmen, wenn artikellos, vielfach die Rolle von unbestimmten Fürwörtern:

1. Things do not always happen as they should. (Es geht nicht immer alles nach Wunsch.) — 2. Arnold was one of those who preferred that way of doing things. — 3. Times, of course, have changed, and he, as well as the rest of us, have changed with the times. — 4. So strangely do events confound all the plans of man.

3. Abstrakta.

Vorbem. Bei den mannigfachen Übergängen von der abstrakten zur konkreten Auffassung werden zuerst die ursprünglichen Abstrakta, dann die Abstrakta-Konkrete, endlich die ursprünglichen Konkrete behandelt werden, soweit überhaupt eine scharfe Grenze gezogen werden kann.

a) Ursprüngliche Abstrakta.

Ursprüngliche Abstrakta stehen ohne Artikel, mögen sie in der Form einfach oder zusammengesetzt sein.

Wird aber innerhalb des Gesamtbegriffs auf eine bestimmte Einzelercheinung hingewiesen oder auf das Vorkommen in besonderen Formen oder Verwendungen, so tritt das Abstraktum konkret auf und verlangt den (determinierenden) Artikel:

1. We are the fools of **prejudice**. — **Lying** is the vice of slaves. — **Honesty** is the best policy. — 2. The circumstances absolutely justify **the severity**. — 3. **Truth** is essential to poetry, but it is **the truth of madness**. — They search for **error** as other men search for **the truth**. — "Could anything be more fatal than falsehood against **the Divine truth**?" — "But if **absolute truth** is not revealed, how can we know **the truth** at all?" — 4. Edward, Defender of **the Faith**. (des Einen, richtigen Gl.) — 5. With a view to secure the maintenance of **peace**, the Plantagenets established the influential institution of **Justices of the Peace**. — 6. The rapid success of **the Political Economy** (by the author) showed what the public wanted. . . — . . The book treated **Political Economy** not as a thing by itself, but as a fragment of a greater whole. — 7. **Modern Judaism** seems to have no use for the ritual system: **The older Judaism** might retort that, if that be so, it has no use for **the modern Judaism**. — 8. Very different was the war which degenerate Protestantism had to wage against regenerate Catholicism.

Der Artikel kann (vor eigentlichen Abstrakten) auf bestimmte, gerade zeitgemäße Äußerungen oder Betätigungen hinweisen, d. h. auf Konkretes:

9. It is a beating of the air to preach the sweet gospel of the **Simple Life**. — 10. Admirers of the **strenuous life** must acclaim Professor Wright, who has just completed his great English Dialect Dictionary.

b) Abstrakta-Konkreta,

bei denen es zweifelhaft ist, welche Bedeutung die ursprüngliche ist:

1. The interview comes within measurable distance of **great drama**. — It has been her ambition to sing in **grand opera**. — 2. Perhaps not many persons at the close of the century were aware that in the little volume of "Lyrical Ballads," published in 1798, something had already been done to justify **romance** and to interpret **reality** in its nobler significance. — 3. **Character**, rather than **incident** is to the fore. — 4. **Style** does not come out of the blue, be it ever so native to the man, and however authentic his genius.

c) Ursprüngliche Konkreta.

Sollen ursprüngliche Konkreta nicht in ihrem Einzelauftreten oder unter einem bestimmten Gesichtspunkt, vielmehr als „Ding an sich“ gedacht werden, so fällt der (determinierende) Artikel fort.

Bem. Von dieser Fähigkeit macht auch die Prosa einen ausgedehnten Gebrauch. Zu vergleichen ist das über Personifikation S. 54 Gesagte.

α) Stoff- und Mengenamen:

1. Their complaints had little chance of being heard across fifteen thousand miles of **ocean**. — Men like Newton and Galileo stood out high like Teneriffe above the level surface of **ocean**. — 2. In England, **land** (sc. landed property) generally descends to the eldest son. — 3. The introduction of **to-bacco** and of the **potato** into Europe dates from Raleigh's discovery. — 4. **Beech** had formerly been abundant in Berkshire.

β) Körperliche oder geistige Organe,

soweit sie als Träger bestimmter geistiger Funktionen gedacht sind:

the brain — brain(s); the nerve — nerve.

1. When the affections are moved, there is no place for the **imagination** (= **Einbildungskraft**; **imagination** = das Eingebildete). — 2. H. Walpole never convinces the **reason**, or fills the **imagination**, or touches the **heart**. — 3. Kant's Critique of **Pure Reason** (auch the P.-R.). — 4. Blake is an instance of **preponderating soul**, embarrassed, at a loss, in an era of **preponderating mind**. — 5. **Mind** we cannot choose but approve where we recognise it; **soul** may repel us, not because we misunderstand it.

γ) The church — church u. ä.:

1. The boy (Gladstone) would have liked to live in a **church**; the old man, to die in **church**. — 2. Amy had been, not to school, but in a school—a different thing.

Die gleiche Wirkung hat der Artikel bei:

'change, court, market, prison u. a.,

doch meist in Verbindung mit Präpositionen:

To go to market, be in prison, live at court, be on 'change.

Synagogue replaced Temple, prayer assumed the function of sacrifice.

δ) Mahlzeiten.

Die Substanz steht mit, die Zeit ohne Artikel:

1. We were at dessert, nibbling fruit and sipping wine. — 2. We have early dinner, late supper on Sundays. — 3. Dinner was ready. — We enjoyed the dinner.

ε) Krankheiten — schwankend.

Einige, z. B.:

cataract, typhus, rheumatism, asthma, lepra

haben den Artikel nicht, auch nicht rein gelehrte Namen wie: appendicitis, meningitis.

Andere, wie the Plague lassen an dem Artikel (noch) ihre Entstehung erkennen, während the fever das Fieber in Malaria-gegenden ist.

Bem. Der Artikel kann auch rhetorisch sein. Beim ersten Herannahen der letzten cholera sprachen Telegramme und Zeitungen von the cholera — der schrecklichen! Später fiel der Artikel fort.

Pluralische Krankheitsnamen haben den Artikel:

the dumps, the blues, jedoch small-pox (= pocks).

Die Zeitbestimmungen.

lassen sich nicht unter ein gemeinsames Gesetz bringen.

α) Jahreszeiten.

Der Gebrauch schwankt durchaus, selbst wenn (nur) von der Zeit eines bestimmten Jahres die Rede ist:

1. They (the 'Great Russians') live in large villages, pursue agriculture in summer, and carry on a great variety of domestic trades in the winter. — 2. In the northern part of England, the summer often seems to go out, as it were, at once, and autumn, especially towards sunset, puts on the chilling aspect of the winter.

β) Monate — meist ohne Artikel:

1. If showers fall in April, we shall have flowers in May. — 2. In the March of 1625, James I. died with the consciousness of failure. — 3. His (Gladstone's) family were in London for most of May. — 4. Thermidor came, and released Laclos. — 5. In early April — in April following. — In Brumaire.

γ) Wochentage

ohne Artikel, falls nicht auf den „betreffenden“ oder auf den regelmäßig wiederkehrenden Tag hingewiesen werden soll:

Maundy Thursday — On Good Friday.

1. They dined at four, and the company was but scanty. Charles Greville came on the **Saturday**, Byng came on the **Sunday**. — 2. It was **Saturday** afternoon. There was to be no other meeting till **Monday** morning. ... The **Monday** came. — 3. A speech on the **Monday** is read on the **Wednesday** by multitudes in Antrim and Aberdeenshire. — 4. Jack Alston and his wife had been among the guests who came down from the **Saturday** till **Monday**. (d. h. für das betreffende „*Week-end*“.)

δ) Tageszeiten.

Wird auf die ganze Dauer hingewiesen oder auf die Tageszeit als solche, im Gegensatz zu andern, so steht gewöhnlich der Artikel. — Doch herrscht kein festes Gesetz:

1. As the **night** advanced, Harry grew delirious, and **before morning** was in a high state of fever. — 2. **Jumping in the morning**, **jumping in the afternoon**, and **jumping in the evening**, is promised for to-day at Olympia —and it is the jumping that gives this Arabian Nights entertainment its final excitement. — 3. **Evening** slowly advanced. — **Night** closed in. — 4. **Morning** may be the fitting season for exertion and activity.

ε) Feste.

Ohne Artikel, wenn die Bezeichnung volkstümlich (geworden) ist:

1. It was now **Holy-Week**, a time during which Johnson was particularly solemn in his manner and strict in his devotions. — 2. Keep **Christmas** in your own way, and let me keep it in mine. — 3. In **Lent** she had daily Bible readings. — 4. The Epiphany. — Twelfthday. — Bank Holiday. — 5. Some Puritans called the Lord's day "**the Sabbath**" long before the end of the 16th century. — **The Sabbath** was hedged in by a formidable array of enactments.

4. Kollektiva

erhalten den Artikel, wenn sie als Gattungsnamen auftreten und nur die Individuen zusammenfassen; schwebt das diesen Gemeinsame oder Charakteristische vor, so verlangt die Abstraktion das Fallenlassen des Artikels.

Nur abstrakt faßt die Sprache u. a. auf:

mankind, humankind, womankind, humanity, youth;
Christendom, Heathendom, Bumbledom, Tsardom;
posterity, antiquity, Society, Jewry, Latinity, labour,
Dissent, Islam.

1. Amid the clamour raised by the social reformers of to-day we must not allow it to be forgotten that **labour** during the last half century has made a mighty advance (auch Labour). — 2. **Jews' College**, the theological college of **Anglo-Jewry**, recently celebrated its jubilee. — 3. **Mankind** begin by wonder and conclude by worship. — 4. English **youth** have been so educated time out of mind. — The **youth** of this great country are, as is well known, passionately addicted to football. — It happens that I have practically some connexion with schools for different classes of **youth**. — 5. The employment of the word heroes (bogatiŭri) is especially significant, recalling as it does the ancient chronicles of **Tsardom**.

Andere haben ohne den Artikel eine Sonderbedeutung angenommen:

Congress — die amerikanische Volksvertretung;
Convocation — Versammlung der englischen Geistlichen;
Congregation — Versammlung der Oxforder «dons»;
counsel — ohne Artikel und Pluralzeichen = *barrister*.

Der Gebrauch schwankt u. a. bei:

Government, Parliament, Legislature, Administration,
Assembly, Committee.

Bei anderen wie:

Democracy, Plutocracy, Papacy, Royalty, Monarchy
weist der Artikel auf die persönlichen Vertreter, der fehlende Artikel auf die Einrichtung hin.

6. Our wish for Milton is that he should have placed himself above **party**. But he had chosen to be the champion of a **party**, and he loyally accepted the consequences. — 7. Men of all sides and of all shades of opinion are putting **country** first and are working for it with all their strength so far as their abilities and their opportunities permit. — 8. The palmy days of **autocracy** have been revived in the stern measures that have been taken against the Press. — 9. Cromwell's name stands first, half warrior, half saint, in the calendar of **English-speaking democracy**. — 10. Finger-glasses may not be laid at any table where **Royalty** dines. — 11. Hereditary **monarchy**. — Milton (in 1642) is still royalist;—retaining the belief of his age that **Monarchy** in the abstract had somewhat of divine sanction. — 12. **Plutocracy** des troys **democracy**.

III. Phraseologisches.

Der Artikel kann nicht nur entbehrlich werden, weil seine Funktionen durch die Konstruktion Ersatz finden, sondern auch störend, wenn stilistische Rücksichten zu nehmen sind, oder wenn Mangel an Zeit oder Raum eine möglichst knappe Form der Ausdrucksweise gebieten. (Plakate, Reklamen, Telegramme, Ausrufe.)

1. He faced the truth and was constrained to allow that Martin varied from him as widely as **boy** could vary from **man**. — 2. So much of **the heavens** and of **earth** is rarely granted to a dwelling. — 3. Now **wave** follows **wave** as the winds blow from this quarter or from that. — 4. Grenville's one aim was to enforce the supremacy of Parliament over **subject** as over **King**. — 5. **Earth** below shook; **heaven** above menaced; all the elements of ministerial safety were dissolved. (Burke. Bible.) — 6. Pope is thus attempting the greatest task to which **poet** or **philosopher** can devote himself. — 7. Dreams of unexplored regions excited the imagination of **Spaniard** and **Englishman** in the later Renaissance. — 8. Broken in **health** and wounded in **body**, Nelson reached Naples. — Man is compounded of **soul** and **body**, dagegen: I am to treat of the interests of **the soul** and of **the body**. — 9. **Sect** raved against **sect**, **party** plotted against **party**. — 10. Mediæval and modern Europe are far from being "the best of all possible worlds"; but, such as they are, they were molten in its great crucible, where **West** learned from **East** and **the East** from it (the West) again, and both from . . . — 11. The grudge of Whig against Tory was mingled with like grudge of **Englishman** against **Scot**.

Der unbestimmte Artikel.

Form.

Der unbestimmte Artikel hat zwei Formen:

a und **an**.

An steht vor vokalischem, **a** vor konsonantischem Anlaut. Der Gebrauch schwankt vor **h**, wenn der Wortakzent nicht auf der ersten Silbe liegt:

A history, **a(n)** historian, **a(n)** historical truth.

Bem. **An** vor nur geschriebenem Vokal ist literarisch: **a(n)** university, **a(n)** European.

Abkürzungen richten sich nach dem Laut:

an R. A.; **an** M. P.

Der unbestimmte Artikel bezeichnet die Zugehörigkeit eines Hauptwortes zu einer Klasse, Gattung oder Art; als solcher hat er eine rein syntaktische Funktion, für die eine besondere Form im Plural nicht vorhanden ist. Daneben aber enthält er einen Zahlbegriff, der sich nicht nur in festen Ausdrücken, sondern auch in einer selbständigen syntaktischen Bildung (distributiv) zu erkennen gibt. Endlich spielt er idiomatisch eine große Rolle.

1. Begrifflich.

a (an) steht als **Zahlwort**:

in a day or two; at a blow; two at a time.

a (an) ist das unbetonte **one**, kann aber ebenfalls betont werden, um dann weniger die Einheit als die Menge oder den Grad zu bezeichnen. Es berührt sich nicht nur mit **one**, sondern auch mit **some**, **certain** und **any**.

a (one) Mr. Brown; **a certain** Mr. Brown.

a little — **some little**; **a few** — **some few**.

1. Birds of a feather flock together. — 2. For, except for the few valleys bordering the many sea-lochs, the whole country is bare and unfertile to a degree. — 3. Johnson, to be sure, has a roughness in his manner; but no man alive has a more tender heart. He has nothing of the bear but the skin. — 4. To an extent every musician is a poet, but Schumann was more of one than any other. — 5. I love the country in a way, but I love the town better.

A (an) tritt auch zählend zu (als Einheit gedachten) Pluralien; vgl. S. 51.

a barrack(s), **a** golf-links, **a** tactics.

Distributiv: Sixpence a pound; once a week.

2. Syntaktisch.

A Short History of the English People;

A Concordance to the Works of Milton.

Der unbestimmte Artikel bezeichnet die Zugehörigkeit zu Klasse, Art oder Gattung nach kopulativen Verben sowie nach der Präp. *for*. Der Gebrauch schwankt bei *as*:

To be a party, fall a victim, be a stranger to . . . ;

He lived, continued a single man;

He is an Englishman (he is English).

1. He had received a personal affront—he, a gentleman, a soldier, and a Waverley. — 2. Thomas Cranmer was at once a divine and a courtier. — 3. Swift was neither a Cervantes nor a Rabelais. — 4. "George," his mother had continually repeated to him (G. IV.) in youth, "George, be King." — Andere Berichte geben "a King."

Bem. To turn und to commence stehen gewöhnlich ohne a (*an*).

To turn playwright, nun, physician, Turk;

To commence usurer, foxhunter, poet.

As a: 5. Comparatively little is known of Cecil Rhodes as a man, rather than as an empire builder. — 6. Mr. Harris's biography is an excellent piece of work. He leaves us with a clear impression of his hero's part in the history of the time, as soldier, legislator, seaman, and ambassador. It is as a seaman that he did his best work . . . As a biographer of the man, Mr. Harris is perhaps a little too subdued by his medium. — 7. Despite the noble work done by men so various as Ruskin and Stevenson, Pater and Newman, one feels that the full glory of prose, as a medium for beauty, was not realised by them—is not yet realised, save by a few.

For a: 8. She had decided upon accepting him for a husband. S. Präp. *for*.

Die Zugehörigkeit zu Klasse, Beruf, Rang, Würde, Amt bleibt meist unbezeichnet nach (appositivem) *of*:

9. The post of tutor to the Prince of Wales was designed for Hampden. — 10. The position of Constitutional Sovereign. — The vocation of poet. — 11. Chatterton adopted the profession of author. — 12. In his character of divine, Cranmer was perfectly ready to go as far in the way of change as any Swiss or Scottish reformer in his character of courtier.

Wenn *never* und *ever* betont sind, so kann das Substantiv ohne a (*an*) folgen, auch wenn eine unbetonte Verbalform in die „Senkung“ tritt:

13. Never did chief of a party inspire more enthusiasm among his followers, never was political sympathy more strengthened by personal affection. — 14. Goldsmith's lovable humour draws for us perpetual refreshment from the vicissitudes of a life as hard as ever fell to struggling poet. — Aber: Never a harsh word fell from him, never a sneer showed upon his lip.

3. Idiomatics.

Wie Abstrakta im Plural die Summe oder Gesamtheit der Einzelercheinungen ausdrücken, so können sie im Singular mit dem unbestimmten Artikel die (konkrete) Einzelercheinung bezeichnen.

To be in a hurry (in haste), a passion; under an impression.

To have a (great) mind, a relish, an appetite. To give one a fright.

To profess a friendship. To feel a preference. To express a wish.
 To contract an intimacy. To strike (an) awe (into).
 With a view, an intent, an intention, a vengeance.
 For a wonder; just for a change. It is a pity (a thousand pities).

Wiederholung der Artikel.

Die Wiederholung kann notwendig oder wünschenswert sein.

a) Notwendig:

The English and French fleet: the Anglo-French fleet;
 The English Fleet and the French: zwei Flotten;
 The English and French fleets: zwei Flotten;
 The English and the French fleet: zwei Flotten;
 A black and white ball: eine Kugel;
 A black and a white ball: zwei Kugeln.

Aus formalem Grunde:

1. A first sentence should seldom be a long, and never an intricate one. — 2. Dickens was always going away to write — presumably because he thought it was a good, as well as an agreeable course to adopt.

b) Wünschenswert — aus rhetorischen Gründen:

1. Vgl. Macaulay's: That tribunal pronounced Charles a tyrant, a traitor, a murderer, and a public enemy mit Green's: Charles I. was condemned to death as a tyrant, traitor, murderer, and enemy of his country. — 2. Of the translation we need only say that it is such as might be expected from the skill, the taste, and the scrupulous integrity of the accomplished lady who . . . has already deserved so well of both countries. — 3. Becky became interested in everything appertaining to the estate, to the farm, the park, the gardens, and the stables. — 4. The book (Nova Solyma) is obviously the work of a poet and a musician and a scholastic . . . and Milton was certainly all three. — 5. An Etonian and an Oxford man, he (Ch. Kegan Paul) was successively a parson, a tutor, an author and a publisher; but he succeeded—as the world deems success—in nothing.

Numeralia.

1. Wortbestand — Form.

a) Kardinalia.

Die sprachlichen Einzelheiten für die natürliche Zahlenreihe sind:

one	four	seven	ten	hundred
two	five	eight	eleven	thousand
three	six	nine	twelve	million.

Zusammensetzung.

Aus diesen Einheiten setzen sich alle übrigen Grundzahlen zusammen. Sie bilden auch — mit wenigen Ausnahmen — den Stamm der andern Zahlarten, wenn auch die Grundzahl nicht mehr überall erkennbar ist:

ten, zu 3 bis 9 addiert, wird . . . **teen**:

thirteen	seventeen
fourteen	eighteen
fifteen	nineteen ;
sixteen	

ten, mit 2 bis 9 multipliziert, wird . . . **ty**:

twenty	sixty
thirty	seventy
forty	eighty
fifty	ninety .

Von 1100 bis 1999 wird gewöhnlich nach Hunderten gezählt:

nineteen hundred (and eleven).

Bem. **billion** ist im Englischen = Million **mal** Million, im Amerikanischen = tausend Millionen (Milliarde).

Nebenzahlen.

Neben den gewöhnlichen Grundzahlen werden allgemein gebraucht:

pair, couple = two	score = twenty
dozen = twelve	gross = twelve dozen.

Die unbestimmten **half, both, all** s. Pron. Indef.

Reihenfolge.

Die höheren Zahlen gehen den niederen voran, wenn addiert wird, die niederen den höheren, wenn multipliziert wird. Doch ist auch die Stellung der Einer vor den Zehnern möglich, bei Angabe des Alters bis (etwa) 50 sogar üblich; die Addition erfolgt dann durch **and**.

Zehner und Einer werden nach *hundred* oder *thousand* durch **and** angeschlossen.

ninety million nine hundred thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine — three hundred (thousand) and ten — (He is) five and forty (years old).

b) Ordinalia

haben nur für die beiden ersten besondere Namen:

first — second, other.

Alle andern werden — bei einigen lautlichen und orthographischen Veränderungen — durch Anhängung von **th** an die Grundzahl gebildet.

Die Ordinalia haben als Nebenzahlen für Brüche (Teilzahlen)
half — quarter.

Zusammensetzung und Reihenfolge richten sich nach dem für die Grundzahlen herrschenden Gesetz.

Die letzte Ziffer erhält allein das Reihenzeichen:

first (1st)	fifth	ninth	thirteenth	five hundredth
second, other (2nd)	sixth	tenth	twentieth	thousandth
third (3rd)	seventh	eleventh	thirtieth	ninethousandth
fourth (4th)	eighth	twelfth	hundredth	millionth.

Für Aufzählungen

tritt an die Ordinalzahlen die Adverbendung **... ly**, die indes bei **first** fortfallen kann.

c) Zahladverbien.

An selbständigen (oder einfachen) Zahladverbien besitzt das Englische nur

once, twice, (selten) thrice;
die Weiterbildung erfolgt mit **times**.

Bem. **One(-)time** = 1. einstmals; 2. einmal (1 ×).

d) Distributiva

kennt das Englische nicht. Es hilft sich durch Verwendung von **every, each** und der Präposition **by**:

every two weeks; every other (second) week;
twenty each; by the hundred, by hundreds.

Beisp. s. *every, each, by*.

2. Syntaktisches.

Die **Kardinalia** sind adjektivisch, können aber unter Umständen substantiviert, ja zu vollwertigen Substantiven werden; vgl. S. 44.

Einige Grundzahlen werden bald als Adjektiva, bald als Substantiva angesehen. Die meisten „Nebenzahlen“ werden noch als Substantiva empfunden, aber nicht gleichmäßig als wirkliche Substantiva (mit Pluralzeichen) behandelt; vgl. Subst., S. 52.

On all **fours**; in two **twos** (schleunigst); in one's **teens**; **the threes** (3% Consols); the **seventy-fours** (Regiment) u. a.

Die **Ordinalia** werden adjektivisch und substantivisch behandelt, adverbial nur mit der Endung **... ly**.

One.

(One als Stützwort s. Adj., als Determinativum, Indefinitum s. diese.)

One als Zahlwort hat keinen Plural. Substantivisch gebraucht weist es nur auf Konkreta; sonst bedarf es einer Ergänzung, meist durch **thing**:

1. The many fail, the **one** succeeds. — 2. Words are things: it is useless to try to set them in a world apart. They exist in books only by accident: and for **one** written there are **a thousand**, infinitely more powerful, spoken. — 3. There is only **one thing** in the world worse than being talked about, and that is not being talked about.

one = einzig:

4. The truth is the **one thing** that nobody will believe. — 5. The new Victoria Station is practically our **one imposing railway front** except the portals of Euston. — 6. Germans, Russians, Italians, Frenchmen, all turn out their masterpieces—we never **a one**.

one — als neutrales Substantiv:

7. A common persecution soon blended the Nonconformists **into one**. — To be **at one** (einig sein).

one in Verbindung mit **a, some, any**:

8. This policy (of Pownall) anticipated the views of latter-day tariff reformers, "A grand marine empire . . . united into **a one interest in a one centre**". — 9. I may indulge in **a one last comparison**. — 10. The initiation of all wise or noble things comes and must come from individuals; generally from **some one individual**.

one = Unbest. Artikel.

Die Grenze zwischen **one** und dem nur in der Form verschiedenen **a (an)** wird nicht streng eingehalten:

11. The conduct of the audience (at Oberammergau) was excellent. **Not a person** arrived late, and as far as I could see, **not one** left before the end. — 12. He emptied the glass at **a draught**. — We took two steps at **a time**. — 13. Birds of **a feather** flock together. — **A (one)** hundred, thousand, million.

Die Zweiheit.

Two — both: **both** fügt zu der bloßen Zahl (**two**) den Begriff der Zusammengehörigkeit und Untrennbarkeit, s. Pron Indef.

Pair, couple, brace drücken besondere Arten der Zweiheit aus, unterscheiden sich also nur synonymisch.

Dozen, pair, score

schwanken in bezug auf den Numerus; s. Subst.

1. Around the long table of the host were seated . . . **a dozen** or more gentlemen . . . Of these dozen gentlemen we have only to deal with **one**. — 2. He says that until the American backers of *The Times* showed Messrs. A. & C. Black how to sell the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, that colossus "could be obtained from any ordinary booksellers at about half its nominal price, and it is doubtful if **a couple of dozen copies** were sold in a year." — 3. Away

they all went, **twenty couple** at once. — 4. Let us make a bet of a **dozen pairs** of gloves. — 5. Then old Fezziwig stood out to dance with Mrs. F. and a good stiff piece of work cut out for them; **three or four and twenty pair** of partners.

hundred und thousand

werden bei Angabe bestimmter Vielheiten adjektivisch, sonst substantivisch behandelt und erhalten das Pluralzeichen:

1. A couple of **hundred peers** will be spread over the benches. — 2. **Many thousands** are in want of common necessities; **hundreds of thousands** are in want of common comforts. — 3. **Tens** of centuries. **Tens of thousands**. — **Two thousand** of them, of these soldiers. — **Thousands** of gazers. — Five million two hundred **thousand**.

million

kann ohne Unterschied adjektivisch wie substantivisch, auch als vollwertiges Substantiv behandelt werden.

legion, myriad

zählen unbestimmt, meist dichterisch-rhetorisch:

1. Fifty years ago parochial guilds and unions were practically unknown, to-day they are **legion**. — 2. It was as if a **myriad** company of voices had been released and were speaking in the waters that, having drenched the land, were now busily boring little pathways.

Pronomina.

Sie besitzen eine reichere Flexion als die „Wörter, für“ welche sie stehen, lassen vielfach Genus, Kasus und Numerus erkennen, unterscheiden sogar Substantiv und Adjektiv durch besondere Formen.

Personalia.

A. Form.

Eine besondere Form ist vorhanden für das Subjekt, den Besitzer und das Objekt, im Singular wie im Plural — eine „Deklination“.

Nom.	I	thou	he	—	she	—	it
Poss.	(my, mine)	(thy, thine)	(his)	—	(her[s])	(its)	
Obj.	me	thee	him	—	her	—	it, so
Nom.	we	you (ye)	they				
Poss.	(our[s])	(your[s])	(their[s])				
Obj.	us	you	them.				

Bem. Die eingeklammerten Formen des *Possessive Case* sind nur als Possessiva im Gebrauch. — **ye** ist archaisch:

Therefore I say, go slowly with your technical instruction of elementary school children, oh **ye** educational bodies.

B. Gebrauch und Bedeutung.

Das persönliche Fürwort ist stets substantivisch, teilt alle Verwendungen des Substantivs und ist als Subjekt in den beiden ersten Personen der ständige Begleiter des Verbums:

Poor **me!**; **we** English; among **us** moderns.

1. According to Dashe the whole of India is one vast sign-post! He seems to think **we** in **authority** are blind to this. — 2. **She** of the militant type. (Suffragette.) — 3. The new preacher, like **him** of old, will begin by crying "Vanity!" — 4. Man, thou **art** a wonderful animal, and **thy** ways past finding out!

you wendet sich nicht immer an bestimmte Personen: vgl. Possessiva.

5. **You** might sooner get lightning out of incense smoke than true action or passion out of **your** modern English religion. — 6. **You** can't eat your cake and have it.

C. Syntax.

a) Entbehrlich wird das persönliche Fürwort als Subjekt

α) beim Imperativ:

Come to my tent to-night.

Jedoch (betont oder unbetont) nachstehend:

1. **Don't you** be in a hurry. — 2. Still, **mind you**, a constituency has a right to know that its member is an honourable and equitable man.

β) vor *would* als Einleitung eines Wunschsatzes:

Would that he were alive to read these pages. I wonder if there is a lending library in heaven.

γ) wo die Verbalendung die Person erkennen läßt.

Bem. Der Gebrauch ist auf die Poesie beschränkt: **May'st** hear the merry din.

δ) Wenn in *who* enthalten; vgl. *who*, Relativa.

But meanwhile, **we who** hold with undiminished strength the true fiscal faith, the true Imperial belief that as a preliminary to different methods of uniting the Empire this is fundamental and essential—**we who** hold that faith are clear. (Speech.)

b) Eine Betonung aller persönlichen Fürwörter, einschließlich **one** geschieht durch

self,

das die (teils substantivischen, teils adjektivischen) Formen

Sg. **myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself;**

Pl. ourselves, yourselves, themselves; — oneself bildet.

Bem. In allen andern Zusammensetzungen, wie *a man's self, Cæsar's self, your own self, his noble self, our own little selves* ist *self* reines, begriffliches Substantiv. Seine syntaktische Verwendung als Reflexivum s. dieses.

Die **self**-Formen lehnen sich in der Regel mittelbar oder unmittelbar an ein Substantiv (als wirkliches oder als vorschwebendes Subjekt) an.

Gehören sie zum Subjekt des Satzes, so ist ihre Stellung eine freie, von Sinn und Rhythmus abhängige.

Angelehnt oder hinweisend:

1. The Convention **was itself** the living embodiment and product of the Revolution. — 2. This bill (against the Earl of Oxford) Pitt supported, Pitt, **who had himself** offered to be a screen between Lord Oxford and public justice (*himself* gehört zu *who*). — 3. German titles of address are so absurdly formal that **Germans** laugh at them **themselves**. — 4. The author was one of those useful people who, **without themselves being great**, have been on terms of social equality and intimacy with the greatest. — 5. Martin spent half an hour with his mother, and found her very calm, very weak, and free from pain. **Herself** *she* was not sanguine. — 6. Moltke, the great educator of the Prussian army, thought the power of clear writing essential and **himself** set the example. — 7. He overruled all his daughter's objections and **himself** escorted her to her prison. — 8. **Ourselves** unseen, **we** could watch the shop on the other side of the street. — 9. Ruth was very beautiful in her quiet mournfulness; her mean and homely dress left *her herself* only the more open to admiration. — 10. Princess Heinrich was not awake to the fact that *she herself* was being quoted **to herself**.

Ohne Anlehnung ist ihr Gebrauch beschränkt:

11. Those who can best appreciate our London are **ourselves**. — 12. **Himself** is the principal consideration with **himself**. — 13. He really never was **himself**, after his wife's death. — 14. You may tell me, perhaps, . . . that we can see the faces of the living men, and it is **themselves**, and not their sayings, with which we desire to become familiar.

c) Das Pronomen der 3. Person
in besonderen Funktionen.

1. Geschlechtlich.

a) Determinativ —**he, she, they**:

1. **They** only **who** build on ideas, build on eternity. — 2. **He** laughs best **who** laughs last. — 3. What do **they** know of England **who** only England know! — 4. This, I say, is the most foolish of all errors respecting her **who** was made to be the helpmate of man.

ß) Alleinstehend —**they**, auf unbestimmte Personen hinweisend, oft geringschätzend:

1. **They** manage these things differently in the Lords. — 2. Things **they** do better in Germany. (Überschrift = was **man** in D. besser macht).

2. Geschlechtslos — it.

it wird als syntaktisches Formwort und begrifflich verwendet, in beiden Funktionen zugleich bei den unpers. Verben.

a) Als Formwort weist it auf ein kommendes Subjekt oder Objekt und ist unentbehrlich, wenn Subjekt oder Objekt Infinitive sind, oder das leitende Verbum ein faktitives:

1. This spell **it** was Clive's business **to break**. — 2. The capitulation of Great Britain after the disaster of Majuba Hill was an event which **it** never entered into the mind of any soldier, least of all Garnet Wolseley, **to conceive** as possible. — 3. She put aside any objections we might have had **it** in our minds **to conceive**. — 4. The reader will not fail to appreciate the distinction **it** is sought **to draw** between an essentially rotten society and a society afflicted with diseases. — 5. **It** was dangerous **to trust** the sincerity of Augustus: **to seem** to distrust it, **was** still more dangerous. — 6. The men to whom we **owe it** that we have a House of Commons are sneered at because they did not suffer the debates of the House to be published. — 7. **It** remains **to ask** (to be asked!) why the attitude of some English newspapers has changed towards Germany. — 8. The Baronet owed his son a sum of money . . . , which he did not **find it convenient to pay**. — 9. Lenbach declared that he would **consider it** an honour to paint the scientist's portrait.

Bildet aber das Faktitivum mit dem prädikativen Adjektiv einen geschlossenen Begriff, wie in

to see fit; to think fit, good, proper; to take for granted, so kann it fortfallen:

10. Paul Heyse resigned an annual pension from King Maximilian of Bavaria, because that monarch had **thought fit to withdraw** a similar mark of favour from Emanuel Geibel.

Vorwiegend in Reden treten auch Präpositionen vor it — zur Vermeidung schwerfälliger Gerundialkonstruktionen:

11. It is for us **to look to it that** we be not backward to respond to Canada's advances. — 12. Lovers of precedent will be hard **put to it** to find one for a Prime Minister of England being also Minister of War. (werden in arge Verlegenheit kommen). — 13. I think the time has come **to remind** the people of this country of it and ask them **to ponder upon it, that** there is no injustice, no anomaly which does not bring profit to somebody. — 14. How do you **account for it**, I continued, **that** this particular English school of art painters, which you are so fond of, is of such supreme excellence? — 15. Mr. Arnold **insists upon it that** Shelley's poetry lacks "in general a sound subject-matter."

It is dient zur Hervorhebung nominaler Satzteile:

16. **It is some time** (quite an age) **since** I saw you. — 17. In regard to education, sanitation, poor rate, the care of the roads, **it is the towns** who set the pace and the impecunious rural communities have to live up to them. — 18. In almost every age there is one class of the community which popular caprice holds in specially high estimation. At one time **it is the politicians**; at another **the fighters**. — 19. These qualities of the mind **it is** that impart to the style its peculiar flavour.

Bem. Zu Sätzen wie "For'tis Ireland gives England her soldiers, her generals too" vgl. Relativsätze, „Auslassung“.

β) Das begriffliche it.

αα) Zu einem transitiven oder transitiv gebrauchten Verbum als direktes oder indirektes Objekt tretend, weist **it** auf ein vor-schwebendes „Etwas“ hin, dessen nähere Bezeichnung entweder für das Verständnis unwesentlich ist oder absichtlich unterbleibt.

Nicht selten dient es auch — sich mit dem formalen **it** be-rührend — nur zur Färbung des Verbalbegriffes:

1. **End it or mend it.** — **You'll catch it.** (Das wird dir schlecht be-kommen.) — **Make it up with him.** (Vertragt euch.) — 2. **I think the in-clination of both of us was to put up our fists and have it out in good old English fashion.** — 3. **Women have it all their own way in romance.** — 4. **If he discovers who I am, 'tis likely I must run for it.** — 5. **The audience was pretty large; and the proprietor of the café made a good thing of it in beer.** — 6. **I was sadly put to it for a scythe.** — 7. **The King was plainly told that he must frown upon the Opposition, that he must carry it fair to-wards his ministers in public.** (Sich anständig benehmen.)

So sind Ausdrücke wie

to take it, to put it, he would have it, tradition has it
nur als Verengung oder Färbung des Verbalbegriffs auf-zufassen:

8. **He would have preferred such an end himself—to wear out rather than to rust out, as the saying has it.** — 9. **We are all of us, I take it, in favour of maintaining the closest possible relations with our great Colonies.** (Speech.)

Idiomatisch — **nothing for it:**

10. **There was nothing for it but for Japan to fight for her interests and rights on the mainland of Asia.** — 11. **The King . . saw nothing for it but to put himself in the hands of the barons.** (mußte sich wohl oder übel).

ββ) Als Ergänzung von Substantiven dient **it** zur Bildung neuer Verbalbegriffe, welche das Charakteristische des Substantivs in seinen Wirkungen lebhaft zur Anschauung bringen.

Bem. Der Gebrauch ist in der edleren Prosa beschränkt, sehr ausgedehnt im leichteren Stil.

1. **Whether the charmer sinner it or saint it, If folly grow romantic, I must paint it.** — 2. **I want to show them my power—to lord it over with them as they now try to lord it over me.**

it — so s. Demonstrativa.

Reflexiva.

Form.

myself	—	ourselves (ourself)
thyself	—	yourself, yourselves
himself	—	themselves
herself	—	
itself	—	
oneself.		

Bem. Das vorwiegend als Formwort verwendete farblose *self* kann auf die verschiedenste Weise durch Substantiva ersetzt werden, welche das Ziel des Verbums konkret, also anschaulicher ausdrücken. So erklären sich Verbindungen wie:

to find, fight, lose, thread, edge, elbow, feel, wend, wind **one's way**;
to hold, maintain **one's ground**, **one's own**.

1. Evidently English holds its own as the literary language of the colonies at the Cape („behauptet sich“). — 2. With more than the Irish faculty for blunder, Goldsmith blundered his way through a desultory education, blundered, fiddled and disputed his way over the Continent and coming to England, starved and blundered his way to fame.

Syntaktisch

handelt es sich hier nur um die reflexiven Fürwörter im engeren Sinn, d. h. soweit sie Objektsergänzung der transitiven Zeitwörter sind, s. S. 9 fgd.

Bem. Da die *self*-Formen zugleich auch als hervorhebend verwendet werden, so führt diese Doppelfunktion leicht zu unklaren Beziehungen, weniger in der Rede als in der Schrift, welche die Betonung nicht erkennen läßt. Dienen die Reflexiva lediglich zur Bezeichnung der „Aktionsart“ des betreffenden Verbums, so sind sie unbetont. In

John hit himself

ist *himself* echt reflexiv und unbetont; in

John hit the ball himself

ist *himself* emphatisch, zu John als Subjekt gehörig und betont.

a) Objekt.

α) Das Reflexiv als direktes Objekt:

1. The fact seems to be, that the Greeks admired only **themselves**, and that the Romans only admired **themselves** and the Greeks. — 2. You must let me introduce **myself** (*m.* unbetont = mich; betont verlangt es eigentlich ein besonderes *me* vor sich). — 3. This country superintends and controls the Irish trade and navigation; but they tax **themselves**. — 4. None see **themselves**; another sees them best. (Die Beziehung wird durch *another* klar.) — 5. To express **himself** the artist need not write about **himself**. This he may or may not do; but always he writes **himself**. (Nur das letzte und vorletzte *himself* ist betont.) — 6. Through very love of self **himself** he slew. (Browning.) Vgl. To over-eat oneself, to talk oneself hoarse.

Bem. Einige Verba begnügen sich auch in der Prosa mit dem bloßen Personale:

7. In these circumstances, James bethought **him** of a French nobleman who then resided in London. — 8. Strong, perhaps, repented **him** of the falsehood which he had told to the freehanded Colonel. — 9. "Kitty's husband?" cried Lady Fr., with an accent of bitterness, almost of sarcasm, of which she instantly repented **her**.

β) Das Reflexiv als indirektes Objekt:

1. There is nothing grand, not even anything natural in Newport... So they **build themselves** a landscape, and construct elegant landing-stages, and keep yachts, and **make to themselves** a fashionable watering place. — 2. Consciously or unconsciously, each generation is **adapting to itself** the

inheritance of all generations. — 3. I have **left myself** little space to write of Huxley's contributions to zoological science.

γ) Das Reflexiv als präpositionales Objekt.

Nach Präpositionen genügt das Personale, wenn es sich lediglich um eine ursprünglich lokale Beziehung handelt:

1. The great benefaction of the late Cecil Rhodes has **brought with it** a corresponding burden. — 2. The Kaiser, who has a pronounced mediæval side **to him**, accepted the gift. — 3. He had a horse shot **under him**. — 4. We had a bottle **between us**.

Zur Klarstellung der Beziehung auf das Subjekt tritt häufig **for zu den (betonten) self-Formen**:

5. It is always interesting to meet and converse with those who have made a name **for themselves** in the world. (Selbst, nicht für sich.) — 6. The story itself we leave readers to discover **for themselves**. (= readers thems. to discover for them(selves). — 7. The woman, we say, is not to **guide**, nor even to **think, for herself**. (Sinn: soll nicht selbstständig) führen, nicht einmal denken). — 8. The artist does not make words **for himself**, he finds and applies them **for himself**. (Bildet nicht selbst W.; er verwendet sie für sich.)

Reciproca.

„Kreuzweise“ Reflexiva sind nicht vorhanden und werden durch **one another** oder **each other**

ersetzt.

One kann von **another** durch Präpositionen getrennt werden; **each other** bleibt ein geschlossener Ausdruck.

Daneben (the) **one the other, each the other(s)**; letzteres ist am wenigsten formelhaft und fügt sich der gewöhnlichen Konstruktion.

Die Gegenseitigkeit kann unbezeichnet bleiben, wenn sie schon im Verbum begrifflich enthalten ist; z. B. *to kiss, embrace, meet*.

1. Carnegie once described England as a country in which the people lived in layers **one beneath the other**. — 2. The crowd passed by, howling, jostling, stumbling **one over another** in the pursuit of pleasure. — 3. Vgl. The founders of the English Church often **contradicted each other**, and sometimes **contradicted themselves**. — It is not unfair to say that the theorists who are eager to attempt the task of reforming Public Schools do not often **agree with one another** and do not always **agree with themselves**. — 4. **Each** can do a work indispensable for the welfare of **the other, each** recognising the difficulties of **the other's** task. — 5. It is a remarkable phenomenon that in recent years three tendencies, which at first sight seem in conflict **each with the others**, have played conspicuous parts in literature—cosmopolitanism, imperialism, provincialism.

Bem. Als Notbehelf oder Ersatz dient in der literarischen Sprache die lateinische Präposition **inter**:

6. It is due, according to him, to what he calls "the aloofness of Israel," the refusal of Jews to **inter-marry** with the nations among whom they dwell and their solidarity.

Possessiva.

A. Form.

Die Sprache hat, mit Ausnahme von **his** und **its**, besondere Formen für Substantiva und Adjektiva:

my — mine;	our — ours;	
thy — thine;	your — yours;	
his ;		
her — hers;	} their — theirs.	
its ;		

Dazu kommt **own**.

B. Bedeutung.

Your faßt oft die Angeredeten als die Gesamtheit, nicht selten im verächtlichen Sinne (vgl. *you*):

1. I have arrived at an age when to have the epithet "youngest" to **your** name in any capacity whatever is a very gratifying sensation. — 2. The Suffragist tactics of going to prison when **you** can avoid it, and holding **yourself** up to the world as a blessed martyr when **you** have done **your** time, is not to be commended. — Vgl. 'Your Baconian' in dem Streit Shakespeare v. Bacon.

C. Syntaktisches.

1. Own

dient zur Verstärkung, steht nur mit einem Possessivum und wird adjektivisch und substantivisch gebraucht:

1. Walpole was greedy after power with a greediness **all his own**. (einer ihm eigenen). — 2. The Mohammedans, too, have their superstitious customs; and there are smaller bodies with peculiar ones **of their own**. — 3. Those who are old friends **of our own** will know that our interest in the youth of the Empire is of long standing. — 4. The material in which the literary artist works is no more a creation **of his own** than the sculptor's marble.

Bem. Ohne Possessivum steht *own* im Sinne von „leiblich“: *own brother, own (first) cousin*.

2. Substantivisches Possessivum:

1. The Orange Free State was also granted £ 90000 to console it for the loss of what would never have been **its**. — 2. What his remembrances of me were, I have never known ... but **mine of him** were as the remembrances of a cherished friend, who was dead. — 3. To him comes Lady Macbeth; in the inevitable clash of the two natures **hers** proves the stronger; her dauntless will confirms **his**.

Prädikativisch an der Spitze des Satzes hebt es hervor:

4. **Ours** is an island home. — **Ours** is a constructive policy, not a destructive one. — 5. Men like Reynolds and Gainsborough led very different lives to what artists do nowadays ... **Theirs** was a dignity which is foreign to our impressionable, noisy age.

This book of mine.

Nicht beliebt ist die direkte Verbindung des adjektivischen Possessivums mit einem Demonstrativum oder Determinativum. Das Herausheben des Besitzverhältnisses durch (appositives oder partitives) *of* (s. Pröp.) enthält oft etwas Scherzhaftes, Vertrauliches oder auch Verächtliches:

1. Lady Henry, of course, is an old friend of mine, as she is of yours.
— 2. You'll have those universities of yours about your ears soon, if you don't consent to take a lesson from Germany. — 3. It is one of the highest achievements of a writer, no word of whose the careful lover of English prose can afford to pass by. — 4. Needless to say such reading as this of mine helped me not at all in my school work.

Nicht getrennt wird im höheren Stil:

5. We have a faith in the imperishable dignity of man; in the high vocation to which, throughout this his earthly history, he has been appointed. — 6. In this our hour of danger. — In this your day of salvation.

3. To rub one's eyes.

Das Besitzverhältnis wird unnötigerweise bezeichnet:

1. I write with my elbow as far away from my side as possible. —
2. While thus training the workers to help themselves, the really poor never stretched out their hands to him (Swift) in vain.

Idiomatisch: I want my dinner. My country = das Vaterland.

4. His . . . who.

In feierlicher Rede kann *who* auf das dem Possessivum zugrunde liegende Personale bezogen werden:

1. The more accurately we search into the human mind, the stronger traces we everywhere find of His wisdom who made it. — 2. Still, his is no ignoble privilege whose task it is to recognise and to win recognition for these luminous moments of others. — 3. It is our duty, who have built and supported our Church schools and training colleges, not to listen to any suggestion that our schools are perfectly safe in the hands of the Radicals.

5. His — of him.

Zu dem Ersatz der Possessiva durch objektives und partitives *of* + Personale s. Pröp. *of*.

1. She alone had come to satisfy me; with her alone all of me—thoughts, feelings, eyes, and ears—seemed to find some cause for exercise. (Mein ganzes Ich.) — 2. Why the use of an English word "foreword" for a French word "preface" should be deemed a debasing of the English language I cannot for the life of me imagine. — 3. I can't stand the sight of him. (Gen. Obj.) — 4. For the life of us we cannot follow Roberts' argument. — 5. Those who were his friends knew of this splendour of him and rejoiced in it.

Demonstrativa.**A. Form.**

Eigentliche: this — these
 that — those
 yon (yonder).

Uneigentliche: **Personalia 3. Person**
 the former — the latter
 the one — the other(s)
 (such — so).

B. Gebrauch, Bedeutung, Syntax.

Alle, außer **yon** und **yonder** sind zugleich adjektivisch und substantivisch. Doch gehört die substantivische Verwendung von **this** und **that**, besonders wenn einzelne Personen in Frage kommen, dem höheren Stil an; in der gewöhnlichen Prosa erfordern sie ein Stützwort oder werden durch „uneigentliche“ Fürwörter ersetzt.

Beim Gegensatz weist **this** auf das — örtlich und zeitlich — Nähere oder Zuletztgenannte, **that** auf das Fernere oder Zuerstgenannte. Sonst verwischt sich leicht der Unterschied zwischen beiden, doch ist **that** weniger hinweisend als bestimmend.

such hat demonstrative Nebenbedeutung; **yon** und **yonder** sind archaisch.

1. Mme. Bartet shines more brilliantly, but Mme. Desprès charms us more, **the one** fills us with admiration, **the other** with emotion. We cannot forget **the former's** cleverness, but we have more sympathy with **the latter's** feelings. **This one** is the perfection of acting, but **that one** is life itself. — 2. The antagonism to the stage survives in those denominations of the Christian church, like the Wesleyan, **that** most nearly approximate to the spirit of Puritanism. — 3. **Such** was the Earl of Chatham, but **such** was not William Pitt. — 4. The snobbishness of **those** days was not greater than the snobbishness of **these**, but it was far simpler and more straightforward. — 5. It is as an old man I wish to speak of him, for it was **as such** that I had the honour of his friendship. — 6. This word is used in **such** and **such** a sense now. — The first **such** Congress; every **such** little nation; the only **such** school; too many **such**; none **such**; one **such**; another **such** a genius.

and that, this . . .

7. When the denunciations (of the Church of Rome) had done their work, however, they were unreservedly withdrawn, **and that** by the author himself. (sc. Card. Newman.) — 8. The calamities of tragedy . . . proceed mainly from actions, **and those** the actions of men. — 9. Mr. Browning's poems are almost invariably works of art, **and this** in a very high degree.

at that:

10. Stevenson was degrading literature to a trade, and a disreputable trade **at that**. (Obendrein.) — 11. The Chinaman now charges double for his services, and is scarce **at that**.

this, that — adverbiiell

sind steigernd; allgemein vor **far**, sonst aber familiär:

12. "Well," he replied, "I'll tell ye a very remarkable fact; there's not a single tailor in Belfast can measure me, I'm **that** ticklish". — 13. Really, mother, I can't sit any more, I'm **that** stiff.

so — it.

So ist Substantiv, Adverb und Adjektiv. Als Substantiv vertritt es einen Satz oder ein Verbum, als Adjektiv ein Prädikatsnomen, als Objekt betont es stärker als it.

So ist vielfach nur Flickwort; begrifflich ist es an der Spitze des Satzes, wo der Ton die Inversion zur Folge hat:

1. The halls and inner appointments, the rooms and offices, are comfortable and tasteful, but plain, and in some instances extremely so. — 2. That word (syndicalism) has become associated with all sorts of fantastic doctrines of violence and disorder; so were such movements as English Trade Unionism and Socialism when the public first heard of them. — 3. This great Queen and her successors, by considering conformity and loyalty as identical, at length made them so. — 4. My friend married her. Why he did so was always incomprehensible to me, as they two could not have a single idea or interest in common. Ye he did it. — 5. We borrow, and rightly so, from the uttermost shores of the earth. — 6. India is to be a Canada or Australia, only more so.

Determinativa.

Als Determinativa werden verwendet:

1. the; 2. that, those; 3. such;
4. the one(s); 5. the same; 6. Personale 3.

1. the

verlangt als bestimmter Artikel eine besondere Behandlung.

2. that, those

werden auch als (betonte) Artikel gebraucht und dienen zur Substantivierung von Adjektiven und Partizipien:

1. Those that were not with her hated her with an intensity that would have gloated to see her piecemeal. — 2. That man is little to be envied whose patriotism would not gain force upon the plain of Marathon, or whose piety would not grow warmer among the ruins of Iona. — 3. The "secret" memorandum is thus that printed in Parliamentary papers. — 4. His methods were those readiest to his powerful hand. — 5. He drifted idly into a trivial classification of women according to their external advantages . . . There were those beautiful to all, those pretty so some, those plain to most. — 6. Those off duty; those present; those so dear to me.

there are those . . .

Daneben aber bezeichnen those und that das Determinative, wenn dieses weniger auf Konkretes als überhaupt Vorhandenes hinweist, daher meist in Verbindung mit there is (are):

7. There are those who are convinced that this activity portends war. — 8. There are those who will be contented with nothing but demolition; and there are those who shrink from all repair.

3. such as.

Such hat, wenn echtes Determinativum, as als Korrelat;
s. Uneig. Relativa.

1. **Such** political quarrels **as** have taken place in recent years cannot improve the tone of our public life. — 2. At present the pay of the common soldier is not **such as** can seduce any but the humblest class of labourers from their calling. — 3. They are allowed to find the refreshment-room, and there console themselves with weak tea in tumblers until **such time as** they are released.

4. the one(s).

1. Unfortunately, for the value of the criticism the paper condemning the book happened to be **the very one** in which its contents had been serialised. — 2. "Pauline" is **the one** of Mr. Browning's longer poems of which no intellectual abstract is possible. — 3. **The one** (turkey) as big as me? — 4. Artistic precision demands that the dictionary be searched for **that one** of a group of synonyms **which** is nearest the desired tone.

5. The same,

unveränderlich, substantivisch, adjektivisch, mit **all, just, quite** auch adverbiell, hat als Korrelate

as, that (which) und (vor Substantiven) **with**:

1. And these tissues (of animal organism) were behaving, in this isolated growth, just about **the same as** they do in the normal human body. — 2. Two members sitting on **the same** side of the House **with** himself were also going home. — 3. We have emancipated them (women), but they remain slaves looking for their masters, **all the same**. They love being dominated. — 4. Molière saw through the doctors; but he had to call them in **just the same**.

6. Personalpronomen 3 (s. S. 103).

He is a fool **who** quarrels with his own nest.

Interrogativa.

A. Form.

Von den interrogativen Fürwörtern

who, what, which

hat nur **who** eine Flexion:

who, whose, whom.

B. Gebrauch und Bedeutung.

Who ist nur Substantiv und fragt nach einer oder mehreren Personen beiderlei Geschlechts.

What ist Substantiv und Adjektiv und fragt als Substantiv nur nach Sachen, als Adjektiv nach Personen und Sachen.

Which ist Substantiv und Adjektiv und fragt nach Personen und Sachen.

Adjektivisches **what** fragt nach Beschaffenheit und Eigenschaft, **which** verlangt Auswahl.

Whose ist nur possessiv.

What a . . führt einen Ausruf ein.

1. Who could help attaching **herself** to Amelia? — 2. The only questions were, as to **what form** the contest would take, and towards **which side** victory was most likely to incline. — 3. For **who** are England? **Who** are the nation? They are not those who draw rent and interest, dividends and speculative profits. — 4. The secret of the English grammar — and it is an open secret — lies in the knowledge of **what word** or **words** go with **what word**, and **what group** of words goes with **what particular word**. (Meiklejohn.) — 5. Which is the more important, **what** we say or **how** we say it? — 6. Now the question is, **which** is really made ridiculous by this ridiculous episode of the prohibition of Maeterlinck's "Monna Vanna," **England** or **Mr. Redford**? (The Censor.) — 7. Doctors will prescribe **which woman** should be wedded to **which man**, so that the next generation may be a great improvement on the present. — 8. **Which** are the best fifty American poems? That is the question which is at present agitating literary America. — 9. Religion is surely to be taught, but **what of it** is to be taught, and how?

Bem. Eine formale Einschränkung braucht keine gedankliche zu sein:

10. **Who of us** do not possess similar treasures! — 11. **Who** among the politicians and **which** among the parties is destined to ride upon the next great wave that will ruffle the existing calm of domestic politics?

what a . . .

Die „Wortfrage“ wird zum Ausruf, zur rhetorischen Frage. Im Plural entscheidet der Ton über die Bedeutung:

12. O Patriotism! **What follies** are committed in thy name! — 13. "**What a devil** of a world this is!" cried Berlioz; and **what a devil** of a man was he, we cry! Nowhere but in the grave could he rest! **What a man!** — 14. The new chaplain sat in his cell and told him how very wicked some boys had been: **what a many** clever wicked things they had done. — 15. **What a memorable epoch** in the history of music has been spanned by Dr. Joachim's career!

what

erscheint in Verbindung mit **though** und **if** hervorhebend:

What though ye be cold and your little ones whining?

which one? whoever? whatever?

Die „Stützung“ von *which* durch *one* gehört der Umgangssprache an, dem leichteren Stil auch die — in einem Wort geschriebenen — *whoever* und *whatever*:

1. **Which one** of them who is British-born counts for anything excepting in his counting house? — 2. "I hope you didn't hear the wrong note!" — **Which one?** (Punch) — 3. **Whatever** does Lord L. mean, as I see in your issue of this morning, "as long as we are free agents"? (Was kann er nur meinen?) — Vgl. **Who ever** reads a stage-copy of a play when he can read the original?

C. Syntaktisches — Stellung.

Whom steht nur als direktes Objekt, vgl. Satzsynt. Objekt. **Who** und **whom** werden gelegentlich vertauscht. In der Unterhaltung und im leichteren Stil steht **who** sehr häufig auch als Objekt, sodaß **whom** dem höheren Stil anzugehören scheint.

Wenn irgendwie zulässig, behaupten die Interrogativa ihre Spitzenstellung, sodaß Präpositionen mit Vorliebe dem regierenden Verbum folgen.

Für direkte und indirekte Frage ist der Gebrauch derselbe.

Beispiele s. Satzsyntax, Fragesatz.

Relativa.

Bestand und Form.

I. Eigentliche Relativa:

1. determinativ: **that**;
2. interrogativ:
 - einfache: **who, what, which**;
 - erweiterte: durch **so, soever, ever**.

II. Uneigentliche Relativa: **as, but**.

Eine Flexion hat nur **who**:

who, whose, whom.

Alle Relativa werden singularisch und pluralisch gebraucht.

Gebrauch.

I. Eigentliche Relativa.

That

kann nicht von der ersten Stelle des Relativsatzes weichen, duldet keine Präposition vor sich, kein Nomen hinter sich, bezieht sich auf Personen und Sachen, selbst auf Adverbien und ist stets unbetont.

Die Grenze gegen die Konjunktion *that* ist fließend. Es ist häufig nur ein Beifügungsmittel für unselbständige Sätze, deren syntaktisches Verhältnis zum Hauptsatz keine genauere Bezeichnung erfordert und die unter Umständen ohne jedes Formwort angeschlossen werden können.

that steht mit Vorliebe

- a) nach geschlechtslosen Hauptwörtern
all, much, . . . thing, selten nach (determinativem) **that**;
- b) nach **Superlativen**;
- c) nach **the same** (vgl. **as** und **with**);
- d) nach fragendem **who**;
- e) aus **stilistischen** Gründen — des Wohlklangs wegen oder um abzuwechseln.

Who

bezieht sich nur auf Personen bzw. Personifikationen; vgl. das Geschlecht der Substantiva.

1. The great rich Miss Crawley, with seventy thousand pound in the five percents; **whom**, or I had better say **which**, her two brothers adore. — 2. Well, we shall hear of an exception in a moment—and an **exception to whom** Mr. Balfour himself owes perhaps more than he realises. — 3. The **human being who** happens to be in the least conscious of his existence will lightly turn **his** thoughts in the direction of the supernatural. — 4. There are sensitive **souls who** can contemplate the beautiful only. — 5. France was the **power on whom** the sovereignty of the Pope rested. — 6. Much less do I permit myself to speak of those **living lights** of literature from **whom** we may yet receive work even surpassing that of **those who** are gone.

Hingegen:

7. One terrible foe, with **which** poor Johnson had to battle through all his life, must not be forgotten. Fits of morbid **melancholy** often seized him . . .

Bei geschlechtlichen bzw. persönlichen Kollektiven schwankt der Gebrauch zwischen **who** und **which**; *which* hat leicht etwas Verächtliches:

1. The **masses**, to **whom** the twentieth century will belong, will ask for nothing less of nationality than to be free, prosperous, and well. — 2. Birth upon English soil was not, of course, of the first importance in the view of a **nobility** among **whom** there were still so many Norman names. — 3. . . but municipal activity is also stimulated by the pressure of **trade unions** and **other organisations who** believe that it will be easier to secure a maximum wage and a minimum of hours in connection with co-operative work than in the case of private industry. — 4. It was **the Times** I understand **which**, when "In Memoriam" was anonymously published, referred to it as "this touching poem, evidently the work of the widow of a military man," and it will be **the Times** undoubtedly **who**, if and when a new Keats arises in the land, will tell him to go back to his gallipots. — 5. It was a **loathsome herd which** could be compared to nothing so fitly as to the rabble of Comus. — 6. One **sect** there was, **which**, from unfortunate temporary causes, it was thought necessary to keep under close restraint. — 7. Every faction is attended by a crowd of camp-followers, an useless and heartless **rabble who** prowl round its line of march.

who, **whose**, **whom** sind rein substantivisch, wenn sie ein unbetontes determinatives Beziehungswort aufsaugen oder erst im folgenden Hauptsatz ausdrücken.

Der Gebrauch ist auf Sprichwörter beschränkt, sonst archaisch:

1. **Who** rises from Prayer a better man, **his** prayer is answered. — 2. **Who** proves too much proves nothing. — 3. **Whom** the Gods love die young. — 4. **Whose** bread I eat, **his** song I sing. (= the song of him whose . . .)

whose, nur im possessiven (subjektiven) Sinn gebraucht, bezieht sich auf geschlechtliche und geschlechtslose Substantiva zurück, ist attributivisch und prädikativisch:

5. I told her also of the death of Chiu-chong, **whose** was perhaps the most ludicrously ironical end on record.

whose . . . and his, her, their.

Statt **whose** steht gelegentlich in dem mit **and** koordinierten Relativsatz das entsprechende Possessivum:

6. The writer nourished on thought, **whose** nerves are braced **and his** loins girt to struggle with a real meaning, is not subject to these tympanies. — 7. There are men with a message **whose** delivery is so halting **and their** voice so ill-managed that they fail to arrest and command the attention of their audience.

What

ist Neutrum zu **who**, nur in einem Falle nicht substantivisch und, wenn satzverknüpfend, unbeschränkter im Gebrauch als *who*. Sehr häufig steht es kurz für **that which**.

a) **what** substantivisch

kann kein Beziehungswort vor sich haben und dient als Subjekt, Objekt und Prädikatsnomen:

1. It must not be forgotten that there lay **what** was finest, newest and most essential in his artistic career. — 2. **What** he (J. Chamberlain) appealed to was **what** he was himself. — 3. Mr. Bradshaw could have adhered to his resolution, without any other reason than the maintenance of **what** he called consistency, but **which** was in fact doggedness. — 4. Happen **what** might. — 5. **What** of poetry he (Coleridge) produced was of a singularly exquisite quality.

what — **that** :

that weist nachdrücklich auf vorhergehendes **what** zurück:

6. Their (our statesmen's) plans of reform were not so extensive as those of the lawgivers of Cadiz; but **what** they planned, **that** they effected; and **what** they effected, **that** they maintained against the fiercest hostility at home and abroad.

what kann nicht für **that which** stehen, wenn *that* auf etwas Konkretes hinweist:

7. But **that which** Hampden had feared had come to pass. A reaction had taken place. — 8. Nobody could accuse him (Pitt) of seizing **that to which** others had a better claim. — 9. Nothing but an Act of Parliament can legalise **that which** is illegal. But who ever heard of an Act of Parliament to legalise **what** was already beyond dispute illegal?

what — pluralisch

für **those which**, **those that**:

10. Except **what** were made in earlier times in America there are, of course, no tobacco-pipes of a date prior to the end of the 16th century. —

11. **What** are known as *Acoustic* changes, or changes due to faulty imitation, occur chiefly in foreign words. — 12. Vice, Vanity, and Folly! These are **what** make up the great London fair.

β) **what** adjektivisch:

1. I desired his leave to go with him **that** I might see the country and make **what** discoveries I could. — 2. For ourselves, we have no wish to

promote the interests of international peace **what** time Germany prepares to sink our Navy and capture trade.

Ein Übergang vom substantivischen zum adjektivischen Gebrauch zeigt sich in:

3. **What of income** remained after those disbursements he might apply towards repaying himself the old loan. — 4. There is one young lord in this town, who . . . had **no precedence** in the school, but **what** was given him by his merit.

Which

bezieht sich im Gegensatz zu **who** nur auf Sachen, verwendet jedoch **whose** im possessiven Sinn und kann in besonderen Fällen auch auf Personen hinweisen. Nur selten tritt es rein attributivisch vor sein Beziehungswort:

1. Confidently as it anticipates this dream of future greatness, **against which** time it is preparing, Berlin does not commit the mistake of neglecting the present. — 2. And accordingly almost every nation, in the modern and reasonable sense, has absorbed or combined several nationalities, **of which** process many examples have already been cited.

Ist das Beziehungswort ein **ganzer Satz**, so steht nur **which** (nach Komma!):

3. When we come to demand a strict observance of the manner of bygone masters we are trying to place English upon the level of the classics, **which** is, in fact, to regard it as a dead language.

Dagegen in anderer Stellung:

4. I am afraid it must be recognized that the cultivation of taste is here confused with, **what is a very different thing**, the cultivation of style for its own sake. — 5. In fact, upon that subject there was nothing that either of them did not know—or practise. And **what** was worse, they knew all the possible weaknesses as well.

which — who.

Auch **which** kann sich, abgesehen von seinem archaischen Gebrauch, auf Personen beziehen, wenn diese weniger als solche hervortreten, vielmehr als Vertreter einer Klasse, als Träger bestimmter Eigenschaften aufgefaßt werden sollen oder für ihre Werke stehen:

1. The miserable little being was usually summoned into another world, and there gathered to the **fathers which** it had never known in this. — 2. I was told it by a most accomplished man, an eminent soldier, and a distinguished diplomatist, who has enjoyed the confidence of the first **generals and statesmen which** Europe has produced in our own times. (Speech.) — 3. Milton did not extract from the **poets** and the **great writers whom** he was daily turning over, but only from the **inferior authors and secondary historians, which** he read only once. — 4. He has not found the God of the Hebrews, or of Mahomet, or of any of the **prophets which** have come with inspiration. — 5. With money—and a wife to take care of it, mind you—you are preeminently **the man for which** you want to be recognised. — 6. He and all the world might be openly convinced that he was not **the man**

which the Jupiter (Zeitung) had described him to be. — 7. The reader . . . is apt to miss, nor care that he misses, the better Coleridge **which** is the real Coleridge. — 8. That he did not understand, and could not without giving up his own idea of her, the **May Gaston which**, as she said, he had made for himself.

whoever — whatever — whichever.

So, ever, soever verallgemeinern oder betonen die interrogativen Relativa, ohne an deren Form etwas zu ändern.

Whoever ist nur substantivisch, **whatever** und **whichever** sind substantivisch und adjektivisch.

Whatever und **whichever** unterscheiden sich in der Bedeutung wie die Interrogativa **what** und **which**.

Whoso ist archaisch, **whosoever**, **whatsoever**, **whichever** sind am Veralten, **whosoever** (**whose ever**) wird nicht gebildet:

1. Prince Bülw considered the animosity between England and Germany as little short of a species of popular madness by **whomsoever** it was indulged. — 2. These are difficulties and doubts which must enter into the mind of every intelligent politician on **whichever** side, or in **whatever** quarter of the House he sits. — 3. There are occasions in politics, as there are occasions in war, when there is no course open but to engage the enemy **at whatever** odds. — 4. **Whoso** would be lord of the earth must first tame the fire and the sea. — 5. **Whichever** he means, this is how he thinks the result is to be attained. (Es sind 2 Möglichkeiten!) — 6. That **whatever** is taught, should be taught efficiently is an axiom of educational science, and there is **no reason whatever** in the nature of things why efficiency should be the monopoly of the classical schools.

Bem. Seltener steht **let who will**. — 7. Carlyle's profound intellect and manly genius give dignity to all his utterances, and, **let who will** deprecate the denunciations of the Jeremiah of his age, it is impossible not to be moved by the power and pathos which inform them.

II. Uneigentliche Relativa.

Als nominale Relativa werden auch die Adverbien bzw. Konjunktionen

as und **but**

verwendet oder empfunden.

as

steht unselbständig als notwendige Ergänzung (Korrelat) von den Determinativen

such und **the same**

und enthält einen Vergleich:

1. The food was of the best, and the wines **such as** drew the company on to drink largely. — 2. There spring up, year by year, **such** company of joyful flowers **as** I know not the like of among all the blessings of the earth. — 3. Those suspicions, indeed, were **such as** it is painful to mention. (gramm. Subj., **as** Obj. zu *mention*). — 4. I had **the same** trouble **as** you.

Selbständig, wie *which* auf einen Satz bezogen:

1. As already made clear, England lacks food supply, raw materials, and metals. — 2. If the Jewish money power as a whole was favourable to England—as for a time on the whole it **was**—we could count on their loyalty. But not a moment longer. — 3. He **was** a foreigner **as they perceived** from his accent. — 4. We are poor negotiators, but good fighters, and, **as was always meant to be the case** in our democratic Constitution, the matter must now be settled by the people.

Relativisch-adverbiell in festen Verbindungen wie **as yet**, **as regards**, endlich mehr oder weniger pleonastisch vor den Präpositionen **against**, **before**, **between**, **for**, **from** oder vor präpositionalen Ausdrücken:

1. Whether Rob Roy was the melodramatic hero Scott conceived is open to question, and certainly **as regards** his wife there is some evidence to prove that Helen was a more decent, respectable body than her warlike harangues would lead one to suppose. — 2. The Committee of Imperial Defence is a purely local institution. The Ministers of the Dominions do not attend **as of right**, but only if especially invited by the Premier of the United Kingdom. — 3. **As against** this, we live in an age of rising prices. — 4. Payment of M. P.'s began **as from** April 1. 1911.

but

schränkt das verneinte Subjekt des Obersatzes ein an Stelle eines Attributsatzes. Die doppelte Verneinung verstärkt die Bejahung:

1. An eye for an eye — **no** conscience-stricken creature **but** admits the wild justice of that. — 2. There was **little** that came his way **but** he (De Quincey) could illuminate with the chromatic light of his imagination. — 3. Alack, how **few** writers of history **but** are forgetful that kings and queens, courtiers and councillors are only human beings! — 4. **No** wise statesman who has studied British history **but** would avoid such a certainty of discord and civil strife.

Bem. Bei Wiederaufnahme des Subjekts durch das persönliche Fürwort wird **but** wieder zur Konjunktion; es entsteht eine „Satzreihe“:

5. There is **not** a jewel here **but** it fits, not a beauty **but** it subserves an end.

Stellung der Relativa.

Die interrogativen Relativa schließen sich möglichst eng an ihr Beziehungswort an, aber

that, **as** und **but** stehen nur an erster Stelle.

1. There has never been nor is there now any "authoritative" body of economic doctrine, **to dissent from which** constitutes economic heresy. — 2. And now observe the implications **to introduce which** I have set forth these details. — 3. They (the Government) were in a conflict **their success or failure in which** would profoundly influence the history of the whole of the coming century. — 4. General Botha, General Smuts etc. are the men **to crush whom** Lord Milner and the late Government spent £ 250000000 of British gold. — 5. Moreover, that very Danish inundation, **in checking which** Alfred performed so great a feat of action, had for a century been wiping out the fabric of the Church's work.

Indefinita.

All.

All ist unveränderlich, Substantiv, Adjektiv und Adverb, doch überwiegt die adjektivische Verwendung; es kann aber in weiterem Umfange als das gewöhnliche Adjektiv substantiviert werden, und zwar pluralisch für Personen, singularisch für das Geschlechtslose, — falls der Zusammenhang die Beziehung ohne weiteres erkennen läßt.

a) Substantivisch.

Geschlechtlich — pluralisch:

1. **All** will hear with regret of the illness of Mr. Swinburne. — 2. **All** cannot practise it (sc. total abstinence); the majority will not. (Speech.) — 3. William II. has gained even in the most democratic quarters the respect of **all**, the admiration of many. — Vgl. dagegen: 4. Yet the indispensable schoolmaster is scandalously underpaid, **all things** considered, in comparison with the superfluous Journalist.

Geschlechtslos — singularisch:

5. When **all** is said and done. — 6. When **all** comes to **all**. — 7. **All** else was forgotten. — 8. Above **all**, after **all**. — 9. A simple and direct style — who would not give **his all** to purchase that!

b) Adjektivisch:

1. The name sheep is applicable to **all sheep**. — 2. Canada is practically an independent nation with **all an independent nation's pride and patriotism** while she remains a devoted member of the British Empire. — 3. Americans of **all and every class** never believe anything unless it does appear in a paper.

Prädikativisch:

4. I am **all** for women's suffrage, but I want it **all round**. — 5. To be **all ears**, **all eyes**. — 6. See the Bulgarian, **all muscle**, next to the Greek, **all nerve**.

c) Adverbiell.

Als zweifelloses Adverb ist es meist steigernd und verlangt ein Hyphen vor dem zu steigernden Adjektiv:

1. One cannot plead that the Conservative party is historically either **all-good** or **all-wise**. — 2. Fifteen English counties out of 45 are **all-Liberal**. — 3. **All too many** of us affect a magnificence and brilliancy of phrase to conceal the lack of thought. — 4. Vainly as falsely, you blame or rebuke the desire of power! For Heaven's sake or for Man's sake, desire it **all you can**. — 5. **All right**, **all round** u. ä. — **all the same** — **always**, **almost**, **altogether**.

All the + Komparativ:

6. Milton's English is none the better for being half Latin, and Mr. Holmes's is **all the worse** for it. — 7. Help them **all you can**.

Idiomatisches.

a) all of . . .

All, both, half können den Zahl- oder Mengebegriff, besonders vor Fürwörtern durch of anschließen, ohne daß der Sinn dadurch verändert wird:

1. A boy's personality must be very robust if it is not crushed into mediocrity by the methods employed at **all of** our large schools. — 2. It is an interesting fact that **all of** the New England coast is gradually sinking.

β) . . . and all:

But the principal cause is, that he has forced himself, **style and all**, on public attention. (mitsamt d. St.)

γ) all but

schränkt Verba und Adjektiva ein = *almost, practically*:

He **all but** failed. **All but** impossible, complete = so gut wie.

δ) of all

superlativisch; vgl. *other* und *Präp. of*.

1. On **this day of all days**, did he wish to please her!—if it were only in trifles. — 2. Yet the Times, of **all newspapers**, allowed its special correspondent at Hull to state categorically . . .

Any s. Some.

Aught — Naught (nought)

stehen nur in bestimmten Wendungen, sonst archaisch:

for **aught** I know; for **aught** that appears; to avail **aught**;
to come to **nought**, set at **nought**.

1. There is nothing pleasanter in our literature than the fond reverence with which each man, who is worth **aught**, looks back to the great spirits that have gone before. — 2. It is the very struggle of the noble Othello. His heart relents, but his hand is firm. He does **nought** in hate, but all in honour.

Body s. Everybody u. ä.

Both

unveränderlich, verhält sich zu **either** wie **all** zu **every**. **Two** nennt die Zweierheit, **both** setzt sie voraus; vgl. Zahlwort.

Both ist Substantiv und Adjektiv. Als Adjektiv geht es allen andern Attributen¹ voran, schwankt indessen in der Stellung beim partitiven Relativum.

Both of s. **all of**.

1. All citizens of the world can judge for themselves, from the facts which he presents with such force, simplicity and eloquence, whether India be our greatest, or our most perilous, charge. Perhaps it is **both**. — 2. The second of these two writers, **who both** loyally support the system under which they have been educated, refers to the writer of the first letter. — 3. Men

marry because they are tired: women, because they are curious; **both** are disappointed.

Eine Zusammenziehung mit dem zugehörigen Possessivum findet häufig statt:

4. The argument of **their both** using the word "and" is really devoid of any sense. — 5. I can only assure thee, courteous reader, **for both our comforts**, that my concern is altogether equal to thine.

both — each — either:

6. What she did dimly feel was the fashion in which Ashley seemed to stand midway between them, within hearing of **both** and yet divided from **each**; she approached the conclusion that he was not really made for **either**, because he had points which likened him to **both**.

Certain

steht in der Bedeutung von *several, some, different, divers* pluralisch vor partitivem **of**:

1. Evolution as a cosmic philosophy was dimly adumbrated **by certain** of the Greeks before Spencer arose to set it upon an inexpugnable foundation. — 2. In **certain** of its qualities Carlyle's humour bears some resemblance to that of Swift.

Each s. Every.

Each other s. Pronomina Reciproca.

Either — Neither

sind substantivisch und adjektivisch, formal nur singularisch, selten im *Possessive Case*, adverbial, wenn satzverknüpfend.

Either vereinigt zwei Bedeutungen in sich:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. one and the other: die Zweiheit | } schwebt vor. |
| 2. one or the other: die Einheit | |

Die 1. Bedeutung (= *both*) hat es mit Substantiven wie *case, cheek, end, flank, half, respect, side, way*; sonst schwebt meist die Einheit vor.

Neither (= *both not*) läßt, weil es verneint, die Doppelbedeutung von *either* zusammenfallen:

1. It is said that they (the Moorish envoys) will go next to Berlin and Rome, but it is hardly likely that they will secure a better reception in **either** city. — 2. "There are only **two** ways of becoming civilized. One is being cultured, the other is being corrupt. Country people have no opportunity of being **either**, so they stagnate." — "Culture and corruption," murmured Dorian, "I have known something of **both**." — 3. The Postmaster-General dealt with Colonial Preference and dumping. I do not think, however, **either** are before the House. I hold strong views on **both**. (Speech.) — 4. Thus, before **either** Bills, as they exist, can be passed with any sense of freedom by the Lords, the Monarch's person must be respected. — 5. Shakespeare, if not so frequently played on **either** side of the Channel, is read on **both** sides. — 6. This knife cuts **either** way—**both** ways.

(n)either one:—7. To strangle the thought of **either one of them** was like the pang of death. — 8. The pair appeared before us fondling ineffably next day, **neither one of them** capable of seeing that our domestic peace was unseated.

(n)either—each:—9. **Neither of them** had power enough to support himself. **Each of them** had power enough to overturn the other. (Pitt and Newcastle.) — 10. **The others** (2 persons) had **each** satisfied his curiosity. — 11. Will **either of the two ladies** above-mentioned let us have **their** views on this particular point?

(n)either—other:—12. **Either** will serve the other. — 13. I am very sure that I never said anything of **either** to the other, which **both** might not have heard. — 14. **Neither** will object to stand aside if the other could thereby constitute more easily a more effective cabinet.

Every — Each

sind unveränderlich.

Every ist nur Adjektiv; **each** ist Adjektiv und Substantiv. Feste Verbindungen gehen sie ein in:

every one, everybody, everything — each other.

Every verallgemeinert und zählt, **each** sieht auf das Einzelne und bestimmt.

Dieser Bedeutungsunterschied trifft aber nur im allgemeinen zu, ist auch häufig belanglos:

1. Nobody can please **everybody**. — 2. No human memory is stored with the past tenses of **every** verb which the speaker uses, with the comparative of **every** adjective, with the plural of **every** noun. — 3. Were an effort of memory required in **each** instance, fluent and rapid speech would be impossible. — 4. **Every thing** good trims between extremes. — 5. Ben Jonson brings in a Chorus at the end of **every act**. Gleich darauf in demselben Artikel:—6. I suppose, after the curtain fell at the end of **each act**, an actor came forward, and recited this moral comment upon what had occurred, or was going to occur.

Doch gilt im einzelnen und negativ für die beiden Konkurrenten Folgendes:

Nur **every** steht

a) in Verbindung mit und nach dem Possessivum:

1. I have watched **her every** look and motion. — 2. Dignity and grace were in **their every** movement.

b) vor Kardinalzahlen: **every two years**.

Every und **each** stehen vor Ordinalzahlen:

This trouble is accentuated by the system of adding an extra day to **each fourth year**. From these circumstances of the three hundred and sixty-five days and the odd one **every fourth year** all our troubles of the calendar spring.

Nur **each** steht

a) als formale Bezeichnung der Verteilung: **two each** = je zwei;

b) wenn von nicht mehr als zweien die Rede ist:

1. **The two men were each** buried in his own reflections. — 2. Both (Mr. Porter and Mr. Shaw) are in their different ways idealists . . . **They each** leave out the defects of the side he advocates. — 3. The duel is between two brothers—one a very aggressively atheistical doctor, and the other a priest, **who each** fight for a woman.

c) zur Bezeichnung der Gegenseitigkeit: s. Reciproca.

The twins loved **each other** so intensely that they were obliged to hide their feelings, **each from each**, for fear **the other** should discover the truth.

Bem. Häufungen wie

every and each, all and each, every and any

gehören dem leichteren Stil an:

1. We move onward, both **each of us** and **all of us**, together. — 2. For the figures . . . we are indebted to many experienced farming correspondents in **each and every** county of Great Britain.

Few s. Little.

Half

ist als Zahl- und Maßbegriff adjektivisch und substantivisch, selten adverbiell und geht, falls adjektivisch, allen Attributen voran:

1. **Neither half** of this assertion is strictly true. — 2. About **half** died, mostly women. — 3. **One-half**, however, (of these accounts) do not exceed one hundred and fifty pounds in value. — 4. **Half** an hour (a half-hour, two half-hours), half my fortune. — 5. You have not done **the half** what you boasted you would do. — 6. **One half the murders** one hears of are committed under the influence of drink. — 7. I **half** see what she means.

Little, Much, Few, Many.

Little und **much** messen, **few** und **many** zählen. Alle werden substantivisch und adjektivisch gebraucht, **little** und **much** auch adverbiell.

Little und **much** treten nur zu Singularen, **few** und meist auch **many** zu Pluralen:

1. **Little new** was said on that occasion. — 2. But, granting that we had both the will and the sense to choose our friends well, how **few** of us have the power! — 3. **The much genius** hurries us into infatuation; **the little method** prevents our learning the right and wholesome lesson from them. — 4. Above all, this is apt to happen with us English who have, as an eminent German professor is good enough to tell us, **so much genius**, **so little method**. — 5. **Many were the strangers** whose quivering lips touched on that day—**many the peasant** who found **himself** pressed to the heart of a nobleman. — 6. **Many was the young fellow** about town who looked with wonder at the number of those notes. (Thackeray.) — 7. What meals I had in silence and embarrassment, always feeling that there were a knife and fork **too many**, and those mine; an appetite **too many**, and that mine; a plate and chair **too many**, and those mine; a somebody **too many**, and that I! — 8. Mr. Chamberlain would find the forces of labour **too much** and **too many** for him. — 9. A blamable profusion this; a fifth **as many** would be enough.

— 10. There is **many** a slip between the cup and the lip. — 11. **The many** fail, the one succeeds. — 12. Mr. Bridges dines late, and his company is **few** but select.

a little — a few — a many.

Durch den Zusatz des Unbest. Artikels werden **little** und **few** positiv; mit **not a** können sie sogar die eigentliche Bedeutung in ihr Gegenteil verkehren und steigern (Litotes).

A many wird nur mit **good** und **great** gebraucht; das zugehörige Substantiv steht mit **of**, wenn es selbst Pronomen ist oder ein pronominales Attribut hat:

13. He had a **little means**, and he gave it all to his people, and was poverty-stricken. — 14. Certainly it is not proved that the majority of women do want the vote. **A few** actively demand it; **a few** actively resist the demand. — 15. The influence of Leicester House prevailed on Pitt to abate a **little**, and but a **little**, of his high demands. — 16. The Reader will discern **few** fixed objects, and yet still **a few**. — 17. There are **not a few** of our readers who will be interested in the proceedings of such a society. — 18. A great (good) many friends. — A great (good) many **of my** friends, **of those** politicians.

much — adverbiall;

steigernd: **a much too** free translation (= allzu);

abschwächend: **much as . . .**, **much the same . . .**, **much like** (= etwa, fast).

19. There has been **much too much** of wordy froth between England and Germany, too many expressions of palpably insincere amiability. — 20. These questions we may presume to be decided; but it is clear and certain enough that men have been found to live **in much this fashion**.

A man

steht für das verallgemeinernde **one**, ist aber etwas archaisch; häufiger steht dafür **men** mit derselben Bedeutung:

1. Truly, **a man's** worst vexations come to him from his own relations. — 2. What a revolution reading makes in **a man's** life! — 3. It needs some years of practice before **a man** fully takes in the truth that, for real strength, and above all for real clearness, there is nothing like the old English speech of our fathers. — 4. **A man's** character reaches town before his person.

None — No.

None ist ohne Flexion, nur substantivisch, meist pluralisch konstruiert, vereinzelt adverbiall.

No ist nur Adjektiv, vor Komparativen auch adverbiall. Es geht feste Verbindungen ein in **nothing**, **nobody**, **no one**:

1. The German poetry, as a whole, has a rich native idiom; the prose has **none**. — 2. **None** of these **are** Teutonic words, but are all borrowed from Celtic. — 3. Speight's book is **no better** and **no worse** than many others of the same type. — 4. **None of this** happened, however; and German influence reigned supreme. — 5. We are **none of us** infallible — not even the youngest of us. (Jowett.) — 6. I would make a law, if there is **none such** at present,

by which an editor, proved to have published false news without reasonable verification, should simply go to prison!

None steht selbständig statt des vom Substantiv getrennten **no**:

7. Question of revenge there is **none**. — 8. University distinctions Goldsmith had **none**. — Vgl. Wool-carding in Barchester there was no longer **any**.

none of = **nothing of** — vor Abstrakten:

9. We, in England, know that our poor (Sir Edward) Greys and Lansdownes have really **none of that diabolic and persistent cunning** for which the Germans hate and almost respect them.

none — adverbiiell:

10. We have **none too high** an opinion of either the Spectator or the Saturday Review. — 11. It is, we suppose, inevitable; but it is **none the less** to be regretted. — 12. There are not half a dozen men in the House of Commons who can make a speech, properly so called, but the session is **none the shorter** on that account.

none — **no one** — **not one**.

Kein Bedeutungsunterschied ist zwischen **none** und **no one**, wohl aber zwischen **no one** und **not one**. In **not one** hat **one** den Ton.

Man sagt: **not one in a hundred** und **no one** (none) English — **not one** Englishman.

13. Younger boys were sometimes wont to come to M. O. when in trouble; but **no one** ever approached him with their joys. — 14. We must **none of us** go alone till we get to sea; **not one of us** must breathe a word of what we've found. — 15. It was my fortune to converse with many of the principal actors against that minister (Walpole). **None of them**, no, **not one**, did in the least defend the measure, or attempt to justify their conduct. — 16. It is surely remarkable that **no single one** of these has ventured to give public expression to what is undoubtedly a widely-felt opinion.

Nothing

ist nicht nur Substantiv (= *no thing, not anything*), sondern auch Adverb, und zwar in Verbindung mit

loth, abashed, daunted,

wo es eine verstärkte Negation ist.

In Verbindung mit **less, much, like** und in Sätzen wie *to help one nothing, avail nothing, differ nothing from* kann es auch als Objekt aufgefaßt werden, also substantivisch sein.

One.

One als Indefinitum stellt „Einen“ als den Vertreter einer unbestimmt vorschwebenden Zahl von Personen hin, deren genauere Bezeichnung gleichgültig ist oder absichtlich vermieden wird.

One besitzt die Form auf 's und bildet ein Reflexivum, ist unbetont und nur substantivisch:

1. **One** may see through a wall if there's a hole in it. — 2. Examples will readily occur to **one**. — 3. What strikes **one** most in him (King Alfred), is his completeness. — 4. To be highly pleased with his (Addison's) manner of writing, is the criterion of **one's** having acquired a good taste in English style. — 5. After all, **one** likes to choose **one's** husband for **oneself**, rather than have him chosen by fate or conscience.

One — **he, we, you, their** s. *Concord, Satzsyntax.*

Other

wird substantivisch, adjektivisch und adverbial gebraucht. In
each other, one another, other than
geht es feste Verbindungen ein.

a) other als Substantiv:

1. We shall find ourselves able to use one word in one set of circumstances, and **another** in **another**. — 2. If so, Japan is relieved from the charge of making one error, only to be convicted of **another far greater**. — 3. Her hero is her husband and **no other**. — 4. You are **another**. (Sie sind auch so Einer.)

Neutrales Substantiv ist **other** in folgenden Sätzen:

5. Scotland with her population a little more than an eighth of that of England, could not but follow in the train of the greater country. It would be unreasonable to **expect other**. — 6. Neither man nor woman for some minutes did **do other** (than look at her). — 7. With his state-craft it may well be that he could have done **no other than** what he did. (A. Hope.) — 8. We do not charge the Government with foreseeing this result, but we cannot **do other than** charge them with shutting their eyes to it.

other(s) of . . .

Vor partitivem Genitiv steht *other* substantivisch — besonders in Verbindung mit *many, some* u. ä.:

9. **Other of** the Plantagenets were buried here, but all trace of them has long ago disappeared. — 10. The legislation has given us primary schools and free libraries and **many other of the advantages** which the population now enjoy. — 11. His speeches have generally been of very moderate dimensions compared with many of Pitt, Fox, Burke, Brougham, and many **other of** our greater orators. — 12. After admiring **others of** Mr. Ridley's works, our talk naturally reverted to his predecessor. — 13. The recent history of Greek in some **other of** our Universities furnishes a clear enough indication.

of all others

ist superlativisch-steigernd:

14. The name, of **all others**, which should have been included is that of John Ruskin. („Allen andern voran.“)

b) other als Adjektiv.

a) Attributivisch:

Other times other manners.

Mit (pleonastischem) **one**:

1. King Edward holds to-day a position of perhaps greater power than **any other one man**. — 2. It is not too much to say that German militarism did probably as much as **any other one thing** to make our final triumph over Great Britain in our war for independence possible.

other than

dient zur Einschränkung; vgl. Stellung des Adjektivs.

3. But this is not the meaning to which Mr. Newman limits the word as applicable to **other than** the two ceremonies appointed by the Saviour. — 4. Thence the application of the word (style) has been extended to **arts other than** literature. — 5. And so we clergy—the teachers, the prophets of the Church—ought to have something to say on these subjects **other than** the vague generalities, the ardent ambiguities, the archaic and accustomed platitudes of our clerical routine. — 6. So numerous are novelists that the bookseller hardly cares to consider **other than** well-known authors.

other = different:

7. Perhaps Carlyle's "French Revolution" and Macaulay's "History of England" will live as long as the "Decline and Fall", though owing their reputation to quite **other attributes**. — 8. A very similar history ran in **another channel** from Fielding.

β) prädikativisch:

1. Yet even here it would be vain to seek for reason why each particular sound of every line should be itself and **no other**. — 2. I doubt his (Coleridge's) being remembered, except by a small body of his elect, as **other than** a poet. — 3. I will tell you what the German people and their rulers are, how they became such and could not become **other**, how with new influences and combinations of influences they must become **other than** they now are.

c) other als Adverb:

1. In short all that we know of the law of evolution forbids the conclusion that . . . nations will survive **other than by** the struggle of physical force. — 2. Somehow or **other**; somewhere or **other**.

Several

ist Substantiv und Adjektiv, unveränderlich:

1. The pupils are subjected to a preliminary medical examination, and **several were** rejected for physical or moral defects. — 2. I was obliged to go outside in the rain, where, however, a young gentleman . . . sheltered me very kindly in one of his **several great-coats**.

Some—Any.

Some und **any** sind unveränderlich — ohne *Possessive Case*, ohne Numerus.

Sie sind Adjektiva, die, wie die meisten andern Adjektiva, auch substantivisch gebraucht werden, wenn sich das Stützwort von selbst ergänzt oder im partitiven Verhältnis hinzutritt.

Some und **any** bezeichnen das Unbestimmte in Zahl, Menge oder Art, werden nicht prädikativisch gebraucht und stellen häufig nur eine besondere Form des unbestimmten Artikels dar.

Some und **any** sind nicht synonym; sie scheiden sich nicht formell oder graduell, sondern logisch. **Some** steht für etwas Positives, das entweder als vorhanden oder möglich oder erreichbar hingestellt wird; **any** soll die entgegengesetzte Vorstellung erwecken.

Für die Unterscheidung ist mithin nicht die Form der Aussage entscheidend, sondern der Gesichtswinkel, unter dem die Aussage erfolgt oder eine Gegenäußerung erwartet wird.

Für die besondere Bedeutung beider ist in den meisten Fällen die Betonung entscheidend.

1. Who does not wish to buy **something** at a bargain? — 2. I should feel obliged if **some one** would inform me of the titles of **any** such papers. — Will **some one** kindly explain? — Can **any one** tell me where this book is now to be got? — 3. It was natural that these persons should exhibit **some of** the awkwardness and **some of** the pomposity of upstarts. — 4. Does **anybody** tremble to-day at **anything any** British statesman says? — 5. None of these fables were published in Stevenson's lifetime, nor was their existence known to **some of** his closest friends. — 6. As to the Manner or Style. Have you, Sir, or have **some**, or **any**, or has **one** of your readers shared with me the discovery of the following pleasant test? — 7. What changes, if **any**, are desirable in the studies, teaching, and examinations of the University? („Eventuell.“) — 8. Disraeli, when **anybody** attacked him violently, used to write down his assailant's name on a piece of paper and put it away in a drawer. — 9. The cost of living continues to increase. **Some Bacon** which cost only £ 1,353 in 1870 was sold for £ 1,950 at the Huth sale. (Punch!)

of any

dient zur Verstärkung eines Superlativs:

10. Of all the considerable governments among the Alps, a commonwealth is a constitution **the most adapted of any** to the poverty of these countries. — 11. With all Balzac's exuberance, his passionateness, his unreasonableness, and his eccentricities amounting to a kind of insanity, his compositions are probably the **least emotional of any** creative author. (Mrs. Craigie.)

any — positiv.

Any „irgendein“, beliebig herausgegriffen, kann ein verstärktes „jeder“ werden. Die weitere Vorstellung braucht nur vorzuschweben:

1. **Anything** will do. — 2. **Any** wife to **any** husband. (Browning.) — 3. **Any** man can find **some** woman to wed him. — 4. **Anybody** can see that with half an eye. — 5. Shakespeare undertakes work of **any** and **every** description, tries and tests himself upon **all**. (Vgl. *every*.) — 6. Our note last week on translating „La vie est brève“ has brought us **any** number of new renderings. — 7. There are occasions when **any, even** the slightest chance of doing good, must be laid hold on.

any — adverbiall

in bestimmten Verbindungen, bes. bei Vergleichen — steigernd:

1. We believe it to be a dangerous delusion to suppose that the result can be **any different** in this country. — 2. It is not that the captains of industry and the politicians are **any worse** than other people; it is simply because they are found to be no better.

some one . . . , any one . . .

some und **any** dienen zur Verallgemeinerung des adjektivischen **one**:

1. Can the writer of the article quote **any one** theologian, of **any one** school of Christian thought, having anywhere taught such colossal nonsense? — 2. You will find, of course, that this character (Falstaff) is based on **some one** main idea. — 3. It is for its effect upon other lives that the value of **any one** life is to be judged.

some, any — substantivisch

oder ohne zu ergänzendes Substantiv werden seltener singularisch als pluralisch gebraucht:

1. **Some** give according to their means, **some** according to their means. — 2. It contains useful reflections for **any who** are prone to fine writing. — 3. You can make **any** of these cowards brave by simply putting an idea into **his** head. — 4. None of the thirteen authors cares to encroach on the fields of his colleagues, nor will **any** let **his** individual accent be heard in literary style, for fear of a jarring note. — 5. The wife in a marriage of interest is the spoilt child of romancers; scarcely **any** is rude enough to say: "Well, who put you there?" — 6. **Has** he or **have** **any** of **his** friends even begun to think out the effect upon the vast complex of British trade of this threefold Tariff, with its inevitable conflict of political and commercial motives? — 7. It does not matter how little, or how much, **any** of **us** **have** read, either of Homer or Shakespeare: everything round us, in substance, or in thought, has been moulded by him.

some, any in festen Verbindungen

zu geschlechtlichen und geschlechtslosen Substantiven; erstere bilden den *Possessive Case*:

somebody — anybody,

some one — any one,

something — anything (aught) — somewhat.

1. The truly educated man knows **everything** about **some thing**, and **something** about **everything**. — 2. Every impossible millennium, at **somebody** else's expense, has been offered to the ignorant as the price of their votes. — 3. Although **everybody** would agree that **anybody** might speak of **somebody**, and be found fault with by **nobody**, yet "body" by itself as signifying "person" is now deemed a vulgarism. — 4. A piece of dramatic writing to be **anything** had to be **everything**. — The company looks so smart. **Everybody** is here—that is to say, **everybody** who is **anybody**. — 5. We should, as Lord Brougham said, teach our children **something** of **everything**, and then, as far as possible, **everything** of **something**.

Something steht auch adverbial, besonders vor *like*; vgl. *much like*:

1. Lucian is not a philosopher: he does not attach himself to any school: he is a philosophiser **something like** Carlyle, with whom he has other affinities. — 2. The passage ran **something like** this. — 3. Professor Lowell **something** underrates the influence of the crown.

Somewhat ist meist Adverb, selten Substantiv:

1. It was not many years ago that the grapefruit growing wild in Florida was regarded with disdain, but to-day it is considered **somewhat of a dainty**. — 2. It was not till some generations after the Conquest, that learning and literature regained in England **somewhat of the position** which they had occupied two centuries earlier. — 3. The egg is **somewhat** muscle, **somewhat** nerve, bone and also **somewhat** egg.

Sundry

substantivisch und adjektivisch, häufig in **all and sundry**, sonst archaisch oder scherzhaft:

1. All the womenfolk of the colony were anxious to show their hospitality to the visitors from the ships, and they invited **all and sundry** to come inside their little houses. — 2. As to Hereward the Wake, I must confess to not having been able to complete even a first reading, and that after **sundry** trials.

A thing — things.

Nicht nur in festen Verbindungen mit **some, any, no, every**, sondern auch selbständig wird **thing(s)** als unbestimmtes Fürwort verwendet, wobei die begriffliche Bedeutung zurücktritt:

1. **A thing** of beauty is a joy for ever. (Keats.) — 2. Dryden's strength lay in his use of language as **a thing** spoken, not written. — 3. **The only thing** that many schools are thoroughly successful in teaching is inattention. — 4. Yet all must admit that the once inconceivable is **a thing** now in sight. — 5. Judging by analogy the implication is, not that any one of them (religious beliefs) is altogether right; but that in each there is **something right** more or less disguised by other **things wrong**. — 6. Elections are very **expensive things**, and the Government refuses to allow election expenses to be paid out of the taxes.

Who

= **some one** nur in: As **who** should say.

What

= **something** nur in: I'll tell you **what**.

what with — and

im Sinne von *partly — partly*:

1. **What with** one thing **and** another, the American people generally reckon to spend a matter of a million pounds on the election of their President. — 2. **What with** a war in one continent **and** a yacht race in another he is too busy with the literature of the actualities to have much time to give to literature of any other kind. — 3. **What with** motors **and** bicycles, the modern boy scarcely ever uses his legs.

Die Präpositionen.

Vorbem. Als Präpositionen sind nur diejenigen unveränderlichen Wörter anzusehen, welche häufige Verhältnisse und Beziehungen nominaler Satz-teile zum Verbum oder zueinander in festen Formen bezeichnen und ein Objekt als Ergänzung fordern.

Je schwächer die Präposition in ihrer ursprünglichen oder eigentlichen Bedeutung hervortritt, desto vielseitiger ist ihr Gebrauch, desto schwieriger die Feststellung des Grundbegriffs.

Es kann sich daher nur darum handeln, bei den ein umfangreiches Gebiet beherrschenden Präpositionen die Hauptgruppen ihrer Verwendung festzustellen, den Rahmen so weit zu ziehen, daß für die (unübersehbare!) phraseologische Verwendung eine Erklärung möglich wird.

Allgemeines.

a) Die Form des Objekts

kann sehr verschieden sein, am häufigsten ist es ein Substantiv.

Nicht Substantiv ist es z. B. in:

1. We have yet to solve the question of how to make the transition from compulsory work to the same work for its own sake. — 2. The public is aware by now that upon this matter there is no last word to be said. — 3. Without her attraction for men, Mary Stuart would almost undoubtedly have died suitably in her bed, instead of unbearably upon the scaffold. With it she was unendurable. — 4. The question as to what constitutes the critical standard has often been discussed. — 5. We get from — and can send to — Anywhere on earth.

b) Ruhe oder Bewegung werden formell nur von sehr wenigen Präpositionen ausgedrückt; wo die Unterscheidung nötig, der Satz allein die Klarheit nicht bringt, stehen andere Ausdrucksmittel zur Verfügung, mit denen es die Grammatik nicht zu tun hat.

c) Feste Verbindungen mit Vollverben gehen nur with, for(e) und by (be)

ein, während bei

over, under und up

die Bedeutung des Verbums + Präposition wesentlich durch die Stellung der Präposition beeinflusst wird; z. B.:

to upset — to set up; to undergo — to go under;
to overlook — to look over.

d) Präposition — Adverb.

Aus der Freiheit, welche das Englische besitzt, die meisten Präpositionen zugleich als Adverbien zu behandeln, die Beziehung zwischen Präposition und Objekt dem Belieben zu überlassen, ergeben sich syntaktisch und stilistisch bedeutsame Vorteile, welche in der Syntax des Satzes und der des Verbums des näheren erörtert werden.

Am ausgiebigsten wird von dieser Freiheit im leichteren Stil Gebrauch gemacht; in der „Wortfrage“ ist die Trennung fast ausschließlich im Gebrauch, die Verbindung pedantisch.

Im literarischen Stil entscheidet die Vorliebe des Schriftstellers; nur wenige Prosaiker vermeiden indessen die Trennung aus Grundsatz. Häufig sind rhythmische Gründe entscheidend.

All means and modes . . . they seize on greedily;

They greedily seize on all means and modes;

All means and modes are seized on greedily.

1. Caesar's "Conquest of Gaul" was a book to be reckoned with. The book before us now is one to be reckoned from. — 2. The leading thought of the book (on "Liberty") is one which though in many ages confined to insulated thinkers, mankind have probably at no time since the beginning of civilization been entirely without. — 3. It is the moments or the scenes in people's lives which alter their career which we find interesting to watch, or to guess at, or to hear of, in life. — 4. What did she run away from Haslemere like that for? (B. Shaw.) — 5. It was a bad ship, they said, to be sick on board of. (Meredith.) — 6. So, therefore, I am ready to think that on the whole the influence of prose has been under, and the influence of poetry over, estimated, because I believe that prose has been more to me than poetry.

e) Haben zwei oder mehr Präpositionen dasselbe Objekt, so kann Ersparung des Objekts eintreten; der Charakter der (formal zum Adverb gewordenen) Präposition bleibt durch Hebung der Stimme und kurze Pause gewahrt.

Bem. Das Komma ist als Tonzeichen „syntaktisch“ unentbehrlich. Im Druck wird es häufig ausgelassen.

* 1. I think it was Robert Louis Stevenson who said that he had more interest in, and received more quick pleasure from, a dictionary than any other book. — 2. What the men of 1816 revolted against and secured the abolition of, the supermen of 1911 tranquilly accept and kiss hands for. (So gedruckt!) — 3. But there is no whaler in, neither is there a whale floating at the ship; and the evening comes, and still no whaler.

f) Wiederholung der Präposition.

α) Bei nebengeordneten Substantiven ist eine Wiederholung nicht nötig.

β) In Attributsätzen.

αα) Die Präposition kann zugleich für die (fragenden) Relativa ausreichend sein, welche einen beschränkenden Relativsatz unmittelbar an das Substantiv anschließen:

There can be no question that the government of the country does not run in the lines which it should.

ββ) Wo that als Relativum auftritt, ist das Verhältnis syntaktisch verschieden, da that als Konjunktion aufgefaßt werden kann, andererseits keine Präposition vor sich duldet:

1. Tot homines quot sententiae—this was the House of Commons' view of the Women's Suffrage Conciliation Bill. Some believed in the Bill for precisely the reasons that others rejected it. — 2. People usually do useful work in the proportion that they make little noise. — 3. Swift's feverish impatience made him view the infirmities of that great baby the world with the same scrutinizing glance and jealous irritability that a parent regards the failings of his offspring.

rr) Unangeschlossener Attributsatz:

1. The restrained passion of a century found vent in the months they drove the Turks from their beloved land. — 2. Few people, says Erasmus, would wish to begin their life again upon the same conditions they have already lived.

g) Stellung.

Die eigentliche Präposition kann von ihrem Objekt nur durch syntaktisch dazu gehörige Bestimmungen getrennt werden; die Bestimmungen werden, wenn sie wesentliche Einschränkungen bilden, durch Kommata eingeschlossen:

1. Neither father nor son was prepared to give in until almost the last. — 2. I am afraid it must be recognized that the cultivation of taste is here confused with, what is a very different thing, the cultivation of style for its own sake.

h) Bedeutung.

Die örtliche Bedeutung ist die ursprüngliche, Übertragung auf zeitliche und geistige Verhältnisse findet nicht bei allen Präpositionen statt; einige bleiben rein örtlich, andere rein zeitlich, wieder andere vorwiegend figürlich.

Die einzelnen Präpositionen

werden in folgender (alphabetischen) Reihenfolge besprochen werden:

about	below	in
above	beneath	inside
across	beside(s)	into
after	between	like, unlike
against	betwixt	minus
along	beyond	near
amid(st)	but	notwithstanding
among(st)	by	of
anent	despite	off
around	down	on
at	during	onto
athwart	ere	opposite
barring	except(ing)	out of
bating	failing	outside
before	for	over
behind	from	past

pending	through	unto
plus	throughout	up
round	till, until	versus
save, saving	to	via
(side)	towards	with
since	under	within
(than)	underneath	without.

About

bezeichnet Ruhe und Bewegung nach allen Seiten und Richtungen außerhalb eines Gegenstandes, in seiner Nähe oder Umgebung, so daß der Gegenstand selbst nur von außen in Frage kommt, an sich nach Wert, Wesen oder Bedeutung nur indirekt von Interesse ist:

1. Mr. Kipling's new book, *Stalky & Co.*, is **about** schoolboys. — 2. **All about** the Royal Navy. (Büchertitel.) — 3. Mainly **about** People. (M. A. P., Wochenschrift.) — 4. But **how about** the manly British boy and those compulsory games of his of which we hear so much? — 5. Gorki himself has tramped **about** Russia as a beggar, and has had a life of spiritual unrest. — 6. When a man begins to be anxious **about** his financial stability, he cuts down his expenses. — 7. A critic, in common parlance, has come to denote any one who writes **about** a book or a work of art in the periodical Press—"writes **about**," we say advisedly, for such a definition is far enough away from the true meaning of the term.

Above

steht für graduelles Höhersein, schließt im Gegensatze zu **over** die Berührung (Bedeckung, Schutz, Einfluß) aus; die Verbindung beider zu **over and above** ist daher gegeben.

Übertragen konkurriert es, wenn das senkrechte Höhersein nicht betont wird, mit **beyond**, während seine Korrelate **below** und **beneath**, **underneath** sind:

1. It is the misfortune of those who tower **above** their fellow men that it is very difficult to form a just estimate of them. — 2. To the poets, **above** all, mankind owes the purest delight that God has given it. — 3. From the pyramid of turf **above** the Goodwood racecourse one of the fairest prospects in southern England lies mapped out **below** the onlooker. — 4. Character and intellect alike were far **above** the level of the ordinary undergraduate. — 5. The Speaker of the House of Commons is a party man. Within the limits of the duties which have at present been assigned to him, his conduct has been **above** reproach.

Across

bezeichnet den Durchgang durch Fläche oder Körper in gerader Linie von Anfang bis Ende = „quer hindurch“, häufig auch das zufällig oder hindernd in den Weg Kommende:

1. Natal comes well out of the scrutiny; but then Natal has not yet come **across** an extensive gold-reef or a deposit of diamond-clay. — 2. The

visitor, when next he sees the undistinguished slab of Roman marble in the quaint old Sussex city may perchance feel the thrill of a dead hand stretched out to him **across** the centuries. — 3. To swim **across** (the) Channel. — 4. Two of the most perfect lives I have come **across** in my own experience are the lives of Verlaine and of Prince Kropotkin.

After

drückt nur Bewegung aus = „hinter-her, hinter-drein“, doch so, daß, wenn übertragen, das Folgen betont, das Verfolgte als schwer oder gar nicht erreichbar, mithin als Muster, Vorbild, Ideal vorschwebend gedacht ist.

Zeitlich steht es für Aufeinanderfolge von Vorgängen oder Handlungen, welche die Sprache sich rein örtlich vorstellt.

Übertragen konkurriert es mit (**according**) **to** einerseits, mit **for** andererseits:

1. This, indeed, is a book **after** our own heart. — 2. **After** Big Game. (Records of a Sportsman 1899.) — 3. Hungering **after** Eternity. Coleridge seemed to taste something of eternal nourishment in the English poets. — 4. His search **after** knowledge is as remarkable as his thirst **after** pleasure. — 5. Newcastle was greedy **after** power with a greediness all his own.

Against

steht räumlich für die Bewegung, das Gerichtetsein auf und gegen etwas (meist Feindliches), welches aktiv oder passiv gedacht ist; zeitlich — in Konkurrenz mit **towards** und **by** — für das ungefähre Endziel; allgemein und übertragen für Vergleich und Tausch:

1. Armies are not like prize-fighters, who fix a date for their meeting and then go into strict training **against** the fateful day. (In Erwartung.) — 2. It is an axiom of the colonial sportsman, "Always look for game in the direction that a professional hunter warns you **against**." — 3. The Government is inviting tenders (of grain) **against** cash payment. — 4. There were about 2000 visitors **against** 3000 on Whitsuntide. — 5. To hope **against** hope. — 6. Presently Dobbin took his leave, leaving his address behind him for Jos, **against** the latter's arrival. — 7. The hat hangs **against** the wall.

Along

„entlang, parallel mit, begleitend“ — ohne Berührung, nur örtlich — verstärkt durch **side**:

1. The ship sailed **along** the shore. — The ship came **alongside** the quay. — 2. And the path of speculative thought has alluring bye-ways **along** which a man may cast a glance, and perhaps take a step or two.

Amid — amidst

auch im übertragenen Sinn, häufig mit konzessiver Nebenbedeutung, beide gleichbedeutend mit **in the midst** (**middle**) of:

1. Ruskin, puritan worshipper of beauty, recognized the forces **amid** which he lived only to despise them and to despair. — 2. The Scots Guards,

at a sharp word of command, fell in and marched off **amidst** loud cheers.
 — 3. On the fifteenth of June, in the year 1825, the first stone of "New London Bridge" was well and truly laid **amidst** a great ceremonial gathering.
 — 4. Millet could not lose sight of humanity **amid** the beauties of landscape.

Among — amongst

weisen auf eine Menge gleichartiger Wesen oder Dinge, mag die Menge in ihren Teilen oder als Gesamtheit vorschweben.

Ein Bedeutungsunterschied zwischen beiden ist nicht vorhanden, so wenig wie zwischen **amid** und **amidst**.

1. **Amongst** other things, he said: "And there are no more soldiers and prisoners **among** us." — 2. Its future place in the library will be **amongst** those works in which the student of history delights. — 3. George III saw that the Whigs were divided **among** themselves by the factious spirit which springs from a long hold of office. — 4. **Among** the Magazines = „Zeit-schriften-schau“. — 5. The literary man likes to dig himself **among** the treasures of literature, and not to have the gems found for him.

Anent

archaisch, im Kanzleistil = in betreff, «*ad vocem*»:

Now and again I have indulged in a grumble **anent** the undeniable fact that on the whole our first-class magazines compare badly with those of the United States.

Around s. round.

At

bezeichnet im eigentlichen Sinne die unmittelbare Nähe ohne Rücksicht auf Beschaffenheit, Lage, Inneres oder Umfang:

1. Johnson ceased to present himself **at** the inhospitable door. — 2. For want of a block, he will stumble **at** a straw. — 3. What you tell me will then go in **at** one ear and out **at** the other. — 4. For many centuries there has been a bridge of some sort **at** or **near** this spot, though of very different quality from the handsome structure which now spans the Thames. — 5. The Sovereign must be **at the centre**; his viceroys — best of all, his son — must represent him **at the circumference**.

Die Nähe ist mehr ein Daransein als ein Nahesein. Die Berührung ist eine gewollte, gedachte, ideelle, keine wirklich vollzogene. Der Gegenstand wird als das erreichte (zu erreichende) Ziel, als Grenze, Höhepunkt aufgefaßt, überhaupt als Punkt bzw. Durchschnittspunkt zweier Entwicklungslinien. So führt **at** endlich den Gegenstand von einer gerade interessierenden Seite vor; und wie es bei der gedachten Entwicklung oder Bewegung das Ziel angibt, so bei der abgeschlossenen Entwicklung die Ruhe, das Zuständliche, die Spannung.

1. Bewegung auf das Ziel hin:

a) bei selbsttätigen Verben:

1. And from that day to this he has not **spoken** to me, though he

speaks at me often enough. — 2. Amidst these that fair muse was placed, like the chaste lady of the Masque, lofty, spotless and serene, to be **chattered at**, and **pointed at**, and **grinned at**, by the whole rout of Satyrs and Goblins. — 3. To **jump at** a conclusion, to enormous conclusions. — To **play at** Royalty. — 4. To **swear at** the moon; to **strike at** corruption. — 5. Little Arthur (Balfour) won't **stick at** a trifle in order to **stick to** his place. (Punch.) — 6. He did not understand what I **would be at**. (Worauf ich hinaus wollte.) — 7. Of such (players) it may be said that they do not **play at** cards, but only **play at playing** at them. — 8. A gentleman does not **preach at** his neighbours by setting up arbitrary definitions of a gentleman.

b) bei Verben mit direktem Objekt:

1. When the cheering had subsided, Mr. Asquith proceeded, not only figuratively, but actually as well, to **snap his fingers at** Tariff Reform. — 2. She put on a new ribbon to welcome Harry Esmond, **made eyes at** him and **directed her young smiles at** him. — 3. As I went out of the office, hand in hand with this new acquaintance, I **stole a look at** him.

c) Eine besondere Gruppe bilden Verba des Schätzens, Kaufens u. ä., wo **at** die Grenze, das Maximum andeutet, bis zu dem man gehen will:

1. Malone **computed** the gains of the publishers **at** five or six thousand pounds. — 2. **Putting out at** good interest a small capital of slate-pencils and marbles . . . — 3. Buckinghamshire was **assessed at** a ship of four hundred and fifty tons. — 4. If the education given was on a par with the orthography, it was **dear at the money**. — 5. The other day a French church, which had cost "four figures" sterling, was **knocked down at** £ 80! — 6. **At** the very lowest **computation**. — 7. In some foundations tuition, which runs a course of four years, is free, board being paid for **at** somewhere about cost price.

2. Ruhe, Zustand.

Die zum Höhepunkt gelangte Entwicklung hält sich auf der Höhe und veranschaulicht Zustand, Lage, Umstand, Spannung, Beschäftigtsein, Stimmung:

1. In the mean time the two Houses **are at daggers drawn**. — 2. Austria and England **are at one** in their view of the treaty (of 1878). — 3. Shaving requires attention even when you don't dance while you **are at it**. — 4. Prices were **at their highest**. — The moon is **at full**. — 5. Triumphs **at sea** were followed by a triumph **on land**. — 6. The British public is not seen **at its best** when it is enjoying a holiday in a foreign country. — 7. Imagination, working **at white heat**, can fairly subdue the matter of the poem. — 8. When **at a loss** for good reasons, Johnson had recourse to sophistry. — 9. It is a triumph for the Universities to be able to compel the world to acknowledge that, even **at wit and humour**, University men do better work than others. — 10. That's a Blazing strange answer, too, said he, **at his hoarsest**. — 11. **At law** the Jewish woman enjoyed certain privileges and suffered certain disabilities.

At bezeichnet eine äußere oder rein äußerliche Veranlassung zu Gemütsbewegungen:

1. No woman ever was really **angry at** a romantic marriage. — 2. Nor did the women **repine at** their hard lot. — 3. In Mill **pity and wrath at**

the wrong and the stupidities of the world nerved him to incessant work and thought in definite channels. — 4. To be surprised, astonished, wonder u. ä. **at** sthg.

3. **at** — **in** (vgl. **in** — **at**).

At bezeichnet den Punkt, **in** die Sphäre. Beide können sich ergänzen, aber auch ausschließen. Die persönliche Auffassung muß eine große Rolle spielen und entzieht sich häufig einer knappen Wiedergabe in andern Sprachen:

1. Stevenson died **in the height** and ripeness—if indeed **at the zenith** of his powers. — 2. The clubs are places to **dine at**, to invite friends to, to **drink tea in**.

a) Ortsnamen.

At steht meist da, wo Orte unter einem bestimmten Gesichtspunkte in Frage kommen, der entweder gerade von Interesse ist oder überhaupt dem Orte erst Interesse verleiht:

1. **In Limerick**, Tyrconnel died and **at Limerick** the last struggle was made. — 2. Mr. Chamberlain **in** Belfast — in der Überschrift des Berichtes: Mr. Chamberlain **at** Belfast — im Leitartikel derselben Nummer. — 3. Another remarkable thing is that Kant was born, lived and died, **in Königsberg** . . . Kant died **at Königsberg** in 1804. — 4. The Zoological gardens **at** Regent's Park. — 5. The report was not to be obtained **at the Queen's printers**. — 6. The Thames **at London**. — The Irish made a stand **at the Boyne**. — **At the Lakes**. — **At the Antipodes**. — **At church** (Gottesdienst); **in the church** (Gebäude). — To study, be educated u. ä. **at** Oxford, Heidelberg. — Professor **in** the University of . . . — 7. Pusey was suspended from preaching **in Oxford**. — 8. The partial eclipse was visible **at London**. — 9. **In London**, as **at Oxford**, there was never the least personal luxury in Pater's ménage, though there was quiet and solid comfort. — 10. A Department of Agriculture has been established **at Cambridge** and a Faculty of Commerce **in Birmingham**. 11. Wherever she went she defrauded the lodging-house and hotel keepers, and she had been convicted for this **in Birmingham**, and had got into trouble **at Plymouth**. — 12. The hand that hurled the bomb **in Madrid** yesterday may hurl another **at Washington** to-morrow.

b) Zeitbestimmungen.

Der eigentliche Zeitbegriff tritt zurück:

1. It is with regard to his ministry that I wish to speak to the diocese a few words **at the New Year**. — 2. The solace she had was in hearing that hideous Radical Revolutionary things were openly spoken of **at Mrs. Warwick's evenings** with her friends. — 3. The agricultural labourer plants **at one season**, uses the billhook and the axe **at another**. — 4. We still hope that **at the eleventh hour** wiser counsels may prevail. — 5. **At the Conquest** and for nearly two centuries later there were no representatives even of the counties. — 6. **At this**, **at the same moment** — **in a moment**; — **at the end of** . . . ; **in the end**—to be **at an end**.

c) Zustände, Stimmungen:

Arnold: Say master rather. Thou hast lured me on,
Through scenes of blood and lust, till I am here.
Cæsar: And where wouldst thou be?
Arnold: Oh, **at peace** — **in peace**. (Byron.)

At the hands of = **from** bei Verben des Empfangens und Leidens:

1. The German Government has **sustained** a severe rebuff **at the hands of** the Reichstag, the most serious check, indeed, which it has **received from** that Assembly for a very considerable time. — 2. Shakespeare has suffered more than any other author **at the hands of** commentators and critics.

Athwart

ist dichterisch-archaisch = „quer durch, quer vor“, für Ruhe und Bewegung, eigentlich und übertragen:

1. . . . **athwart** the foaming brine. — 2. But the great controversy which will run **athwart** that of the Single Chamber is that between Free Trade and Tariff Reform.

Barring,

gelegentlich **bar**, ist = *except* im Sinne von „abgesehen von“:

1. My explanation is that, **barring** Olivier, the Fabians were inveterate Philistines. — 2. It is no idle compliment, but the known and plain truth, to say that the most responsible women are, **bar** a few scholars, utterly against the whole thing.

Bating

= „wenn man absieht von“, „nicht mitgerechnet“:

Mr. Lang's view is that literature cannot be taught. It seems to me, I confess, that **bating** the humour and the trenchancy Mr. Lang's case might be stronger.

Before

weist auf etwas Ruhendes oder Bewegliches hin, angesichts dessen man sich befindet oder handelt, einerlei, ob man ihm folgt oder vor ihm zurückweicht.

Zeitlich bezeichnet es Aufeinanderfolge oder Reihenfolge, doch nur für Zukünftiges:

1. **Before very much longer** the forthcoming Coronation will be the main subject of general conversation, and will almost monopolise general interest. — 2. Froude was exceedingly proud of the fact that he had praised Cæsar and written a life of him **before** Mommsen. — 3. He changed his clothes at a small restaurant close to his business quarters **before** going to his office.

Behind,

„im Rücken, hinter“ bezeichnet Ruhe und Zuständlichkeit, örtlich, zeitlich und übertragen:

1. Dr. Claudius said to himself it was not so sweet as it used to be, and that, for all he only had thirty summers **behind** him, he was growing old. — 2. Such an existence implies the negation of ambition, without which a country must ever remain centuries **behind** the times. — 3. To be **behind** one's time. (Verspätet sein.)

Below — beneath,

„tiefer als, (graduell) unterhalb“, schließen Berührung wie Bedeckung aus; beide entsprechen dem **above**, wie **under** dem **over**.

Below steht meist im eigentlichen Sinn, **beneath** im figurlichen; falls örtlich, ist **beneath** neben (dem archaischen) **underneath** das edlere Wort:

1. Two-thirds of Holland's surface is **below** average high-tide level. — 2. That is **beneath** me. (my dignity, infra dig.) — 3. It is possible to be **below** flattery as well as **above** it. — 4. Till now Parliament had bowed **beneath** the greatness of Pitt. — 5. In England, the home of commercial individualism and literary caprice, we have all sorts of distortions of rhymed prose writhing **beneath** the mask of poetry.

Beside — besides.

Beside, neben dem vollständigeren **by the side of**, erklärt sich selbst; es überträgt das „neben“ auf Vergleiche. Mit dem Reflexivum bedeutet es figurlich „außer sich“.

Besides beschränkt sich auf die (figurliche) Bedeutung = „außer“ im Sinne von „mitgerechnet, einschließlich“.

Bem. Der Unterschied wird nicht immer festgehalten, kann auch unwesentlich sein.

1. And we find that in the course of last summer, Trinity College, Dublin, **besides** admitting women to its privileges, abolished compulsory Greek. — 2. He came and sat **beside** me. — 3. The Year of Revolutions produced, **besides** the big European catastrophes, quite a crop of local upheavals in Italy alone.

Between — betwixt.

Between setzt die Zweiheit voraus, mag sie aus Einzelnen oder aus Gruppen bestehen, sodaß es sich als Spezialisierung von **among** darstellt.

Among kann daher gelegentlich für **between** stehen, es einschließen, **between** aber nicht für **among**.

Between bezeichnet Ruhe und Bewegung, ist örtlich, zeitlich und übertragen.

Betwixt ist archaisch für **between**.

1. Until you do get this "community sense" you cannot get that co-operation **between** individuals which is necessary to put an end to anarchy, whether **as between** persons or nations. — 2. With this curious parallelism in period and output goes an undeniable resemblance in thought **between** the two poets. (Tennyson and Browning.) — 3. But the art demands toil and is not to be learned **between** whiles. (= in the intervals.) — 4. I will not say that they managed the diocese **between** them. (gemeinschaftlich) — 5. Let us have a drink **between** us. — 6. I am amused to find on reading your article on "the Suffragist and the Socialist" that I fall **between** every stool.

Beyond

bezeichnet eigentlich wie übertragen das über einen Gegenstand Hinausliegende oder sich Hinausbewegende.

Beyond konkurriert örtlich mit **over**, zeitlich und figurlich mit **past** und **above**:

1. Tennyson was a poet who, **beyond** all others who have ever lived, combined the gift of expression with the unceasing interest in the causes of things and in the working out of Nature's laws. — 2. His greatness is **beyond** dispute. — 3. Art must be a living force, not a mere fanciful stringing together of pleasant platitudes which have no purpose **beyond** a moment's pleasure. — 4. His glory was **beyond** the reach of envy.

But

bezeichnet, soweit es überhaupt als Präposition aufgefaßt werden kann, „ausgenommen, nur nicht, bis auf“, verlangt indessen **all**, **every**, **any**, **no** oder einen Superlativ als Hinweis auf die Einschränkung oder Ausnahme:

1. The last **but** one = der vorletzte. — 2. In Stockholm everybody has a telephone, the smallest shops and **all but** the humblest homes.

By.

Grundbedeutung ist die der umschließenden Nähe; es konkurriert mit **at** und **near**, ist vorwiegend instrumental, als solches fast ausschließlich herrschend zur Bezeichnung des Urhebers beim Passiv.

a) Rein lokal hat es etwas Vertrauliches oder Getragenes:

1. The angel of peace sat **by** the pillow of the dying King. — 2. The city **by** the Arno. — To lay one **by** his ancestors. — 3. We were all alone **by** ourselves. („mutterseelenallein“.) — 4. One day in the ring, Rawdon's stanhope came in sight; Rebecca was seated **by** him. — 5. Boswell's book stands **by** itself in the department of biography. — 6. Would that one could say also—our typical humourist! But Mr. Jacobs is not typical. He is **by** himself. („steht allein“.)

b) Noch stark sinnfällig ist **by**, wenn es sich um Verbleiben, treues Aushalten handelt, dann allgemein um persönliches Verhalten:

1. Policy enjoined the king to give the highest place in his regard to those who, from first to last, through good and evil, had **stood by** his house. — 2. To stand, abide **by** a decision, an award u. ä.; to behave cruelly **by** one. — 3. William had discharged his duty **by** them (the people). He feared no obloquy; and he wanted no thanks. — 4. Do as you would be done **by**. — 5. The Daily Mail's twenty victims must include a woman or so whose **intentions by** the world at large are entirely good.

c) Ein sich Bewegendes kommt **an** einem Ruhenden vorbei, gelangt vorübergehend in dessen Bereich, erscheint auf seiner Höhe — in Konkurrenz mit **past**, dem gegenüber **by** das Zugekehrte sein betont:

1. To go, run, ride **by** one. To pass **by** an offence; to come **by** sthg. (in Besitz gelangen.) — 2. The prince retired **by** Badenoch towards Inverness.

d) „Zugekehrt, angesichts“, besonders beim Schwören, Beteuern:

1. **By the great God of Heaven!** It was not **My** serious meaning, it was ne'er resolve. (Coleridge, Wallenstein.) — 2. There are those who hold that an oath **by** an idol, being nothing, is of itself void.

e) Die Nähe als Mittel des Anreihens führt zur distributiven Bedeutung, in die schon die instrumentale hineinspielt:

1. The buttons dropped off his waistcoat **one by one**. — 2. When the good alchymist was doling out knowledge **by the hour**, his disciple would forget every thing but the lovely object before him. — 3. The soldiers marched **by twos**. — 4. To advance **by leaps and bounds**. — **By** little and little.

f) Der angegebene Zeitpunkt wird ungefähr oder allmählich erreicht und soll nicht überschritten werden:

1. All visitors are requested to be in their places **by 1 o'clock**. — 2. It is curious to remember that, if we compare the work which each of these three poets had published **by the age of thirty**, we must be strongly tempted to assign the first place to Mr. Swinburne. — 3. You do not believe in God? — Kindly find the reasons for His existence **by seven** to-morrow morning. (Jowett.) — 4. It is Mr. Asquith's plan to pass the Parliament Bill **by Easter**.

g) Etwas ist so nah, so in unserm Bereich, daß es von selbst zum Mittel wird, zur Handhabe:

1. To travel **by** rail, water, steamer; to work **by** day (at night), **by** moonlight. — 2. When a true genius appears in the world, you may know him **by** this sign, that the dunces are all in confederacy against him. — 3. Richard Savage now lived **by** begging. — 4. Anne was the second daughter of King James, **by** his first wife. — 5. To appear **by** deputy, **by** proxy. — 6. Junius begs me to believe that he measures the integrity of men **by** their conduct, not **by** their professions.

h) Urheber — gelegentlich ersetzt durch **of** (s. dieses), wenn das Persönliche zurücktritt:

The glory of Athens resides rather in the noble monuments wrought **by** Phidias, in the marmoreal tragedies of Sophocles, than in the eloquence and statesmanship of Pericles.

Unter den zahlreichen formelhaften Ausdrücken, welche **by** genauer bestimmen, ist

by way of

begrifflich zu einer Präposition geworden, welche selbst wieder stark nuanciert ist.

Final:

1. At St. Paul's School, at fifteen, the boy (Milton) had turned two psalms — **by way of** exercise. — 2. So much **by way of** stating a problem.

„Annähernd, etwa wie“:

3. The future government of the nation was declared to be **by way of** a republic.

„Nebenher, allmählich“ — oft ironisch:

4. The simple fact is that our German cousin is **by way of** becoming a tourist.

Despite

= „alle Widerstände ungeachtet“.

Bem. In den gleichbedeutenden (in) *despite of* bzw. (in) *spite of* handelt es sich nicht um die Präposition, auch nicht, wenn *despite* nachgestellt wird.

1. Well, *despite* his inferior dress, he was the master in that room. — 2. Blackie's friendship (with Spencer) extended over half a century, and *despite* their battles, they never came near to a quarrel. — 3. British hospitality, *despite* the Aliens Act, seems to extend itself to the worst members of foreign criminal classes. — Vgl. dagegen: 4. Yet, strangely, scepticism and irritation *despite*, one likes him, and takes pleasure in his company.

Down,

nur räumlich, kann wie *up* auch als Adverb gefaßt werden, dem sich das Objekt (als Apposition) unmittelbar anschließt. — Vgl. *up*.

1. Down hill, down the lane, down Channel. — 2. One after the other they go *down* the blinding white paths, each with his basket of purple grapes on his head.

During

steht nur für den Zeitraum, innerhalb dessen eine Handlung verläuft oder ein Zustand dauert:

Thirty years *during* which Europe had enjoyed repose, had prepared the public mind (in Prussia) for military efforts.

Ere

ist allgemein nur in festen Verbindungen, sonst archaisch:

ere long, ere now, ere this.

1. The foundations were laid *ere* the death of Daniel Macmillan in 1857, on which the great structure was reared mainly through the genius and energy of Alexander Macmillan. — 2. *Ere* many days Clive had been to Brighton to see Lady Annand Sir Brian. (Thackeray.)

Except — excepting.

Excepting faßt den einzelnen Vorgang „des Ausnehmens“ ins Auge, da es den verbalen Charakter wahrt:

1. Few, *except* those who have essayed the task, know how difficult, how tormenting, the work of translation is. — 2. Elizabeth was hideous, a temptation to no man *except* as queen of England. — 3. Books that make a sensation, always *excepting* the Letters of Junius, do not remain anonymous. — 4. Nothing, said Swift, is improved by translation *except* a Bishop.

Failing

im Sinne von „ohne“, „beim Versagen, Ausbleiben von“. Nur voranstehend, wenn Präposition:

The first Coercion Bill, *failing* National Liberal support, was rejected by the Reichstag.

For

= „vor“ und „für“, hat die örtliche und zeitliche Bedeutung von „vor“ zum Teil an **before** abgetreten, ist aber im übrigen, zumal nach der phraseologischen Seite, so vielseitig, daß der heutige Gebrauch auf eine alle Einzelfälle umfassende Grundanschauung kaum zurückzuführen ist.

Sieht man von „erstarrten“ Wendungen und Ausdrücken ab, so dient *for* einem doppelten Zweck: das Subjekt ist dem Objekt entweder zugewandt, um es zu besitzen, oder vom Objekt abgewandt, um den Besitz gegen andre zu sichern.

a) *For* deutet auf Ziel, Streben, Zweck, Bestimmung, Aufgabe:

1. All was ready **for** action. — 2. To melt lead **for** bullets; to flee **for** one's life; to propose **for** a lady; to leave **for** (abreisen nach . .); to advertise **for** pupils u. ä.; to exchange **for**; now **for** it; to wish, to hope **sthg.** oder **for sthg.** — je nach dem Sinn. — 3. Children cry, but don't die, **for** their lumps of sugar. — 4. The **cry** of all the counties of the realm was **for** a government which would retrieve the honour of the English arms. — 5. 'Oh **for two whole days** and nights of rain!' they cried, and the fancy of a deluge for a week brought a certain momentary happiness to their souls. — 6. Three or four schemes had been formed **for assassinating** the King.

Daher „eintreten für“ Person oder Sache bis zum „an die Stelle treten“, eintauschen gegen:

7. To sit **for** Cambridge, to vote **for** the Cabinet. — 8. Fox stood not only **for** liberty of conscience in his own day, but in a sense also **for** the mystical idea in all ages. — Once **for** all.

b) Das bestimmter oder unbestimmter vorschwebende Ziel kann zum Grund, zur Ursache oder Veranlassung werden:

1. But alas **for** the vanity of human wishes and the deceitfulness of titles! — 2. Scotland is a **terrible** country **for** rain. — 3. Shame on you **for** a bad daughter and a stuck-up prude! — 4. He mentally accused himself **for a brute** and then shook off the charge. — 5. **For being** less definite and less visible, the authority of usage in English is less strong, indeed, but not less real. — 6. To praise, blame, reproach **for**; — famous, celebrated, notorious **for**; — to weep **for** joy; — to marry **for** love; — to be (the) **worse** **for** drink; — **for want** of sthg. — 7. There are books that can only be read alone, but there are more that are the **better** **for** companionship. — 8. Curse you **for a fool**. — 9. "God bless you **for a noble creature**", was all I could say. — 10. When Noah was building his ark the people laughed at him **for a fool**. — 11. Get you gone **for a simpleton**. (Narr, der du bist!) — 12. I knew him **for a sluggard** in the morning; but as it drew on towards noon, I lost my patience.

To pass **for a fool** = to be generally accepted as a fool: to pass as a fool = to be a fool and be treated as such.

13. It is the old good classic and semi-classic reading that causes all the trouble. How many people who pass **for** being well-read have ever gone through six plays of Shakespeare? — 14. This lady called herself five-and-twenty, looked thirty, **passed** as thirty-five, and was forty.

c) Persönlich und sachlich einschränkend im Sinne von *considered as, regarded as*, daher häufig nach und in Verbindung mit *as*:

1. **I for one** have absolute confidence in the future. — 2. Super-taxation is, **for one thing**, a direct cause of increased unemployment. — 3. We **for our part** . . . — 4. **For ourselves**, we are not specially desirous that the Select Committee's proposals should be put into immediate effect. — 5. **For a wise man**, Lord Chatham seemed to me at that time to be governed too much by general maxims. (= considered as a wise man.) — 6. You have a good deal of intelligence **for your age**. — 7. **As for** what I have heard, it is not for me to ask him questions. — 8. **As for myself**, I was too nervous to be glad.

d) Räumlich und zeitlich einschränkend:

For the moment, **for** the future, **for** the first time; — **for** this once, **for** the time (being), **for** life; — **for** miles and miles together; — **for** the most part; — **for** six months **past** = seit sechs Monaten. — Gladstone **for ever**! — To be appointed **for** life.

e) Das Erreichen des Zieles wird gehindert. Das Verhältnis wird ein bedingtes; der Satz ist negativ gefaßt — durch *but, save, only* oder mit *all*; durch *all* wird das Verhältnis ein einräumendes = trotz:

1. We left that ship behind us as silent **as** the grave, **only for** the moaning of some of the drunkards. — 2. The result is a biography which, **for all** its brevity, has the art of being continuously interesting. — 3. But this was not said, and the result is, that we are dragged into a war by the madness of the Turk, which, **but for** the fatal blunders we have committed, we might have avoided. — 4. But even though he be a philosopher, a man is a man **for all that**. — 5. **For all** our pride we (English) are a queer people. — 6. **For aught** (anything) I know. — 7. A great part of the island is level, and would be monotonous, **were it not for** the charms of culture. — 8. He had a bad temper **for all** he was so gentle. — 9. You **cannot** see her fingers for her rings. — 10. **For all** her joy and all her prettiness, Naomi was a burden which only love could bear.

From

faßt die Entfernung als Getrenntwerden oder Getrenntsein. Es bezeichnet den Ausgangspunkt als solchen und damit die Auflösung einer früheren Gemeinschaft, die (mehr oder weniger gewaltsame) Entfernung, Trennung, Absonderung; die Trennung kann auch in dem Nichterreichen eines Zieles bestehen, in der Fernhaltung; hier liegt der Übergang zu *before* bzw. *for*. Die Bedeutung der wirksamen Ursache, des Motivs ergibt sich von selbst.

a) **from** — **of** (vgl. *of*).

From läßt den Ausgangspunkt schärfer hervortreten als *of*.

1. **From** the womb, the cradle, all eternity. — 2. We cannot govern India **from** London. — 3. Mr. Meredith edited it **from** his cottage in Surrey. — 4. His very name proclaimed him the son of a well-known man who had

made a fortune **from** soap. — 5. The books acquired **direct from** the publishers are, of course, entirely new. — To be had **of** all publishers. — 6. **From** a child, Beatrix grew **to** a woman. — 7. To expect, borrow, buy, have, free haben **of** und **from**; — to descend **from**, to be descended **of (from)**; — to come **of** a good stock; — to hail **from** America. („stammen“.)

Die scharfe Scheidung ist nicht immer von Belang:

8. **Free from** their (the Lords') opposition, Richard next determined to **free** himself of Parliamentary control. (Glücklich befreit, konnte er sich entziehen.)

b) **from** = away from:

1. To dine **from** home; — this is **from** the purpose; — a home **from** home; — to keep the wolf **from** the door; — to be moved **from** one's purpose. — 2. He could not endure his mother **from** his sight. — 3. I will not enter here into the question of whether there be some symbolism in the difference between the acts of covering the head **from** Jehovah and uncovering it **to** Christ. — 4. Much as Voltaire ridicules fanatics, they are **well off from** his satire when compared with the atheists. — 5. The dearest blessing will be to **charm** you **from** that unhappy temper. — 6. Falling upon his knees, Oliver prayed to Heaven to **spare him from** such deeds. — 7. The grave itself is no asylum **from** your spite. — 8. But he knew, to use his own admirable language, that such indiscriminate prodigality was '**from** the purpose of playing, whose end, both at the first and now, was, and is, to hold, as it were, the mirror up to Nature.'

c) **from** für die Trennung als Unterscheidung:

It would be of great convenience if some fashion were adopted enabling you to tell a boy **from** a girl.

d) **from** — out of:

1. Women act more **from** love and duty than **from** reason and prudence. Und: I cannot regret that I received her **out of** charity. (Zuerst: allgemeiner Beweggrund; dann: besonderer Fall, innerlich.) — 2. There is reason to believe that Charles I. was perfidious, not only **from** constitution and **from** habit, but **on** principle.

e) **from** (rein) zeitlich

für den Punkt, von dem gerechnet wird; der Endpunkt (*to, till*) schwebt vor. Vgl. *since*.

1. Centuries **from** now the negro may occupy a footing of equality with his Aryan brother, but at present his mind is hardly a fitting receptacle for self-government. — 2. **From** the opening of the reign (of George III.) Tories gradually appeared again at court.

f) Als Präposition tritt **from**, um Ausgangspunkt oder Trennung zu bezeichnen, vor eine größere Zahl anderer Präpositionen bzw. Adverbien:

among, amid(st), within, below, beyond, under, outside, off.

Bem. **From out** ist dichterisch.

In

bezeichnet die Sphäre, in welcher sich etwas befindet, bewegt oder verharret — räumlich, zeitlich, bildlich.

Die Grundvorstellung ist die der Ruhe (vgl. *into*).

a) Örtliche Sphäre:

1. Innisfallen is in the world but not of it. — 2. One bird in the hand is worth two in the bush. — 3. I caught my swooning friend in my arms. — 4. The servant surrounded himself with an atmosphere of respectability, and walked secure in it. — 5. The modern sentimentalist works in a coarser material. — 6. This passage is found in Cicero. — 7. In the street, sky, heavens, horizon, firmament; — in the field, meadow, country; — in one's eyes, sight, view, hearing, bosom, lap; — in the pulpit, chair, form, desk: — to wear a thing in one's cap, hat, bonnet; — in one's place, (on) a post, a direction; — in a body = geschlossen „wie Ein Mann“; — to write in pencil; — in (under) these circumstances.

In wird häufig vertauscht mit on, z. B.:

in (on) the island, isle, peninsula, continent; — in (on) a ship; — in (on) the horizon, street.

b) Zeitliche Sphäre = im Verlauf von:

1. He could go and return in the same day. — 2. Rochester lived utterly and fiercely in the moment and made a kind of religion of such a life. — 3. We lost the Manor House altogether in George I. — In a trice, twinkling, no time; — early in the morning, in broad day, in season; — in (under) the reign of James, in the protectorate of Cromwell.

in — at (vgl. at).

Es kann gleichgültig sein, ob der Punkt oder die Sphäre angenommen wird. Meistens aber ist die Unterscheidung wesentlich.

Zeitbegriffe verlangen in, wenn sie in bezug auf ihre Länge, at, wenn sie als Punkte, als Durchschnittspunkte zweier (zeitlicher) Linien betrachtet werden:

In (at) the beginning, close, dawn, extremity; — in the long run, in the end; — at the end, close of; — in the first glance — at a glance.

1. Never before, perhaps, in the history of celebrations had Fate struck with such ironical effect. Never had the badges of popular enthusiasm been given in such a moment, at such a moment, such a mocking air. (= bei einem so bedeutsamen Vorgang — in einem solchen Augenblick.) — 2. If the writers had recollected the age in which (not to say at which) it (Ode on Christ's Nativity) was written, they might perhaps have spared their ingenuity. — 3. For even in this moment of personal preeminence the Liberal leader was in no boasting mood.

c) Zahlverhältnis:

Could the England of 1658 be . . . set before our eyes, we should not know one landscape in a hundred or one building in ten thousand.

d) Persönliche Sphäre:

1. **In** a vulgar hack writer, such oddities would have excited only disgust. — 2. **In person**, J. H. Newman was slight, thin and rather tall. — 3. Falsehood is worse **in** Kings than beggars. — 4. Some acts which **in** the citizen are innocent, must **in** the soldier be crimes. — 5. **Happy in** his father and **in** himself the youth now lived. — 6. He works less, and **indulges in** greater leisure.

e) Betätigungssphäre:

to busy (oneself), to concur, to deal, to employ,
to engage, to interest, to join, to occupy u. ä.

1. When he had finished his own task, he would join **in** hers. — 2. To **deal in** all sorts of commodities, **in** politics, **in** slander.

f) Die Sphäre in bezug auf Ursprung oder Ausgang:

to centre, to close, to consist, to culminate, to end,
to found, to instance, to originate, to result, to terminate, u. ä.

1. Johnson had long an aversion to the Scotch . . . which, he owned, had probably **originated in** his abhorrence of the conduct of the nation during the Great Rebellion. — 2. Her worst offences had been impertinent jokes, white lies, and short fits of pettishness **ending in** sunny good humour. — 3. Great thoughts are always general, and **consist in** positions not limited by exceptions, and **in** descriptions not descending to minuteness. — 4. Cromwell himself **founded** his right only **in** necessity. — 5. The mission is likely to **result in** something like a fiasco.

g) Die Sphäre als Basis, Kreis, Gebiet besonders lebhafter Empfindungen und Affekte und bei dem Bewußtsein sicheren Besitzes oder berechtigter Erwartung:

to believe, to boast, to confide, to delight, to exult,
(to have) faith, to glory, to hope, to joy, (to take) refuge,
to rejoice, to revel, to sympathize, to triumph, to trust u. ä.

1. While there were times when I **rejoiced in** the idea that my sufferings were to be endless, I could not bear them to be without meaning. — 2. The Englishman has an indomitable **trust in** himself. — 3. You **triumph in** what ought to be concealed.

h) Die Sphäre als Angabe der verschiedenen Arten des Seins, (sich Befindens, der Stimmung) — prädikativisch vielfach nur zur Umschreibung oder Dehnung einfacher, farbloser Zeitwörter dienend:

1. Now Hatred is by far the longest pleasure; Men love **in haste**, but they detest **at leisure**. — 2. To be **in** the wrong, right, **in** earnest; — to be **in** one's power, grasp; — to be **in** the habit of; — to be **in** existence, **in** a hurry, **in** haste; — to be **in** failing, good health; — to be **in** high, low spirits; — to be (stand) **in** need, want of; — to be **in** awe of, **in** search, quest of u. ä.

i) Die durch **in** bezeichnete Sphäre kann die verschiedensten modalen wie kausalen Verhältnisse zum Ausdruck bringen —

auch hier als Ersatz bzw. Dehnung des entsprechenden Verbalbegriffs:

1. We must in justice remember . . . — 2. Mr. Squeers had but one eye, and the popular prejudice runs in favour of two. — 3. We are bound in consistency to receive the widest knowledge which our faculties can reach, or to reject along with it that narrow knowledge possessed by all. — 4. I could not in honour or in honesty decline, painful as it is to me in many respects to speak as I must speak to-day. — 5. In jest, sport, mockery, joke, scorn, contempt (of); — in defence, praise, preference, favour, honour of; — in proof, disproof, apology of (for) u. ä.

k) Die Sphäre, in der man sich regelmäßig bewegt, wird zur Norm:

1. God created man in his image. — 2. These engagements were, in his estimation, of no more force than the guarantee formerly given to the Pragmatic sanction. — 3. In one's opinion, notion, judgment: — in appearance (to all a.); — in proportion; — in all probability, likelihood; — in a manner, wise, way, strain, fashion, key; — (to be) in character, style, vogue; — (to pay) in kind; — in some (a) measure; — in the main, ordinary u. ä.

l) Die Sphäre beschränkt Zustand, Eigenschaft oder Tätigkeit, besonders bei Begriffen des Arm- und Reichseins, der Überlegenheit u. a.:

to be rich, wanting, superior, inferior, deficient in: — to abound, excel, surpass, fail, succeed in u. ä.

1. As he spoke, he trembled in every limb and almost fell. — 2. The relentless ghost pinioned him in both his arms. — 3. We find so many writers frivolously rich in style, but wretchedly poor in sentiment. — 4. Total negligence of language gives the noblest conceptions the appearance of a fabric august in the plan, but mean in the materials.

Inside

verstärkt die lokale Bedeutung von **in** und wird auch „übertragen“:

1. There is no book, one may say, published in the English tongue which does not show some runlets from that source, even though the writer has not looked inside the covers of the Bible since his infancy. — 2. This the poor beast, feeling cold, burst open, and with pardonable ignorance put them inside instead of outside himself. (Punch.) — 3. Inside another hour and a half. (in weniger als, noch nicht $\frac{1}{2}$ St.)

Into

bezeichnet das Versetzen in eine Sphäre, drückt mithin die Bewegung aus.

Je nachdem Ruhe oder Bewegung vorschwebt, wird **in** oder **into** gewählt. Daher ist die Bedeutung des Verbums entscheidend:

1. The laws and representative institutions of England were first introduced into the New World in the settlement of Virginia. — 2. In many of his books Charles I. wrote his favourite motto. — 3. Every passage which bears the marks of his higher faculties, is put into the mouth of some member

of the Opposition. — 4. I am Joseph, your brother, whom you sold **into** Egypt. — 5. Their author leapt **into** fame as suddenly as did Byron. — 6. The word (merry) had originally no more than this signification ("agreeable, pleasing") in the phrase "merry England", **into** which we read a more modern interpretation. — 7. It was **in the ears** of the Jesuits that the powerful, the noble, and the beautiful **breathed** the secret history of their lives. — 8. He put his hands **in** his pockets—**down into**, deeper **into** his pockets. — 9. But when Johnson took his pen **in** his hand, his whole character seemed to be changed.

Die Ruhe schwebt stets vor bei:

to couch	to deposit	to lodge
to place	to repose	to steep.

10. Lord Salisbury's despatch is **couched in** no terms of menace. — 11. **In** Harley the Queen **reposed** all her trust. — 12. Prince Bismarck has said: "Never **place** your confidence **in** an Englishman who speaks French without an accent." (M. O'Rell.) — 13. To **lay** one **in** the grave, dust, earth; — the scene is **laid in** . . .

Verba, welche **in** schon enthalten, bedürfen des **to** nicht mehr:

to enshrine, to envelop, to implant, to implicate, to insert,
to initiate, to inspire, to involve, to reinstate u. ä.

Into kann das Gelangen in eine andere Sphäre besonders sinnfällig zur Anschauung bringen, ein Bewegliches in ein Zuständliches verwandeln:

14. She lived quite **into** our time. — 15. Clarity of plot the work can hardly be said to possess until the reader is **well into** the story. — 16. It were as reasonable to assert that the Creator does wrong to unimaginable myriads of uncreated souls because He has not willed them **into** conscious life. — 17. This (window) tax was levied **into** the XIXth century. — 18. To awe one **into** submission, flog one **into** obedience u. ä.

Phraseologisch überwiegt **in** bei:

To call **in** question; — to bring **in** favour; — to put **in** order, motion, mind (of); — to throw a thing **in** one's way; — to take **in** (into one's) hand; — to set **in** (on) flame; — to look, laugh one **in** the face.

Like — unlike

werden meistens wie echte Präpositionen behandelt. Mit **to** wird der Ausdruck feierlich:

1. Mr. Chamberlain once observed that great men are **like** mountains — one must see them from a distance in order to realize how great they are. — 2. The Home Rule League has been constituted. **Unlike** the Budget League, it will work inside and not outside the Liberal Party. — 3. Democracy must find directors who will dare to tell the truth and treat the citizens **like** free men and not **as** children. (wie freie Männer, was sie nicht sind, nicht als Kinder, was sie sind.) — 4. And didn't you see how **like** she was **to** our angel, Bessy, Mr. B.?" — s. Objekt, Satzsyntax.

Minus

wird auch allgemein gebraucht für „ohne“, „abzüglich“.

The Athenæum . . . dismissed Paracelsus with a warning to the author (Browning) that it was useless to reproduce the obscurity of Shelley **minus** his poetic beauty.

Near

drückt positives Nahesein aus — im eigentlichen und übertragenen Sinn. Der Objektskasus kann auch durch **to** eingeführt werden, er muß es, wenn **near** von seinem Objekt getrennt ist. Vgl. Satzsyntax, Objekt.

Nearer, **nearest** folgen dem Gebrauch von **near** durchaus; **next**, welches das relative Nahesein ausdrückt, kann ebenfalls den Objektskasus ohne **to** einführen:

1. Commander Cagni reached the highest latitude yet attained by man and was **nearer** the Pole than Dr. Nansen. — 2. Nevertheless, he is **no nearer** to the production of a novel than he would be **to** creating a statue of Venus, were he given a ton of clay and the assured love of Mary Ann. — 3. Pity and love in this case are hardly **nearer** to each other than a couple of "Scotch cousins." — 4. Still **nearer** to Ypres. (Überschrift.) — 5. The poet who stands **nearest** him (Pushkin) in reputation is Lermantoff. — 6. The English drama of to-day is **no nearer** actual life than it was a generation ago. — 7. He wore a hair shirt **next** his skin. — 8. **Next** to nothing = so gut wie nichts.

Notwithstanding

gehört dem edleren Stil an und betont das „Einräumende“ besonders stark:

1. **Notwithstanding** an unusual flow of company, the master of the wine-shop was not visible. — 2. The days of chivalry are not gone, **notwithstanding** Burke's grand dirge over them.

Of.

Begrifflich — Funktionell.

Of antwortet ganz allgemein auf die Frage **Woher?** Es bezeichnet den Ausgangspunkt, ohne zur Art des Ausgehens Stellung zu nehmen. Wo diese in Frage kommt, fordert es Ersatz durch andere Präpositionen oder Adverbien, die Ausgang, Ursprung, Trennung schärfer zum Ausdruck bringen.

Infolge seiner Farblosigkeit kann es zum bloßen Formwort und in gewissem Sinne als Kasusersatz angesehen werden — ohne positiven Gebrauchswert, als Scheidemünze, deren Gepräge sich nur verwischt hat, die jedoch nicht in jedem einzelnen Falle auf ihre Grundbedeutung zurückzuführen ist.

I. Begrifflich

läßt **of** 6 Hauptgruppen erkennen, die sich indessen keineswegs scharf gegeneinander abheben, auch nicht innerhalb ihrer weiteren Untergruppen; häufig können für die begriffliche Abgrenzung eines Gebrauches mehrere Gruppen in Frage kommen.

- a) — **gerechnet von, ab, von — an**;
- b) — **in bezug auf**;
- c) — **herkommend von**;
- d) — **hervorgehend aus**;
- e) — **genommen von**;
- f) — **Beweggrund**.

a) of = **gerechnet von, ab, von — an**

gibt örtlich und zeitlich den Punkt oder Gegenstand an, von dem an die Entfernung gerechnet wird:

1. Our men had the **start** of him half a league. — 2. The widow of Charles Dickens died **within** a few hours of the publication of his collected correspondence. — Dagegen: **In** three weeks **from** its appearance. — 3. Regions lying **north** of the Trent. — 4. The proudest royal houses are but of **yesterday** when compared with the line of the Supreme Pontiffs. — 5. Your letter of the 11th to hand; — yours of the 11th.

(to be) **short of, wide of, to fail of** u. ä.

6. Stand **clear of** the gates! — 7. Meanwhile, such phrases as "correct English" and "correct style" have practically dropped out of the language. Anything **short of** bad grammar is correct. — 8. As a piece of art "Paradise Lost" **lacks of** being a fine piece of art. — 9. I have had a **narrow escape** of making a fool of myself. — 10. Disraeli has propounded a conundrum to Europe, and the guesses are **wide of** the mark. — 11. All this is **wide of** the truth. — 12. It took Prof. J. Wright twelve years to compile, and at the end of that time he found that all the big publishers **fought shy of** undertaking the work or bringing it out.

Ahead of, because of, abreast of, in the midst of u. ä. sind präpositionale Ausdrücke wie **wide of, short of**, während bei andern wie

on board (a) ship, this side the river, both sides the Border „fertige“ Präpositionen vorliegen, wenn auch die ursprüngliche Form (mit **of**) daneben gebraucht wird. Vgl. *side*.

b) of = **in bezug auf**

führt ein Objekt ein, welches eine notwendige Ergänzung des direkten und meist persönlichen Objektes bildet.

Besonders in Frage kommen die Verba des Trennens, Loslösens, Beraubens u. ä.

1. **Strip** the bishop of his apron, or the beadle of his cocked hat and gold lace, what are they? — 2. To him, the Colonel **opened himself of** a scheme of his own. — 3. I suppose I may now **relieve** you **from** nursing my son, aber: I am come here, you know, to **relieve** you of all the trouble I can. — 4. I **wash my hands of** you, cries the doctor, and I desire you to pay me for the trouble I have had already. — 5. This book **cured me of** my sectarian follies. — 6. Do not trouble yourself, said the judge, I will **ease** the parish of the burden. — 7. Professor G. **delivers himself of** the opinion that modern progress tends to bring poetry towards extinction, and that its last

citadel will be the lyric. — 8. Devotion to his profession has **beggared** him of his personality.

Passivisch:

9. To be delivered, brought to bed, confined of a child: to be relieved of one's goods. („erleichtert werden“.)

c) of = **herkommend von.**

Of ist ausreichend zur Bezeichnung des **Herkommens**, der **Herkunft**, der **Abstammung**:

To come **of** a good family, a gentle race, a Nonconformist stock; — to be descended **of** (from), (to descend **from**); — to be **of** one's making; — to deserve well **of** one; — to be afraid, frightened **of**; — what has become **of** him? — This was very good **of** you. — So kind **of** you!

1. Beware **of** pickpockets! — 2. The miser is of course **of** no race or clime. — 3. Lady Curzon herself had distinction; the distinction which comes **of** nature. — 4. We, **of** this paper, lose a valued friend, as well as an occasional contributor, by the death of Sir Walter Besant. — 5. Those who, not being **of** her, have known Wales longest and most intimately like her best and love her people most. — 6. We ought to be content once in a way to get a passable poem out of the "Saturday", and to carp over such a minor matter is trivial in us and wicked **of** us. (an uns — von uns.)

of — **by.**

An das **Herkommen**, nicht an den **Urheber** wird gedacht bei to be **born of** (woman, parents, family-love), auch bei to be **bred of**.

Allgemein aber steht **of** statt **by** archaisch oder archaisierend in Verbindungen wie:

1. The characteristic elegance of some authors eminent in France does not suffice to make them read **of** Englishmen and Germans. — 2. He was **beloved of** all men. — 3. The race **accursed of** God and man. — 4. To be **possessed of** devils. (Doppelsinnig!) — 5. All the same there is a great deal to be said for Sir W.'s argument. Indeed, he is **justified of** experience. (Die Erf. gibt ihm Recht.) — Wisdom has been **justified of** her son. — 6. For it is notorious that the whole art of getting into debt gracefully and remaining there gracefully for ever is **understood properly of** woman and **of** woman only.

Bem. **Understood of the people** ist aus den 'Articles of Religion' beibehalten und wird in ironischem Sinne gebraucht.

of — **from.** (vgl. **from** — **of.**)

Wenn nicht der bloße Ausgangspunkt, das **Herkommen** vorschwebt, sondern die Trennung oder gar Losreißung, so genügt **of** nicht und wird durch **from** ersetzt.

Häufig wird das Verbum an sich für die Wahl entscheidend sein; wo es begrifflich matt ist, tritt **of** meist zu Personen, **from** zu Sachen, und zwar besonders dann, wenn durch besondere Zusätze oder den Zusammenhang das Trennende in den Vordergrund gerückt ist. „Richtig“ kann oft beides sein.

1. The two books are written **of** opposite sides, but not **from** a different point of view. — 2. Brooks **of** Sheffield; the Earl **of** Rosebery; the Duchess **of** Kent. — 3. The Man **from** Birmingham (J. Chamberlain) has smiled on the Colonies, and now they shine in the Imperial diadem with a brilliance undreamed-of before. — 4. Is it not **of** the King of England and not **from** the Kaiser that sanction for the proposed marriage will have to be sought? — 5. Inglesant learnt **of** him more good lessons than he did, as he himself owned, afterwards **from** many popular sermons. — 6. I want nothing **from** you, I ask nothing **of** you. — 7. Richard did homage to the Crown for all the dominions which Henry **held of** that crown. — Dagegen: Great or small, however, each estate thus **held from** the crown was held by its tenant on condition of military service at the royal call. — The governor **held it** (the place) immediately **from** the Crown. — 8. To be **had, obtained of** all booksellers. — 9. Every nation have their refinements and grossièretés, in which they take the lead, and **lose it of** one another by turns. — 10. I have never heard a word **of or from** him since. — 11. To take sthg. ill **of** a man; to take advantage, leave, an oath **of** one; to take counsel **of** oneself. — 12. To die **of** old age, **of** a fever, **of** overwork u. ä.; — to die **from** wounds, heat, want **of** water u. ä. — 13. Six persons **died from** the effects of the injuries they received.

d) **of** = hervorgehend aus.

Hier handelt es sich lediglich um die Bezeichnung des Stoffes, Materials, aus dem etwas genommen, gearbeitet, geschaffen wird.

Der Stoff dient nur als Qualitätsträger, das Schaffen ist nur roh und unbestimmt gedacht.

Sobald der Stoff als solcher stärker hervortritt oder das Interesse auf das Herausarbeiten, auf die Kunstfertigkeit gelenkt werden soll, genügt **of** nicht mehr; s. *of — from — out of*.

1. Man is **of** dust; to be **of** flesh and blood. — 2. It is **of** the nature of womanhood to be brave and to look the hard facts of life squarely in the face. — 3. Burleigh was **made of** the willow, and not **of** the oak. — 4. Nature had **made** them (Garrick and Johnson) **of** very different clay. — 5. For **of** the wholly common is man made, And custom is his nurse. (Coleridge, Wallenstein.) — 6. Age had turned the map **of** a fine yellow-brown. — 7. He was **christened of** that religion. — 8. Perhaps Heine **of** the sad but still heroic life will have some justice done to him before long. — 9. We had a fine (hard) time **of** it. — 10. The Emperor Augustus found Rome **of** brick and left it **of** marble.

of — from — out of.

Auch hier konkurriert **of** mit **from**, oder es verlangt eine Verstärkung des Sinnfälligen durch **out**:

1. I had still, it seemed, some of the material **out of which** all worth of character, and all capacity for happiness are made. — 2. The robe was crimson, and manufactured **out of** the very finest wool. — 3. He could make a boat **out of** anything, from a skewer upwards, make spoked wheels **out of** cotton reels, and birdcages **of** old wires. — 4. But it is an undoubted fact that **out of** the greatest sinners have been made the poets, saints and martyrs. — 5. Cream = a sweetmeat prepared **from** milk. — 6. No beer

made **from other materials** than malted barley and hops shall be sold. — 7. Such a description, **composed from** scanty and dispersed **materials**, must necessarily be very imperfect.

e) of = **genommen von.**

Wenn **of** das Herkommen unter dem Gesichtspunkt des Fortnehmens ausdrückt, so entsteht das Verhältnis des Theiles zum Ganzen, des Einzelnen zur Gesamtheit.

Der Teil kann unbezeichnet bleiben, auch durch ein unbestimmtes Adverb ausgedrückt werden.

1. Writing has become a business and is no longer the accident of inspiration. **Of giants** there are none, and literary poseurs have descended from their stilts. — 2. It seems rather hard that a fellow can't **give away of his surplus money** in charity if he is such a fool as to want to. — 3. He was **of those men** who treat and speak of women as a class. — 4. I ask leave, Sir, to introduce a Bill which in form **is of the simplest**. — 5. W. Pater felt bound to exercise his special faculties to the uttermost, and to **give liberally of his sympathy**. — 6. To be **sworn of** the Privy Council; to be **admitted of** Trinity College. — 7. The **whole of the chiefs** of Northern India and Afghanistan assembled to do obeisance to the great Mogul. — 8. It is not probable that a second Browning should arise. His uneven rhymes, are **all of him** that is imitable. — 9. Windham was a much honester man than Pitt. He was also much honester than his own master, Burke; was **more of** a gentleman and **less of** a politician. — 10. Bruno was **more of** a poet than of a philosopher, **more of** a dreamer than of a thinker, **more of** a mystic than **of an exact reasoner**, and withal **something of** a charlatan and **something of** a braggart.

Unabhängig und superlativisch steht dieses **of** mit **all** in:

11. His suggestion that night was that the reduction of Navy Estimates was one which of **all questions** required caution. — 12. The body of Paine was lifted from this grave by William Cobbett and brought to England with the desire that it might find a resting-place in, **of all places**, Westminster Abbey. — 13. **Of all things**, I do not like writing. — 14. We choose this time, because it is a time, **of all others**, when Want is keenly felt, and Abundance rejoices. — 15. Mr. Lang **of all people** should remember that with the majority of writers authorship is a means of livelihood.

Ähnlich:

16. Pater was a **pagan of pagans**, and sensual beauty satisfied his soul. — 17. We all think the same in our **heart of hearts**.

f) of = **Beweggrund.**

Wird die Veranlassung zum Beweggrund einer Handlung, so ist **of** in einer größeren Zahl idiomatischer Wendungen ausreichend, sonst leicht archaisch.

Die häufige Mitverwendung von **own** und **self** ist für die Auffassung bezeichnend.

1. He is away **of his own free will**. — 2. They were no janissaries, but free-born Englishmen, who had, **of their own accord**, put their lives in jeopardy for the liberties and religion of England. — 3. The duchess of Ha-

milton, of her own right, resigned her claim. — 4. Not that I know, of my own knowledge, what there is particularly dead about a door-nail. — 5. The City rather seemed to spring up about them and encompass them of its own act. — 6. Not of set purpose, but from considerate instinct. — 7. Not of design, but of necessity. — 8. It was further Mr. Bentham's particular desire that I should, from myself, endeavour to supply any *lacune* which he had left.

Die Zeit erscheint als Veranlassung zu einer Tätigkeit:

of recent years, of late, of yore, of old.

9. The old stories are well enough when told by firelight in the nursery after tea of a winter's evening. — 10. Theatrical managers have been accustomed to sleep so easily of nights on the comfortable bosom of the Censorship that they are not in the least likely to alter their habits. — 11. Ellen Key's career as an author began comparatively late in life: it is only of recent years that she has devoted all her energies to the complete exposition of her scheme of ideas.

II. Funktionell — Kasusersatz.

Als "*the French preposition in a Saxon mask*" hat of eine rein grammatische Verwendung gefunden. Die begriffliche Bedeutung tritt mehr oder weniger zurück hinter die funktionelle. Wenn die nächstliegenden Fragen

Wer? — Was? — Woher? — Wohin?

wie in andern Sprachen als besondere „Fälle“ betrachtet werden, so ist of die Form für den Woher?-Fall, wie to für den Wohin?-Fall. Es ist genitivisch in dem Sinn, daß es ein ausreichendes Komplement ist, um die Beziehung zwischen (ergänzungsbedürftigen) Substantiven, Adjektiven, Verben und ihren Objekten ganz allgemein anzugeben oder nur anzudeuten.

Bem. Es handelt sich also lediglich um die rein grammatische Betrachtung von of. Die Einteilung wird durch praktische Rücksichten bestimmt.

a) of als Komplement von Substantiven.

α) Subjektsverhältnis.

Bem. Über die Konkurrenz des Sächsischen Genitivs s. S. 47.

1. The voice is Jacob's voice, but the hands are the hands of Esau.

Statt der adjektivischen Possessiva treten häufig die substantivischen Personalia mit of ein:

2. Largely speaking, Wordsworth believed within his poetic self that Nature was alive in every vein of her. — 3. To make "sober history" no less living than the history of Shakespeare and Scott—that is a feat compassed by but one man who writes the English tongue. And the name of him is Carlyle. — 4. Not for the life of me! — 5. Last night when the ladies were crying, we could not for the souls of us help laughing. — 6. We conceive W. Penn as sturdy and well built. In the portrait of him as a young man, there is nothing austere in his countenance. Vgl. Pron. Poss. — 7. The persecution of the Puritans drove them to Massachusetts. — The Quakers

of New-England suffered from the persecution of the **Paritans**: Erst sind die P. die Verfolgten, dann die Verfolger.

Zur Vermeidung der Zweideutigkeit dient **on the part of**:

8. The principles of the English Constitution do not contemplate the absence of personal influence **on the part of** the Sovereign.

β) Attributsverhältnis.

Auch hier konkurriert der Sächsische Genitiv, der, falls er überhaupt formal zulässig ist, mehr dem attributivischen Adjektiv entspricht.

In *the soul's agony* und *the agony of soul* liegt eine attributivische Beziehung vor, in *the agony of the soul* Subjektsbeziehung.

1. As for the principal personage in the conversation his (the King's) published correspondence has made us aware that **the English of the King** (George III.) varied widely at times from **the King's English**. — 2. A **poet's poet** Browning has been called. But if a **poet's poet**, then how **much of a poet**!

Ist das Verhältnis appositionell, so dient **of** zur Unterscheidung von Art und Gattung und ist fast ausschließlich im Gebrauch bei geographischen Gattungsnamen:

The Isle of Man; the Kingdom of Prussia; the university of Oxford.

Nur **cape, lake, river, mount** und **county** als irische Grafschaft stehen ohne **of**.

Month steht mit, **year** meist ohne **of**.

Name, term, title, word u. ä. erfordern **of**, wenn auf den (bedeutsamen!) Inhalt der Bezeichnung hingewiesen wird. Näheres s. Satzsyntax, Attribut, wo weitere Beispiele.

3. The **term 'Judaism'** did not pass through the same transitions as did the **name 'Jew'**. — 4. The **name of Jesuit** on a title-page secured the circulation of a book. — 5. The **Latin word** *res* had about two hundred different meanings . . . similarly the **word philosophy** has many different meanings. — The **word of Liberty**. — 6. . . whilst we still see the **legend** "maker of philosophical instruments" upon front-shops.

Ähnlich ist das Verhältnis in:

In his last **stronghold of** Trichinopoly. — He left her **prison of** Hatfield.

In andern Fällen wechselt **of** mit **as**:

The **post of (as)** tutor; the **position of (as)** Leader of the Opposition u. ä.

7. In his **character of** wit Frederick II. was under less restraint than **even in his character of** ruler.

Rein funktionell endlich erscheint dieses **of** in:

Clive, an idle dare-devil **of a boy**. — Who but a **fool of a monster** could imagine? — Joseph II., that philosopher-prig **of an Emperor**.

8. How comes such a corrupt **monstrosity of a carcass** (as Russia) to be master of half the world? — 9. German schoolmasters wonder **what devil of self-will** possesses their English pupils, as we wonder at the meekness of the Prussian people.

γ) Objektverhältnis.

God's love of man. — Ruskin's praise of Carlyle.

Bem. *Love* und *praise* gehen auf die transitiven Verba zurück. Die *s*-Formen stehen für den Subjekts-, die *of*-Formen für den Objektskasus.

1. In these productions he may have seen expressed an enthusiastic love of liberty, — a detestation of tyranny, — an ardent abhorrence of all wicked ambition. — 2. You must bear it (the name of Slanderer) with you to the grave, and the remembrance of it will outlast your epitaph.

Aber nicht alle „transitiven“ Substantiva werden so gebraucht. Of ermöglicht Verwechslung mit dem Subjektskasus, und der Objektskasus verlangt oft eine schärfere Fassung:

3. It is in the "Serious Call", whatever exception may be taken to the title for its resemblance to a sermon, that the limpid Eighteenth Century style is to be studied at its best. — 4. In resistance of confiscation, robbery, burglary and the rest of it, he would do all that might become a man. — Both India and Italy were divided among a number of states, and so were weak in resistance to the foreigner.

Bem. So schwanken z. B. *obedience of* und *to*, während in:

5. The purpose of the writer has been to give the general public a clear insight of the reputed mystery and true inwardness of Wall Street affairs — nur ein transitiver Begriff vorschwebt.

Zu vergleichen sind auch:

6. One profound master sentiment with Mill was professional hatred for either coarse or subtle abuse of power. Hatred of oppression in all its forms burned deep in his inmost being. — 7. He stuck to his hatred of Roman Catholics. — He preserved his hatred to Roman Catholics. — (Er hielt an seinem Katholikenhaß fest; er bewahrte seinen Haß gegenüber den Katholiken.) — 8. All criticism of and appreciation for poetry ultimately comes to a question of personal opinion.

b) of als Komplement von Adjektiven und Partizipien.

Of leitet die Objektsergänzung ein nicht nur bei dauernden (absoluten) Eigenschaften, sondern auch bei vorübergehenden (relativen); bei jenen handelt es sich um eine (entbehrliche) Beschränkung, bei diesen um eine mehr oder weniger notwendige Vollständigkeit des Adjektivbegriffes.

Die „relativen“ Adjektiva entsprechen meist einem 1. Partizipium; wo dieses selbst gewählt wird, kann ein Schwanken in bezug auf *of* eintreten.

Bem. Bestimmte — meist romanische — Endungen werden mit Vorliebe dem entsprechenden Partizipium vorgezogen: eine Folge der Neigung, die Verbalformen aufzulösen oder begrifflich hervorzuheben.

α) Adjektiva:

1. What Mr. Craik here says of Shakespeare, is true of Milton; perhaps it is even truer of Milton. — 2. We are glad also to hear that the peacemakers are actively at work on the Education question, and that Mr. As-

quith is **sanguine of** their success. — 3. To be **choice of** one's time, company; — to be **deaf of**, **hard of**, **empty of** u. ä. — 4. Old friends are **sceptical of** change, and it takes time for them to appreciate alterations which are undoubtedly for the better. — 5. It may be said that it is rare to find one so **perceptive of** the most delicate and subtle shades of temperament. (as W. Pater). — 6. There is a letter . . . so **illustrative of** his character and so **reminiscent**, too, of the young University man that we cannot help quoting a part of it. — 7. Cambridge is more **prolific of** comic verse than Oxford. — 8. Lecky was **typical**, indeed, in many ways of the hard-headed, clear-visioned Lowlander; Blackie was only **typical of** himself. — 9. It is **characteristic of** the conservative temper to be very **tenacious of** established usage, and not very **tolerant of** assaults made on it in supposed deference to mere logic and so-called principle. — 10. Though the position of the rifleman was rendered **impossible of** detection by smoke, yet it was **feasible of** determination by sound. — 11. Brimful of glee; reckless of sthg. — 12. An Eton jacket is a harmless-looking garment, **innocent even of** skirts.

β) Partizipia.

Partizipia der Gegenwart können zugleich als (relative) Adjektiva gebraucht werden, also mit **of**; das Adjektiv steht — nominal — für die Eigenschaft, das Partizipium für Handlung oder einmaligen Vorgang.

Der Unterschied ist nicht immer von Belang.

1. Hutton quotes several pieces of verse which he calls lyric, but, so far as we can see, he does not bring forward a single couplet **deserving of** the word. — 2. But the preface which Mr. Bodley has written since the French elections contains one or two propositions **deserving some consideration**. — Whoever encourages this kind of reading is **deserving of** the fullest gratitude. — 3. The House has not been **sparing of itself** in discussing both the principles and the details. — 4. It is slander to say that present-day critics are **grudging of** praise. — 5. So **promising of** a final solution. — 6. The young girl who *knows* judges man with more severity, and is **far more exacting of** her own happiness.

Bem. **Worthy** kann die Ergänzung direkt — ohne **of** — anschließen: **worth** (nur prädik.) schließt sie stets direkt an:

7. The workman is **worthy of** his meat. — 8. He is **worth** 5000 pounds. („hat ein Vermögen von“). — 9. Is this **worthy of** that high spirit of which you boasted? is this **worthy a** generous anger, or a noble hatred?

Die Stellung

des unter II, a) und b) behandelten **of** richtet sich nach den allgemeinen Gesetzen der Wortfolge, sodaß **of** + Objekt oft von dem regierenden Wort getrennt werden muß:

1. The Chairman illustrated from his own experience the ludicrous **effect on foreigners of** our British pronunciation. — 2. Are Germans, with all their activities and scientific thoroughness, and so alive to the difficulty of finding room in the world for the additional **million every year of** Germans, quietly to adopt . . . ? — 3. The constraint imposed upon the family by the **presence among them for the first time of** Mary Graham did not at all improve this state of things. — 4. His mouth was **expressive at that time and possibly at all times of** the most delicate and subtle shades of temperament. — 5. Hen-

ry VIII. was pitiless in cruelty, ungrateful to those who served him best, and prodigal to madness of his revenues.

c) of als Komplement von Verben.

a) Sagen und Denken.

Wird das Objekt indirekt eingeführt, so konkurrieren **about** und **on** mit **of**.

Of (unbetont) drückt die allgemeine Veranlassung der geistigen Tätigkeit aus; **about** stellt letztere als breiter und vielseitiger hin; **on** geht auf ihren Inhalt und läßt eine systematische Erörterung erwarten (vgl. *about* und *on*).

Manche der Verba schließen wegen ihrer Bedeutung ein Schwanken aus:

1. It was, he said, a chaos, such as he had **read of** in the book of Genesis. — 2. "What the boys learn *in* school is nothing to what they learn *out*" is positively **pronounced of** the Public Schools as a panegyric when it ought to be whispered as a solecism in shame. — 3. But this does not **hold of** the strangely incongruous figure of Hecate. („ist nicht richtig“, „trifft nicht zu“.) — 4. The conjunction clause is . . . so far a noun that things can be predicated of it. — 5. Judge of individuals from your own knowledge of them, and not from their sex, profession, or denomination. — 6. It shall not be **said of** Mr. Tree that he neglected current literature as was **whispered of** a distinguished contemporary.

Bei einer kleinen Gruppe transitiver Verba kann das Sachobjekt auch mit **of** eingeführt werden, ohne daß ein wesentlicher Bedeutungsunterschied hervortritt. Es sind

to accept	to allow	to conceive	to disapprove
to admit	to approve	to consider	to permit.

To repent hat meistens **of**, während **to boast sthg.** der Bedeutung nach **von to boast of** (about) wesentlich abweicht.

7. He **boasted no** greatcoat. — 8. The wisest man does not **boast of** such an uncle; the least distinguished can find something better to **boast about**. — 9. More often the hand-to-hand nature of the fighting **allowed of** miraculous escapes which were worth telegraphing home at eighteenpence the word. — 10. The arbitration fiasco, to which we called attention yesterday, is too flagrant **to admit of** concealment. — 11. When we lose Mr. Ruskin and Mr. Herbert Spencer—as, in the course of things, we must expect to do—whom can we **conceive of** as taking their place? — 12. Twice he was asked if he **repented of** his treason. — 13. Our recollections are unfortunately mingled with many actions **which we bitterly repent**. — 14. Pendennis's fortune . . . did not . . . **permit of** his living with the great folks of the county.

ß) Benachrichtigen, Erinnern, Versichern u. ä.

1. The object of the expedition was kept as secret as possible, but Philip had been **warned of** its probable destination. — To **warn from** (against) = „warnen“. — 2. He moved every day among noble buildings, pregnant with historical and personal associations—and he did not care to **inform himself of** them. — 3. When the time came for supper, **of which** we were advertised by a knocking overhead, Colonel Esmond and the two ladies went to the

upper apartment. — 4. The right honourable gentleman (Gladstone) can **persuade** most men of most things: he can persuade himself of anything. (Speech.) — 5. He determined **never** to be reminded of her.

γ) Gerichtssprache:

1. Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman is more than **suspected** of being an excellent critic, especially of current fiction. — 2. The evidence which has been brought before us has **convinced** us of the extreme gravity of the agricultural situation. — 3. The report acquits the officers of corruption but **convicts** them of stupidity and ineptitude. — 4. I was **convicted**, on the evidence of paid witnesses, of inciting to rebellion. — 5. He **accused** the ministers of having betrayed the Dutch. — 6. The English were **justified** of their national pride. (waren berechtigt zu.)

δ) Sinneseindrücke:

1. The letters **breathe** of the most complete austerity, order, and self-control. — 2. The bad grammar, often put into the sovereign's mouth, **smacks** of high treason. — 3. Slang surely, as it is called, comes of and **breathes** of the personal. — 4. I have rejected every thing that **savours** of party.

Off

ist das lautlich und begrifflich prägnantere of in seiner ursprünglichen Bedeutung des Herkommens, die sich zu der des Fortseins entwickelt — örtlich und figürlich:

1. Go **off** the red. (Auf den roten Ball spielen.) — 2. This work is offered at a reduction of 40 per cent. **off** the published price. — 3. **Off** Dover. (Dover ist in Sicht.) — 4. To be **off** duty; to have a thing **off** one's mind. — 5. In 1895 England began to **warn** other powers **off** the Nile Valley. (= away from.)

On (upon)

leitet ein Objekt ein, als Grundlage, auf der sich etwas befindet oder fortbewegt oder auf die etwas zu gelangen sucht. Wird die Grundlage nur erstrebt, so kann sie zum Ziel werden; ist sie bereits vorhanden oder erreicht, so kann sie für Zustände wie Handlungen den Stützpunkt, Ausgangspunkt, Beweggrund abgeben. Nähe oder Berührung kommen erst in zweiter Linie in Betracht.

On berührt sich mit **at**, **about**, **in**, **of** und **to**. Es ist die vielseitigste Präposition, deren Grundbedeutung nur wenige Hauptgruppen erkennen läßt und phraseologisch ein großes Gebiet umfaßt. Keine andere Präposition erfordert so mannigfache Übersetzungen.

Wo **upon** nicht aus rhythmisch-stilistischen Gründen vorgezogen wird (wie *around* statt *round*, *until* statt *till*), ist es feierlich oder literarisch.

Die Grundlage ist leitender Gesichtspunkt im eigentlichen und uneigentlichen Sinne.

a) Im allgemeinen.

α) Die Grundlage ist gegeben — Ruhe:

1. Mr. Tupman lay prostrate **on** the ground. — 2. Pleasure is the rock most people split **upon**. — 3. The sun rose **on** an animated debate. — 4. A few companies lay in garrison at Tilbury Fort, at Portsmouth and at some other important stations **on** or **near** the coast. — 5. To serve, to be **on** the staff of a newspaper, **on** a committee. — To lean **on** a crutch; to rest **on** one's oars. — Bounties **on** sugar; interest (paid) **on** capital. — 6. **On** the brink, brim, verge of sthg.; **on** the bank, shore, border, frontier; — Newcastle-on-Tyne. — 7. When the King of Sennaar sneezes, his courtiers immediately turn their backs **on** him and give a loud slap **on** their right thigh.

β) Die Grundlage wird erstrebt — Bewegung:

1. To wait, attend, call, **on** u. ä. — 2. It was an habitation **abutting upon** a dirty lane. — 3. These three rooms **opened upon** one another. — 4. Fortune **smiled on** him. — 5. The idiot **stares on** those around with a vacant look.

b) In besonderen Fällen.

α) Grundlage der Existenz:

1. The writing of a synthetic philosophy **is** not "useful" — not even to Spencer himself, who did not make a penny profit **on** his books until he was over fifty. — 2. Sydney Smith being ill, his physician advised him to "take a walk **upon** an empty stomach". "*Upon whose?*" said he. — 3. An age which **subsists** so largely **on** telegrams cannot fail to have come to the conclusion that brevity is a main constituent of literary charm. — 4. The English gentleman **trades on** his reputation. (Meredith.) — 5. The people of these islands still **subsist** largely **by** and **upon** their own manufactures. — 6. And indeed it is **well** known that his (Prince John's) death was occasioned **by** a **surfeit upon** peaches and new ale.

β) **on** bezeichnet „gestützt auf“, „auf Grund von“, „auf — hin“:

αα) 1. **On** the plea of illness; — to examine **on** (under) oath. — 2. He was killed **on** a mere suspicion. — 3. We could quote many small poems which **on** less than half its simplicity and grace have been accepted for classics. — 4. **On** second thoughts. — 5. Domesticated Russia is not, **on her own showing**, very interesting. — 6. Ireland is to be governed **on** Irish ideas. — 7. The butcher had a sentiment for his business and knew how to refine **upon** it. — 8. The Tells flourished **on** the Gesslers, and so did the Switzers. — 9. To act **on** system, **on** conviction, **on** principle.

ββ) Einsatz, Pfand:

1. **On** my honour. — 2. Every man who heads a rebellion against an established government, **stakes** his life **on** the event.

γγ) Zeitliche Grundlage,

als Veranlassung zu einer Tätigkeit und auf die Folgen eines Ereignisses vorbereitend:

1. The Ghost, **on hearing** this, set up another cry. — 2. **On opening** the chest, it was found empty. — 3. Yell'd **on the view** the opening pack. — 4. He slept **upon** this disappointment pretty comfortably. — 5. The pupil

spends hour **upon** hour through year **upon** year in translating into the classical languages the thoughts of other people – selected, not for their intrinsic value, but for their comparative ease or difficulty of translation.

γ) **on** im feindlichen Sinn:

1. The Germans are **upon** us! But it is a peaceful, a harmless invasion, one that for the little that it is worth may be of some trifling assistance to us. — 2. Petitions from the regiments demanded: **Justice on** the King. — 3. That the sacerdotal order should **encroach on** the functions of the civil magistrate, would, in our time, be a great evil. — 4. To see him and not to spare him was an **outrage on** humanity and decency. — 5. On a sudden, the aboriginal population **rose on** the colonists. — 6. **On** the chief ministers of the crown the vengeance of the nation was unsparingly **wreaked**. — 7. Out **upon!** Fie **on!** Pest **on!** Plague **on!** — 8. The vices of Charles had **grown upon** him. Vgl. *b, a*. — 9. He that would obtrude his thoughts and reasons **upon** a multitude, will convince others the more as he is convinced himself. — 10. The interest which his (Byron's) first confessions excited induced him to affect much that he did not feel; and the affectation **reacted on** his feelings.

δ) **on** bezeichnet im weitesten Umfange Grundlage, Inhalt, Thema einer geistigen Tätigkeit:

1. Almost every historian of England has **expatiated on** the power and splendour of her foreign masters. — 2. **On** all this the good lady was **very copious**. — 3. **Pondering on** what the Ghost had said, Scrooge did so now. — 4. The misfortunes of the great are **enlarged upon** in tones of declamation. — 5. The committee were **divided on** that question. — 6. The opponents of Hastings had a small superiority **on the division**. — 7. We feel alike **on** most matters. — 8. He voted against us **on** the Barbadoes Bill. — 9. He is an **authority on** paintings. — 10. To **differ on** a point of etiquette. — 11. Whoever is a master of language, and has a mind full of ideas, will be apt, in speaking, to **hesitate upon** the choice of both.

onto — on to.

Die Schreibweise schwankt. Im allgemeinen wird die Schreibweise **on to** auch da beliebt, wo **onto**, wie **into**, zur selbständigen Präposition geworden oder als solche aufzufassen ist:

1. He does not **go on to** the Continent to see mountains, or churches, or pictures; he goes to see men and to observe the constitution of States. — 2. To **jump on to** the landing place. — 3. Secondary education had **got on to** wrong lines. — 4. The diamonds were about as large as penwipers, and were plastered round her neck and pinned **onto** the shoulders. — 5. This window commands the nearest outlook **onto** the moor. — 6. Will it be **on to** Petrograd? (Geht's auf P.) — 7. Scott was hanging **on to** the end of the rope, and Evans was hanging **on above** him, and they were four or five yards from the surface. — 8. That power of habit thrust him **up on to** the plane of the heroic, and he never knew that he got there.

Opposite

wird wie *like* und *near* als Adverb oder Präposition verwendet; darnach richtet sich der Gebrauch oder der Fortfall von *to*, doch ohne scharfe Abgrenzung:

1. He gazed at the vacant chair **opposite** him. — 2. He lingered **opposite** the Temple gate. — 3. L. was sitting **opposite** to him.

Out of.

Wenn auch **out of** nur die Bedeutung von **of** genauer bestimmt, kann es doch — vgl. **in to** (into); **up on** (upon); **on to** (onto) — begrifflich als selbständige Präposition gelten, welche im eigentlichen wie übertragenen Sinn die Bewegung aus dem Inneren heraus, aber auch das endgültige Verbleiben in dem erreichten Zustand ausdrückt:

1. If sheep breeds have changed **out of** all recognition, the essential animal is still there. — 2. What of emotion, what of love, hope, apprehension, faith, regret, is not utterable **in** verse, is not utterable **out of** verse. — 3. You may not agree with Coleridge; but often you can hardly discuss Shakespeare **out of** him. — **Out of** sight, **out of** mind. — Love, **in** and **out of**. (Überschrift.) — **Out of** charity, sheer love. — **Out of** doors (out-door games). — **Out of** date, season.

Outside (of)

stellt die durch **out of** begonnene Bewegung dar, deren Ende oder Ziel erreicht ist oder als erreicht gedacht wird. Der Zusatz von **of** ist weniger gebräuchlich. Vgl. *side*.

1. The inattention habitual with Englishmen to whatever is going on in the world **outside** their own island, made them profoundly ignorant of the struggle. (about slavery.) — 2. Even on his birthday the only person **outside** Ibsen's own family who was permitted to congratulate him personally was Bjoernson. — 3. Kant was never **outside** his native province for a single day, and only for a few early years **outside** the walls of his native city, Königsberg. — 4. **Outside of** his own family no one will speak to him.

Over

drückt „Höhersein“ (mit Berührung) aus, „Verbreitung über“, „Hinausgehen über“, daher beherrschend, niederdrückend, beschützend, übersehend, bearbeitend, überdenkend — für Ruhe und Bewegung:

1. **O'er** the hills and far away. — 2. Our King "**over** the water"! (Toast der Anhänger der Stuarts.) — 3. He had been **over** the premises. — 4. Carlyle's misery **over** noise, his sensitiveness to unpleasant surroundings of all kinds gave him the tortures of a Heine. — 5. To adjourn („vertagen“) **over** Ascot Day. — 6. **Over** Swinburne we feel restless; we smoke Egyptian cigarettes and drink champagne: **over** Goldsmith we feel cosy . . . — 7. Grenville's one aim was to enforce the supremacy of Parliament **over** subject as **over** King. — 8. And when the long-projected tunnel between England and the Continent is built, we shall be able to go either **under** the sea or **over** the sea, for nobody will ever go **on** the sea. — 9. Bret Harte's literary production was astonishingly steady. **Over** forty volumes stand to his credit, some of which, however, were somewhat slender.

Past

bezeichnet räumlich, zeitlich und figürlich das, was vorüber, vergangen oder in der Zukunft nicht eintretend gedacht ist:

1. The members filed **past** the Speaker. (an — vorbei.) — 2. We **were** all told that Mr. Chaplin had become a negligible factor in the warfare of party politics, he was **past** the purposes of attack. — 3. As always happens, the evil that such abuse did was twofold, extending **past** the man to his work. — 4. Half **past** five (o'clock); **past** cure, hope, mending.

Pending

ist nur Präposition und bedeutet „während“ in der Gerichtssprache bei „schwebenden“ Verfahren, auch „in Erwartung von“:

1. Mr. Lincoln was arrested . . . and was placed in . . . Gaol **pending** extradition proceedings. — 2. **Pending** Mr. Swinburne's convalescence, his publishers are forced to postpone the issue of his new volume of poems. — 3. He would have made him an assistant private Secretary, **pending** a Government appointment, rather than let me plead in vain.

Plus

wird nicht nur rechnerisch gebraucht:

Everybody now probably agrees that the world is made up of our sensations **plus** our way of dealing with them.

Round (around)

steht für kreisähnliche Umschließung in derselben Ebene (vgl. *about*), auch bildlich und wenn es sich um den Gegenstand einer Besprechung handelt:

1. We can change our position in space with the utmost ease, move **about** the room, **across** the city, **around** the world. — 2. Curiously enough, in spite of the many volumes that have been written **round** the Court of St. Germain's, this is the first full biography of our one Italian Queen Consort. — 3. The accretions of time bring **round** a word many reputable meanings, of which the oldest is like to be deepest in grain. — 4. The book especially excels in its treatment of the earlier English novelists, who first felt the impulse to create stories **round** the men and women of ordinary life.

Save (saving)

ist als Präposition nicht (mehr) auf den literarischen Stil beschränkt; es ist gleichbedeutend mit **except** und **but** und schränkt **all**, **every**, **no**, **any** oder einen Superlativ ein:

1. George III. had a smaller mind than any English King before him **save** James II. — 2. Free thought and dissent have not unlocked the doors guarded by St. Peter. The ballot has not opened any gate **save** the flood-gate of talk. — 3. The writer of "Vanity Fair," "Pendennis," and "The New-comers" was the first pessimist, **save** Swift, in English prose fiction. — 4. "Let all leave the room **save** Stanley and this good fellow," said the Earl. "And **saving** me also," said Tressilian. "I too am deeply interested in the effects of this potion."

(Side.)

Nicht selbst eine Präposition, bildet es ein wesentliches Element bei der Bildung von

beside, inside und outside.

Während aber **beside** zur echten Präposition (ohne *of*) geworden ist, schwankt der Gebrauch bei **inside** und **outside** und einigen mit **side** gebildeten Ausdrücken. — Vgl. *inside* und *outside*.

1. We assume that wherever, **inside** or **outside** of Europe, there is a country which has a name, there must be a nationality answering to it. — 2. I love George Borrow, admiring him **this side of** idolatry. (fast bis.) — 3. She had grown up with it, and as it was beyond doubt, so was it **outside** discussion. — 4. Pater was **outside** the world and not of it. — 5. **Both sides** (of) the frontier. — **Either side** (of) the river. — 6. **Inside of** a week I had read the book twice. — 7. "Character, character is what he has." So writes (of R. L. St.) Mr. Henry James, who knows as much about character as a man may hope to know **this side** the grave. — 8. And we have open'd regular access to the troops stationed on **the other side** Euphrates, who may still be true. (Byron.)

Since

nur zeitlich, rechnet die Zeit von einem vergangenen Punkte an, faßt aber im Gegensatz zu **from** mehr den Verlauf und die Zeitdauer ins Auge als den Ausgangspunkt:

1. The world has travelled an astonishingly little way **since** Henry VII. except that men no longer have their right hands struck off. — 2. Heine seems at present to be in a fair way for having his first turn **since** the time when he seemed to be relegated to the unconsidered dead and done with.

Es wird nicht immer scharf unterschieden, ob die Zeitperiode von ihrem Anfang oder ihrem Ende an gemeint ist. So kann **since** gleichbedeutend sein mit **after**:

3. Scotland. had, **from** the time of Robert Bruce, been a separate Kingdom . . . Ireland had never, **since** the days of Henry the Second, been able to expel the foreign invaders. — 4. **Since** those great exploits near twenty years had elapsed. — 5. **Since** the death of George II. a rapid succession of weak administrations . . . had held the semblance of power. — 6. **Never** before that time or **since** that time was the civil power in our country subjected to military dictation. — 7. It has come down in your family **from since** the fourth century B. C.

(Than)

wird vor Substantiven ebenso wie **like**, **except**, **but** als Präposition empfunden. Vgl. Satzsyntax, Objekt.

1. He who was life's last link in the whole rich chain of creation, he must of necessity be able, in a manner yet more perfect **than them all**, to express the emotions of his soul. So came to man the gift of music. — 2. They heard only two of the speeches made. One of these was delivered by Lord Rosebery, **than whom** there is no more attractive orator in the ranks of our public men.

Through

bezeichnet für Raum wie Zeit das Hindurchgehen von einem Ende bis zum andern, dann, besonders in Verbindung mit **out**,

die Durchdringung eines Raumes, Verbreitung nach allen Seiten innerhalb desselben. Bei Übertragung auf Personen erscheinen diese mit **through** als Mittelspersonen oder Vermittler. Endlich kündigt **through** bei abstrakten Begriffen die unmittelbar wirksame Veranlassung einer Handlung an:

1. **Through** gloomy vaults where the light of day had never shone, . . . Defarge . . . went with all the speed they could make. — 2. Clive had recently remitted a great part of his fortune **through** the Dutch Company. — 3. There are, we think, some characters and scenes in the Pilgrim's Progress, which can be enjoyed only by persons familiar with the history of the times **through** which Bunyan lived. — 4. There are people incapable, **through** no fault of their own, **through** misfortune, **through** unhappy accidents, **through** unhappy surroundings from youth upwards which have rendered them little capable of help. (Speech.) — 5. My father is suffering himself **through** this wretched strike. — 6. **Through** very love of self himself he slew. — 7. I could hardly find the door, **through** the tears that stood in my eyes.

Throughout (s. *through*).

1. There is a general spirit of revolt against all constituted authority **throughout** Europe. — 2. But however much Carlyle differed and disagreed with the two men, he served **throughout** the craftsmanship of his days as a sturdy friend to them both.

Till — until

werden ausschließlich für die Zeit gebraucht und betonen, im Gegensatz zu **to**, die Dauer der Zeit stärker als deren Ziel.

From — **till** stellt (auch örtlich) den äußeren Rahmen dar, **from** — **till** weckt die Vorstellung von dem Verlauf eines Abschnittes selbst, von Schwierigkeiten, die das Erreichen des Zieles erschweren könnten oder erschwert haben.

1. It is interesting to note that the right of printing Bibles in England remains **until** this day with the King's printers, shared only with the Oxford and Cambridge Press. — 2. The first sonnet that broke the monotony of eighteenth century literature was the creation of a poet quite unknown to his contemporaries, nor did it see the light **till** after its author's death.

To.

I. Begrifflich.

To bezeichnet im eigentlichen Sinn die Bewegung oder das Gerichtetsein auf einen Gegenstand, der entweder wirklich als Ziel erstrebt wird (Bewegung) oder als Ziel nur vorschwebt (Ruhe).

Es bezeichnet dann die Art des Verhältnisses zwischen Bewegung und Ziel; das Ziel kann selbst in Bewegung sein oder in Bewegung gedacht werden.

Übertragen wird die Bewegung zum Streben nach Gemeinschaft, nach Anpassung; die Bewegung schließt ein Vergleichen ein, während das Ziel als Abschluß oder Endpunkt, als Zweck oder Bestimmung aufgefaßt wird.

a) Bewegung nach dem Ziele hin, wirklich oder nur gedacht:

To the rescue! — To Hell or to Connaught! — Come to my tent to-night. — Hetty had not been to Snowfield. — Now to horse!

A door opens to a room. — Regions lying to the north of the Trent. — Scrooge held on tight to his chair. — To point to sthg.

Nach Verben, die an sich eine Zielbestimmung enthalten, wie Hinneigen, Gewöhnen:

To take to gambling; to be used, accustomed to; to lean to u. a.; to add to (vermehrten).

b) Das Ziel erscheint als Abschluß, als Endpunkt — „bis auf — bis zu“:

1. Strip nature naked to the skin. — 2. It is trifling to tell us that Dr. Johnson was accustomed to cut his nails to the quick. — 3. Kent stood out to a man. — 4. We are not a saint ourselves, but we have grace enough to know that the Saints to a Saint will answer Mr. Manning Foster in the negative. — 5. But apart altogether from these distinguished authors one is becoming familiar to the fatigue point with the writings of young English gentlemen who wish to explain America to the world because they have purchased a return ticket on an ocean liner. — 6. "You're particular—for a shade." He was going to say "to a shade." (= to a nicety: „pedantisch genau“.) — 7. He was like a commercial traveller, Bourgeois to his boots. — 8. An Englishman to the backbone. — 9. De Morgan was modest to a fault. — 10. To investigate to the full; to amount to; to fit to a T.; to show to (a) demonstration; to succeed to a miracle, to perfection; to some extent, to (in) some degree.

Zeitlich (vgl. *till*):

11. I do not know to the present moment whether he is aware that I was even conscious of his action. — 12. To live to eighty, to a great age.

c) Die Bewegung ist ein Streben nach Anpassung, Gemäßheit, Harmonie — „nach, entsprechend, gemäß“:

1. We cook the dish to our own appetite. — 2. To all outer seeming Charles II. was the most consummate of idlers. — 3. Its work was, if we may use a somewhat homely expression, done to time. — 4. The recent general election has, to all intents and purposes, returned the Laurier Government (Canada) to office with no reduction of its strength. (practically.) — 5. The badness of the poems of a poet laureate is generally ascribed to the circumstance that they are written to order. — 6. The reed whistles to the wind. — 7. The rich hangings shook to the night blast. — 8. To sing to the harpsichord; to speak to tunes. — To act to the life. — 9. To rise to a position, an emergency, the occasion.

d) Streben nach Vereinigung — werdende Gemeinschaft — „an, mit“:

1. The death of Elizabeth knit Scotland to its ancient enemy by the tie of a common King. — 2. Scotland was at length united to England.

e) Ein Vergleichen — „gegenüber, in den Augen, im Vergleich zu“ — meist bei Personen:

1. They, **to him**, are angels. — 2. The flag officer is **to the** rest of the fleet what the Vice-Chancellor is **to the** University, the Headmaster **to** Eton or Winchester, or the Portland Club **to the** devotees of Bridge. — 3. He gave himself airs **to the** Clavering folks. — 4. Mrs. Carlyle mocked at her husband **to** Froude. That is significant. Had she ever really loved him, it is not credible she could have mocked at him **to** Froude, though she hissed with mockery **to the** man himself. — 5. The war with Spain means **to** common Englishmen a war with Catholicism. — 6. I wish **to** God; **to** think, laugh **to** oneself. — 7. The old Trojans were fools **to your** father. — 8. There is no devil **to the** hypocrite. (Der Heuchler ist der größte Teufel.) — 9. Five **to** one. — My horse **to** yours!

as to.

Die Verbindung von **as** mit **to** ist so gewöhnlich, daß **as to** als eine besondere Schattierung von **to** erscheint. **To** wird in seiner eigentlichen Bedeutung entschiedener auf das beschränkt, worauf das Reden oder Handeln gerichtet ist:

1. If we are right **as to** the cause of these abuses, we can scarcely be wrong **as to** the remedy. — 2. Dull and petty **as** George III.'s temper was, he was clear **as to** his purpose and obstinate in the pursuit of it.

II. Funktionell — Kasusersatz.

Das S. 157 über funktionelles **of** Gesagte gilt für **to** in dem Sinne, daß es in seiner Grundbedeutung am geeignetsten ist, als formaler Ersatz eines „Dativs“ zu dienen. In diesem Falle ist es unbetont, kann sogar ganz wegfallen.

Als Objektsbezeichnung verlangt es eine besondere Behandlung in der Satzsyntax, als verbaler Bestandteil beim Infinitiv.

Towards.

In seiner festen Verbindung mit **wards** bezeichnet **to die** Richtung weniger bestimmt — eigentlich und uneigentlich:

1. I knew him for a sluggard in the morning; but **as it drew on towards noon**, I lost my patience. — 2. I propose to relate a few of the changes that take place in the human body in the course of its growth **towards** maturity. — 3. Fine clothes do not make a man, but they go some way **towards** making a gentleman. — 4. Contributions **towards** the Church fund.

Under

ist „tiefer als“ im Sinne des Bedecktseins, entspricht also örtlich wie zeitlich dem **over**; übertragen bezeichnet es „beeinflusst werden, unter dem Druck stehen, an Rang zurückstehen“:

1. The object **under** discussion; a building erected **under** an Act of Parliament. — To be **under** an impression; to whisper **under** one's voice. — **Under** (in) the most favourable circumstances; **under** (in) the reign, government. — 2. The people of the rich countries which lay **under** the Pyrenees lived in habits of courteous and profitable intercourse with the Moorish Kingdoms of Spain. — 3. That the King was, **under** Christ, sole head of the Church, was a doctrine which they all with one voice affirmed. (= nächst Chr.) —

4. **Under** Bute's ministry an office was opened at the Treasury for the purchase of members. — 5. **Under** the old custom a belligerent has the right to make his own list of contraband, and may even declare food-supplies to be absolute contraband. — 6. The Chancellor spoke for just **under an hour and a half**, so that, as Budget speeches go, it was quite a brief utterance. — 7. Pray let us be friends, I couldn't live **under** coldness or unkindness.

Underneath

ist gleichbedeutend mit **beneath**, aber nur räumlich:

1. He likes to keep on the shady side, **underneath** the trees. — 2. One scull was deep down **underneath** the water.

Unto

= **to** ist gewählt, vorwiegend biblisch, in der gewöhnlichen Sprache oft scherzhaft; kann jedoch auch aus rhythmischen Gründen für **to** stehen:

1. Fortunately, Browning was a law **unto** himself in these matters. — 2. Not **unto** us, but **unto** Him be the glory. (Bible.)

Up

s. **down**; wie dieses nur örtlich, wortbildend in *uphill*, *downhill*.

1. **Up**, **down** Channel; **up** the sleeve; **up and down** the street. — 2. The restaurant is generally approached **down an alley**, or has some other means of entrance which makes no advertisement of itself. — 3. The view **up, down** and across the river is one of the finest rewards that this grim city can provide for those who wander from her main thoroughfares. — 4. Mr. Asquith's action in keeping the "guarantees" **up his sleeve** suggests a shifty melodramatic adventurer rather than a Prime Minister of England. („versteckt“.)

With

bezeichnet die Nähe unter dem Gesichtspunkt der (dauernden) Zusammengehörigkeit oder (vorübergehenden) Begleitung. Daraus entwickelt sich ein instrumentales, ein kausales und schließlich ein modales Verhältnis.

a) **Zusammensein, Gemeinschaft, Begleitung** — **Gleichzeitigkeit**, verstärkt durch *together*, *along*, *simultaneously*:

1. All panegyrics are mingled **with** an infusion of poppy. — 2. Dante's angels are good men **with** wings. — 3. But on this summer afternoon the library is oppressive, even **with** its walls a couple of yards thick.

with — from.

Gemeinschaft als Voraussetzung der Trennung:

1. If my time were to come over again there is nothing I would less willingly **part with** than my inheritance of mother wit. („opfern“) — 2. Mr. Harrison **parts from** John Stuart Mill when he exalts individual liberty. („trennt sich von“) — 3. A justice of the peace was defined in Parliament to

be an animal who for half a dozen chickens would **dispense with** a dozen laws. („hinwegsehen“.) — 4. It was resolved that all members of the House who held commissions should be **dispensed from** parliamentary attendance. („dispensiert“.)

with — to.

With bezeichnet die Gemeinschaft als dauernden Zustand, **to** nur das Erstreben der Gemeinschaft; **with** ist innerlicher, unterschiedener:

1. Let me **speak with** him. („ich will mal mit ihm reden“.) — 2. If the King **spoke to** them, they were annihilated. („anreden“.) — 3. To be married **with** („verheiratet sein“); — to be married **to** („verheiratet, getraut werden“). „I give this woman to be married to this man“ antwortet der, welcher „*gives away the bride.*“ — 4. To compare **with** — einen Vergleich durchführen; — to compare **to** — ein „*tertium comparationis*“ angeben.

Bem. Die Unterscheidung ist oft belanglos.

with — by.

With steht für die geschaffene Situation, **by** für den Vorgang:

1. Scott was **surrounded with** legends, ruins, and localities, of which he was to make so admirable a use. — 2. The town is **surrounded with** gardens and trees. — 3. He was soon **surrounded by** flatterers and supplicants. — To deal **with** und **by** a person werden kaum unterschieden: 4. Deal (do) as you would be **dealt** (done) **by**. — 5. There was in the state a power more than sufficient to deal **with** Protector and Parliament together.

Bem. Statt des instrumentalen **by** steht **with**, wenn es sich um das Selbsthandhaben des Instrumentes handelt. Doch ist die Unterscheidung nicht streng.

6. Gibraltar is simply a stronghold which we won **with** the sword, and which we must protect **by** the sword.

b) **With** bezeichnet ein persönliches Verhältnis:

1. What is the matter **with** him? — 2. To find fault, to bear, to be fair **with** one. — 3. To stand well **with** one; this does not agree **with** me. — 4. But **with** him, too, learning was a heavy business. — 5. In the one case the Liberals' objective (Home Rule) was popular **with** three-fourths of Ireland, **with** almost the whole of Scotland, **with** the whole of Wales, and **with** close upon half of England.

c) Das dauernde Zusammensein mit einem Gegenstand läßt diesen in vielen Fällen als kausal wirksam erscheinen; meistens handelt es sich um einen inneren Grund, welcher als unmittelbar mittätig, mitwirksam aufzufassen ist:

1. Elizabeth spat on Sir Matthew Arundel, **with** the foppery of whose dress she was offended. — 2. Ports bristling **with** thousands of masts. — 3. And what is grey **with** age, becomes religion. — 4. The Parliamentary air is thick **with** rumours of prospective changes in the Ministry. — 5. Printers are no longer lavish **with** their capitals.

with — for.

Soll nicht das „notorisch Anhaftende“, sondern nur der Grund angegeben werden, so steht **for**:

1. And you shall no longer **reproach** me **with** not giving you an independent settlement. — 2. A man will always be **reproached** by his neighbours **for** the vices he commits.

d) Aus der Gemeinschaft kann sich der Gegensatz entwickeln; in Verbindung mit **all** wird modales **with** konzessiv:

1. Yet, **with all** his faults and affectations, Pitt had, in a very extraordinary degree, many of the elements of greatness. — 2. Ireland, **with all** thy faults I love thee still. (Byron.)

Within.

In läßt durch die Zusammenfassung mit **with** die Sphäre schärfer in ihrer Umgrenzung hervortreten — eigentlich wie uneigentlich.

Der Sinn ist meist negativ: „noch in, innerhalb, nicht über — hinaus“:

1. Bederhof knew the wedding-day to **within** a fortnight, the settlement to **within** a shilling, the addresses of congratulation to a syllable. — 2. But before we blame Coleridge's weakness let us ask ourselves if it be conceivably **within** one man's measure to produce a succession of poems on the plane of "The Ancient Mariner." — 3. Now we have Germany and Russia smoking the pipe of peace together **within** eighteen months of the time when they were ready to spring at each other's throats.

Without

ist in rein lokaler Bedeutung archaisch; im übertragenen Sinn deutet es auf den Ausschluß von etwas Vorhandenem oder vorhanden Gedachtem:

1. The Church, for the first time in its history, found itself confronted with an organized body of Dissenters **without** its pale. — 2. I think I could name one or two long-faced Barabbases whom the world could better have done **without**. — 3. One would guess, **without being told**, that there was foreign blood in his veins.

Die Konjunktionen.

Vorbemerkung. S. die Vorbemerkung zum Adverb S. 78.

Die zur Satzverbindung dienenden Adverbia oder Partikeln sind zum Teil nur im Nebenamt Konjunktionen. Ausschließlich der Satzverbindung dienend, daher als eigentliche Konjunktionen zu bezeichnen sind:

albeit	although	because	if
less	unless	whereas	whilst.

Von uneigentlichen Konjunktionen kommen diejenigen Adverbia in Betracht, welche als Präpositionen ihre Objekts-ergänzung in Satzform haben:

after	against	before	ere	except
like	save	since	till, until	without.

Als Konjunktionen empfunden werden, wie aus ihrer Stellung hervorgeht, die pronominalen Adverbia:

however	though	when	where	whether,
----------------	---------------	-------------	--------------	-----------------

ferner das Substantiv

while,

während

that und as

in ihrem Charakter schwanken.

Für die zeitliche Unterordnung besitzt das Englische außerdem mehrere Verbindungswörter, deren Funktion lediglich durch die Stellung bedingt wird und welche am Schluß bei der Stellung der Konjunktionen erörtert werden.

Die einzelnen Konjunktionen.

After

wird nur zeitlich gebraucht:

Yet who, studying "Christabel", can, **after** the first two or three pages have been turned, believe that the poem could ever and by any possibility have been finished?

Against,

nur zeitlich gebraucht, gehört dem leichteren Stil an und wird mehr als Präposition empfunden = *against the time that*:

1. Have it ready **against** I come. — 2. They throw on another log of wood **against** father comes home.

Albeit

ist konzessiv, eigentlich ein konzessiver Satz, daher sehr nachdrücklich, fast pedantisch:

1. Nothing is so interesting as the study of human folly, **albeit** a sinister design lurks beneath obvious folly. — 2. Fitzgerald's poem came an age too early, in an age of faith, **albeit** of a faith that hesitated.

As

ist modal, temporal, kausal und konzessiv, letzteres jedoch nur, wenn es — zugleich relativisch (s. Pron. Rel.) — dem einzuschränkenden Eigenschaftsbegriff folgt:

1. And we laugh a little and love a little and hate a little **as** we sail between the "two eternities." — 2. **As** he grew older the taste of Milton grew more austere. — 3. Coleridge met her (Dorothy Wordsworth) too late, by a little while, **as** it was all but too late that he met William Wordsworth. — 4. **As** those tender twigs are bent, the trees grow afterward. — 5. Strong man **as** he was, Zola was singularly weak in the understanding of divine goodness which underlies all creation.

Because

führt einen neuen, sachlichen Grund ein, dessen Gültigkeit nicht bestritten wird:

1. Blake would have maintained his opinion in the teeth of the whole world, not, indeed, **because** it was his own, but **because** he believed it to be heaven-born. — 2. The ancients were concise **because** of the extreme pains they took with their epithets; almost all moderns are prolix **because** they do not.

Before

ist nur zeitlich:

1. There are many other equally important items to be considered **before** the general condition of the nation can be arrived at. — 2. Let two things be noted, however, **before** we give assent to those who write contemptuously of Coleridge and his infirmity. — 3. You are to consider what your flattery is worth **before** you bestow it.

Ere

ist archaisch — mehr noch als die Präposition:

Had time enough been given, and his childish inclinations been properly nurtured, Harry Esmond had been a Jesuit priest **ere** he was a dozen years older.

Except

leitet eine (wahrscheinlich nicht eintretende) Ausnahme ein und ist archaisch. Vgl. *against* und *without*.

1. Do not trouble yourself about writing to me, **except** you are quite in the humour for it. — 2. **Except** a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God. (Bible.) — 3. **Except** a man have friends among his fellow-riders, the awkward pages will not bring them to him.

However

ist konzessiv, doch meist in Verbindung mit Adjektiv oder Adverb und steigernd:

1. So far as these contests were concerned, **however** the later Stuarts might strive to revive them, England could safely "go to play." — 2. Modern England, the England among whose thoughts and sentiments we actually live, began, **however dimly and darkly**, with the triumph of Naseby. — 3. But such words (expressing science) are rather symbols than language, and **however many** we use, and **however** we may perpetuate them by writing, we never could make any kind of literature out of them, or call them by that name.

If

ist konditional. Ob die Bedingung als wirklich vorhanden gedacht ist oder nur angenommen wird, ist nur syntaktisch zu erkennen (s. Satzlehre).

Eine feste Grenze gegen das rein temporale **when** kann nicht immer gezogen werden; nicht selten stehen beide, durch *and* verbunden.

1. If a traveller wished for a good place to see a review, he had to write to Frederick. — 2. "Men's courses will foreshadow certain ends, to which, if persevered in, they must lead," said Scrooge. — 3. In England, indeed, an idea is always regarded as an error in taste; as something worse, if it sting a vested interest. — 4. There is an opening for the pious founder, a name which may perhaps, if **and when** the national spirit begins to stir, become the synonym for millionaire. — 5. **When** the time came, if come it did, **when** taxation had to be taken off, surely the income-tax payers deserved some consideration. (Speech.) — Bem. Die Rede ist indirekt. „Wenn die Zeit käme — falls sie überhaupt käme“ usw. oder: „**wann** — **wenn** — **wo**“.

If leitet einen Wunschsatz ein, wenn der Wunsch „irreal“ ist; gewöhnlich mit *but* oder *only*:

6. If youth **but** knew! — If I **only** had money!

If statt **whether** bei indirekter Frage:

7. Try if you can turn the handle.

If nimmt leicht konzessive Bedeutung an; vgl. *though*.

8. Burke's ideas, if conceived by the reason, took shape and colour from the splendour and fire of his imagination. — 9. In two successive volumes Mr. Swan Sonnenschein will deal with proverbs and the alluring, if dangerous subject of literary parallels. — 10. Swinburne was an indifferent critic, if a great poet.

Lest

zeigt an, daß etwas nicht geschehen soll, zu vermeiden ist; es gehört der literarischen Sprache an.

Nach Begriffen des Fürchtens wird es nicht selten mit **that** vertauscht.

1. There was a great danger, **lest** the water and the provisions should fail. — 2. Cromwell feared **lest**, if the majority had its way, it would trample down all that he held to be sacred. — 3. To get at the Hansard volumes one must climb a slippery ladder, in fear and trembling **lest** it should collapse. — 4. Mrs. Pendennis had had a great doubt and terror **lest** Arthur should not know her.

Like

gehört als Konjunktion nur der leichteren Prosa an, sonst der Unterhaltung — auch Gebildeter, ist also familiär:

1. They don't make any charge for programmes here **like** they do at some theatres. (Punch.) — 2. They should not make a mad, reckless, frontal attack **like** Buller did at the battle of Colenso.

Save

im Sinne von *except* und ebenso selten:

Mr. Meredith is a poet; a poet of a peculiar quality which has no parallel in English poetry **save** it be that of Browning.

Since

ist zunächst temporal und bezeichnet den Anfang einer Handlung oder eines Vorganges mit Rücksicht auf die Fortdauer; dann kausal, insoweit das zeitlich Feststehende auch in seinen Folgen betrachtet wird:

1. No other such judge **has** dishonoured the English ermine, **since** Jefferies drank himself to death in the Tower. — 2. Two years have passed **since** my father died. — 3. Here, however, we must not throw stones, **since**, in the light of recent events, our glass houses are none too safe on this side of the Channel.

That

ist nur insofern als Konjunktion anzusehen, als es einen unselbständigen Satz einführt, dessen Charakter noch syntaktisch festzustellen ist. (*"The general hack."*)

Wann es wirkliche Konjunktion ist, wann Pronomen, wann Adverb, ist oft schwer zu entscheiden, besonders da, wo erst mit seiner Hilfe Präpositionen zu Konjunktionen werden.

1. **That** the situation is regarded as very serious is proved by the fact **that** several hundred members of the Metropolitan Police have been sent down to reinforce the local authorities. — 2. We may note **that** the West Indies which now form part of the Empire belong historically to three groups. — 3. In my opinion this Kingdom has no right to lay a tax on the Colonies. America is obstinate! America is almost in open rebellion; Sir, I rejoice **that** America has resisted. (Speech.) — 4. What had he done **that** he should treat him like this? — 5. Even the admirers of William owned **that** he did not show in the pursuit the energy which even his detractors acknowledged **that** he had shown in the battle.

but that . . . vgl. Relativpronomen.

1. **But that** she held George's hand in her own, perhaps she would have liked to change places with . . . — 2. No words are so commonplace **but that** they can be made to yield inference by a biographer.

for that . . . u. ä.

Von der Möglichkeit, aus einer Präposition durch Hinzufügung von **that** eine Konjunktion zu machen, wird, mit Ausnahme von **in that**, in der edleren Sprache selten Gebrauch gemacht.

Auch ohne **that** werden **against** und **without** im leichteren Stil als Konjunktionen verwendet.

1. The publisher sat at home and rubbed his knuckles with glee, **for that** the money was rolling in. — 2. The Bill shall become an Act of Parliament on the Royal Assent being signified **notwithstanding that** the House of Lords have not consented to the Bill. — 3. Nothing more happened during

the morning, **save that**, after rest and refreshment, Joshua Tooting mentioned to the nurse that he must write to Mr. Meredith to explain to him the circumstances of the execution of the will. — 4. The tyrant in possession crushes the outbreak of all these, drives them back like slaves into the dungeon and darkness, and chafes **without that** his prisoner is rebellious, and his sworn subject undutiful and refractory. — 5. We admire Alfred **in that**, after displaying the valour of a Miltiades and the statecraft of a Themistocles, he exhibited the wisdom of a Pericles. — 6. The crime for which I am imprisoned is, they tell me, treason against the majesty of the people, **in that** I have acted against them for an emigrant. — 7. Gibbon's achievement is distinctive **in that** his motive was almost as definite as his scheme was cyclopean.

Though, although.

Although ist feierlich, falls nicht lautliche Gründe gegen die Verwendung der einsilbigen Form sprechen.

Beide sind konzessiv. Da aber das konzessive Verhältnis vielfach nur eine besondere Art des konditionalen ist — die Bedingung wird als bereits erfüllt vorausgesetzt — so können **though** und **if** leicht vertauscht werden. Dieses ist stets der Fall in Verbindung mit **as**, sowie in dem unter **if** angeführten Falle.

Abgeschwächt erscheint die Bedeutung von **though**, wenn es hinter die (betonte) Prädikatsbestimmung tritt.

1. The great poet-student of nature—for such was Tennyson, as Wordsworth was its poet-philosopher—is no longer with us, **though** it is true that in this respect his mantle has fallen upon his successor. — 2. The desire to end on a "fine line" is a snare to the young poet, if ever there was one, **praiseworthy though** it be. — 3. Mr. Churchill cannot, **gallant man though** he may be, bring himself to love the Suffragettes. — 4. **Talker and wit though** he be, Mr. Birrell's interests are notably serious. — 5. **What though** his client exaggerated? (Und wenn etc.)

Till, until

sind rein zeitlich, entsprechen also der Präposition:

1. Wait **until** the train stops. — 2. **Until** a man has lived among an overwhelming majority of blacks, **until** he has felt the daily peril for his wife and children . . . he cannot have the faintest idea of the passions of rage and resentment aroused.

Unless

zeigt mehr an als eine „verneinte Bedingung“, da meist das Gegenteil des Angenommenen, das Nichteintreten vorschwebt, bzw. erwartet wird:

1. **Unless** the accounts are exaggerated, the havoc produced by the floods must be nothing less than a national calamity. — 2. Business men and the lower middle classes, as in the Scotch institutions, are not satisfied **unless** their sons have had a college education.

When

— unabhängig von einem Beziehungswort, nicht attributivisch — ist zunächst temporal, berührt sich aber mit **if** (vgl. **whenever**)

und kann endlich einen Grund, Gegensatz, fast eine Einräumung bezeichnen. — Die Verwechslung mit *if* ist häufig; s. dieses.

1. **When** this had been done it would be impossible for our rulers to misunderstand the law. (Reported Speech.) — 2. **When** a sentence contains only one subject and one finite verb, it is said to be a simple sentence. — 3. Its accuracy the critic knows of old he may take for granted, **when** Mr. Dobson is the writer and the eighteenth century the theme; while you cannot open on a dull page. — 4. The old sportsman-naturalist may not be quite defunct, but he has much less chance of existence **when** shooting is a fashionable amusement strictly organized with a view to the largest possible amount of slaughter.

When ist nur anknüpfend in:

5. The habit of reading in bed, which everybody condemns and practises, began with most of us at school, **when** it had the charm of the forbidden. — 6. Their majesties are expected to go to Windsor on June 14 for the Ascot Meeting, **when** a large house party will assemble at the Castle. — 7. A vote was then taken, **when** the amendment was lost and the resolution carried.

Where

steht gelegentlich für einen Gegensatz, vgl. **whereas**, **while**, **when**.

Definition and division are the watchwords of science, **where** art is all for composition and creation.

Whereas

dient zur Begründung von Anträgen und Resolutionen, häufig als Einleitung der "*preamble*" = in Erwägung, daß . . ., in Anbetracht; sonst ist es gegensätzlich:

1. The paradox of life is, that he who solicits attention seldom receives it; **whereas** he who spurns it finds the world hungering to hear him. — 2. **Whereas** it is intended to substitute for the House of Lords as it at present exists a Second Chamber constituted on a popular instead of hereditary basis, but such substitution cannot immediately be brought into operation.

Whether

dient zur Einführung indirekter Fragen:

We doubt very much **whether** the Agreement will strengthen Germany's position in Constantinople.

While, whilst.

Beide — ohne begriffliche Scheidung — rein temporal für Gleichzeitigkeit, gelegentlich kausal anklingend und häufig gegensätzlich:

1. Adopt, then, the grace **while** you have the opportunity of reconciliation. — 2. **Whilst** Europe was steeped in the darkness and ignorance of the Middle Ages, the Japanese were a highly cultured and civilised race, and thus, **whilst** Western civilisation was at a stand-still, it thrived in the Far East. — 3. Why, then, should she (Lady Henry Somerset) not have a vote **while** her coachman and her gardener have votes? (= da doch). — 4. It

is a favourite maxim of mine that history, **while** it should be scientific in its method, should pursue a practical object. — 5. **While** Mahimoud came as a mighty conqueror, Vasco de Gama was but a humble navigator. — 6. It does not alter the fact that, **while** every one respects Shakespeare, nobody reads him.

Without

im Sinne von **unless**, **except**, if not gehört nur dem leichteren Stil an:

1. Neither Milton nor Stevenson used words **without** they discerned a force and appositeness in them. — 2. To our thinking, **without** a man be conscious to himself of very special powers, he had better keep the foot-path of prose.

Stellung der Konjunktionen.

Die Konjunktionen stehen naturgemäß an der Spitze des durch sie eingeleiteten Satzes, mit Ausnahme des — halb adverbialen — **though** und des — attributivischen — **as**.

Die Spitzenstellung ist es auch, welche einige Gruppen von Adverbien oder Verbalformen als Konjunktionen empfinden läßt. Sobald sie jene Stellung aufgeben, übernehmen sie ihre gewöhnlichen Funktionen.

Bem. In der Rede tritt außerdem der Unterschied durch Ton und (folgende) Pause hervor; das Fehlen beider in der schriftlichen Darstellung führt leicht zur Verkennung der Funktion als Konjunktion.

So können zu den eigentlichen Konjunktionen auf Grund ihrer Stellung gerechnet werden:

1. now, once, directly u. ä.:

1. A general expectation, in fact, prevailed that, **now** the Queen's opposition was removed, something would be done. — 2. We have been often threatened with revolution, but as often revolution has been dissipated into thin air **directly** the Englishman of average common-sense has had time to sit down and think matters over. — 3. The Englishman points out that his insular position renders him liable to starvation **directly** he "loses command of the sea." — 4. **Once** he was in the saddle, he knew no fear. — 5. In fact, nearly all are agreed that the most successful cases are those treated **immediately** the disease becomes evident. — 6. Versatility was an unsuspected gift in Mr. Parnell, but **the moment** the need developed the talent was there: and who knows how many more lie slumbering in the depths of his character?

2. Partizipia (vgl. diese):

1. **Given** equal vigour of leadership the party that rests upon principle will inevitably defeat that which relies on expedients and opportunism. — 2. Everything in Nature is a fit subject for artistic expression—**provided** the aim is sufficiently high. — 3. **Provided that** the House of Commons may . . . suggest any further amendments . . . (Parliament Bill 1911.) — 4. What we have to do is, **granted** the type and the conception, to see how near the execution comes to the idea which inspired it.

Die Satzlehre.

Worterklärung.

Wort — Satz — Satzgruppe.

Durch die Zusammenstellung von Worteinheiten entstehen Wortgruppen, welche je nach ihrem Verhältnis der Nebenordnung bzw. Erweiterung oder Unterordnung bzw. Fügung entweder als Wortreihen oder als Wortgefüge erscheinen.

Die häufigste Form solcher Wortgruppen heißt Satz.

Der **Satz** ist die häufigste Sprachform, um einen vernünftigen Gedanken andern so zu übermitteln, daß er richtig verstanden wird.

Zu einem vernünftigen, sinngebenden Gedanken, mag er eine Mitteilung, eine Gefühls-, Willens- oder Zweifelsäußerung enthalten, gehören wenigstens Subjekt und Prädikat — **einfacher nackter Satz**.

Subjekt und Prädikat werden „bestimmt“, jenes durch Attribute, dieses durch Objekte und Adverbien; so entsteht der **einfache zusammengesetzte Satz**. Treten mehrere Sätze in Beziehung zueinander, so entsteht die **Satzgruppe**. Bei dieser, dem mehrfachen Satze, führt das gedankliche Verhältnis der Einzelsätze zueinander zur Unterscheidung von **Satzgefüge** und **Satzreihe**.

Beim **Satzgefüge** ist das Verhältnis das der Unterordnung, bei der Satzreihe das der Nebenordnung. Beim Gefüge spricht man von selbständigem und unselbständigem oder unabhängigem und abhängigem Satz, von Haupt- und Nebensatz oder — formal — von Vorder- und Nachsatz. Die **Satzreihe** entsteht durch Nebenordnung von Einzelsätzen, die durch eine höhere oder weitere Einheit verbunden sind.

Für die Satzlehre werden daher unterschieden: Einzelsatz (Satz), Satzgefüge, Satzreihe.

Der Einzelsatz

ist die syntaktische Satzeinheit, einerlei ob er Haupt- oder Nebensatz ist, ob seine Teile als Wort, Wortgruppe oder selbst wieder in Satzform auftreten.

Inhaltlich ist der Satz in den weitaus meisten Fällen ein Aussagesatz; wo dieser zugleich Zweifel, Gefühl oder Willen ausdrückt, wird er als Satzart zuletzt und für sich behandelt werden.

Die Prüfung umfaßt Subjekt, Prädikat und das Verhältnis beider zueinander, dann das Attribut, das Objekt, das Adverb.

A. Das Subjekt.

a) Form des Subjekts.

Subjekt kann jede Wortart, jede Wortgruppe, jeder Satz sein; am häufigsten ist es ein Substantiv oder Substantiversatz:

1. **All that glitters** is not gold. — 2. **Three times three** is nine. — 3. In my time, **good in the saddle** was good for everything. — 4. I have now read some of the authorities on education, and realised that **to have done so earlier** would have been to nip this book in the bud. — 5. **The two most serious difficulties** to contend with are **how to get at the right people** and **how to meet the expenses**. — 6. **Whether this extension** (of the mother-state) **is practicable** may be questioned, but it cannot be questioned that if it were practicable it would be desirable.

Erkannt wird

das Subjekt unmittelbar oder (und) mittelbar — formal oder (und) syntaktisch.

Eine besondere Subjektsform (Nominativ) weisen nur die Pronomina

I, he, she, we, they, who

auf.

Syntaktisch wird es erkannt an der Stellung.

b) Ersparung des Subjekts.

Entbehrlich wird das Subjekt — abgesehen von Imperativsätzen

α) als Pronomen der 1. Person, z. B. in:

1. **Thank you**. — 2. **Hope** to see you again. — 3. **Would** he were with us.

β) nach **than**:

1. We imagine a much greater difference **than really existed** between the age of George I. and that of Queen Anne. — 2. Now a candidate finds that he has to deliver more speeches in one day in the heat of an election **than was formerly demanded** during the whole of a campaign. — 3. That nothing might be wanting to Frederick's distress, he lost his mother just at this time; and he appears to have felt the loss **more than was to be expected** from the hardness and severity of his character.

Ersparung durch Zusammenziehung mehrerer Sätze s. „*Concord*“ und „Satzreihe“.

γ) durch **Attraktion, Verschlingung, Aufsaugung**; die relativen

What, Whoever, Whatever

können als Subjekt oder Objekt zwei Sätze bedienen; **who** ist auf die archaische Verwendung beschränkt:

1. **Whatever** is is good. — 2. **Whatever** national hopes the fall of Buckingham had aroused were quickly dispelled. — 3. **Whoever** keeps company with wolves must learn to howl. — 4. **Who** rides slowly must saddle betimes. — 5. **Whom** the gods love die young.

Bem. Dieser (griechische) Ausspruch wird häufiger in der „korrekten“ Form zitiert: **“Those whom”** ...

Vgl. indessen:

6. **Whoever** had been about Richard since his birth, she must know the history of. — 7. But **whatever** happened once to justify such a title (“Traitor’s Hill”), **that** was centuries ago. — 8. **Whoever** may be the individual really guiding our Indian policy at this moment, **he** is entitled to our gratitude.

δ) wenn Ein Subjekt zwei Eine Gedankeneinheit bildende Sätze gemeinsam bedient; vgl. γ) und Attributsatz „ohne Anschluß“.

Bem. Diese „Auslassung“ ist besonders häufig bei *there is*, *there was*. Das ihnen folgende Subjekt vermag durch seine (Zwischen-)Stellung auch als Subjekt des unmittelbar folgenden Prädikats zu dienen.

1. There was a **man** told me ... — 2. **Which** of us is there **can** tell how much vanity lurks in our warmest regard for others, and how selfish our love is? — 3. My dear—don’t turn from me! **It’s** Eleanor’s **voice** speaks in mine. Listen to us both. — 4. **What** is it **makes** Borrow so supremely great a Romany Rye?

ε) Eine besondere Form des gemeinsamen Subjekts bilden die persönlichen Fürwörter der 1. und 2. Person, wenn sie durch einen mit **who**, seltener **that** als Subjekt eingeführten Attributsatz näher bestimmt werden:

1. Thus **it is we who** have written the name of international arbitration on the roll-call of freedom. — 2. **I that** was young and innocent ... began to think there was more in inquiring into public affairs than I thought of. — 3. “Madam,” he (Burleigh) said, “I am a statesman, but I am also a man — a **man** already grown old in your councils. **who** have not, and cannot have a wish on earth but your glory and happiness.”

c) Doppeltes Subjekt,

formales — logisches.

Konstruktivische und rhythmische Gründe können die doppelte Nennung des Subjekts nötig oder wünschenswert machen.

Das formale Subjekt kann vorangehen, um anzukündigen, oder es kann folgen, um wiederaufzunehmen.

α) Vorangehend — als vorläufiges Subjekt:

αα) Zur Hervorhebung des Prädikats:

1. **They** are a very engaging people **the French-Canadians**, and they have kept alive in the New World some of the more gracious characteristics and traditions of the Old. — 2. **It** is marvellous, when we think of it, **the attraction** of the Old Country to the travelled American. — 3. **It** is as

tonishing the amount of unadulterated sun a man can stand when he is making hay.

Im leichteren Stil —

aus Bequemlichkeit oder höhnisch oder scherzhaft:

4. **They** were very pious folk, were **the Joneses**. — 5. **He** can run a mile in seven minutes, can **Footit**. (= foot it). — 6. **She** is a very clever writer, is **this Mrs. Ward**.

ββ) Um — in der Form von *it* — das folgende logische Subjekt anzukündigen, wenn dieses ein Infinitiv oder ein Satz ist:

It is uncertain when he will come, — when he will come is uncertain.

1. **It takes three generations to make a gentleman.** — **It took** a myriad-minded Goethe **to adequately estimate** the myriad-minded Shakespeare. — 2. How does it feel **to be in battle?** — 3. How it feels **to fly**. (Überschrift eines Artikels.)

β) Nachfolgend,

bald im Interesse der syntaktischen Übersichtlichkeit, bald aus rhetorischen Gründen, häufig beides:

1. **To free Britain from corruption and oligarchical cabals, to detach** her from continental connections, **to bring** the bloody and expensive war with France and Spain to a close, **such** were the specious objects which Bute professed to procure. — 2. **The personal use** of language, the **artistic use** of language, **this** is style. — 3. The Canadian nation, the Australian nation, the South African nation, slowly **they** are forming, slowly **they** will blend into the British race. — 4. St. John's greatest **mistake, it** was prelude to his most ineffectual period. — 5. **The Lord, he** is great. — 6. But **he** who sees life whole, and fights undauntedly, facing the risk and the danger, **he** is a brave man.

d) Stellung des Subjekts.

Die „natürliche“ oder „normale“ Stellung des Subjekts ist an der Spitze des Satzes. Wann es — abgesehen von den durch die Fügung der Rede gebotenen Abweichungen — hinter oder zwischen das Prädikat tritt, wird bei diesem geprüft werden.

B. Das Prädikat.

a) Form des Prädikats.

Wir unterscheiden verbales und nominales Prädikat; beide Grundformen sind reich entwickelt, wie in der Formenlehre gezeigt ist.

Verbal: Beschränkende Formen:

Dogs *bark*; birds *sing*; people *ran*. — He *speaks, was speaking, would have been spoken to*. — You *can tell, ought to know*.

Unbeschränkte Formen:

First come *first served*. — *I affront* the Colonel! — An artist, and yet not *have* a portrait of the girl he had chosen to marry? — The position taken up by Villars at Malplaquet was a challenge which to decline would have been to *acknowledge* an element of fear.

Nominal:

Mit Copula: 1. Adjektiva: Man *is mortal*. — 2. Adverbia: We *are here*. — We *were in a hurry*. — 3. Substantiva: He *was a man*!

Ohne Copula: 1. Adjektiva: The king *dead*? — 2. Adverbia: Nobody *there*? Anybody *in*? — Out of sight *out of mind*. — 3. Substantiva: Ireland *a nation*? — The better lawyer, *the worse Christian*. — Other men—*other views*.

b) Inhalt und Bedeutung des Prädikats.

Das Prädikat verlangt, falls es begrifflich unvollständig ist, eine Ergänzung; falls es begrifflich vollständig ist, kann es erweitert werden.

α) Ergänzung des Prädikats.

αα) Copula und Copulativa.

Das (meist nominale) Prädikat ergänzt die — unter Umständen entbehrliche — Copula. Copula heißt die farbloseste, am meisten gebrauchte Verbindung zwischen Subjekt und Aussage — *to be*.

Mit *to be* konkurrieren einige in diesem Falle und in dieser Bedeutung stets intransitive Verba, welche den allgemeinen Begriff des „Seins“ entweder bestimmter fassen oder ihn färben, ohne indessen zu einer vollständigen Aussage auszureichen.

In diesem Sinne werden vorwiegend gebraucht oder können gebraucht werden:

to appear	to keep	to seem
to become	to lie	to sit
to come	to look	to smell
to commence	to loom	to sound
to continue	to prove	to stand
to fall	to rank	to stay
to feel	to remain	to taste
to get	to rest	to turn
to go	to ring	to turn out
to grow	to run	to wax.

Die Vervollständigung (oder Ergänzung) geschieht wie bei *to be* ohne Formwort, durch unmittelbaren Anschluß:

1. I like people to be good, when being good comes natural to them; but the continual effort to do one's duty is paralysing to other energies. — He had always worked with conscientious diligence; but all that he did **came easy** to him. — This has **come something** of the suddenest; and, at any rate, you will wish to read your letter by yourself. — 2. In 1826 he (W. Hauff) gave up teaching and **commenced author** in real earnest. — 3. **To continue**: single, bachelor, friends u. a. — 4. **To fall**: a prey, a victim to; to fall ill u. a. — 5. Few can **feel hopeful** that Mr. Asquith will succeed in accomplishing a task which baffled the mighty intellect of Mr. Gladstone. — He (S. Marner) **felt a reformed man**, delivered from temptation; and the vision of his future life seemed to him as a promised land for which he had no cause to fight. — 6. Selden or Coleridge's Table-Talk, the exceedingly witty Characters of Hudibras Butler, and other admirable literature of the kind, go virtually **unread**. — 7. But it is not for me to defend Goldsmith, though it is difficult for me to **keep silent** when a friend is misunderstood. — 8. Take, for instance, the management of butchers' shops in Germany. Each carcass or large piece not only **looks healthy**, but **is healthy**. — Sir Leslie Stephen had the double advantage of both **being and looking a Man of Letters**. — 9. That question **looms large** when one conceives of the nation as a nation under arms. — Jedoch: The Englishman who travels abroad will feel himself lifted above the petty trivial concerns which **loom so largely** in the eyes of stay-at-home citizens. — 10. All service **ranks the same** with God. — 11. **To rest** = „bleiben“ nur mit *assured, secure, satisfied* u. ä. — 12. **to ring true**, false(ly). — 13. This is the first Sunday that has **looked and smelled and sounded Sunday**. — 14. **To taste**: sweet, sour u. a. — 15. Bayle and Chillingworth, two of the most sceptical of mankind, **turned Catholics** from sincere conviction. — This boy will **turn out a marvellous man**. — 16. Austria has **waxed vigorous** under the weight and tonnage of crushing catastrophes.

ββ) Factitiva im Passiv.

Soweit diese echte Copulativa sind, also einer Ergänzung bedürfen, erübrigt sich eine besondere Anschlußform.

Wie eine solche auftritt, hat sie begrifflichen Wert; oft wird sie aber durch die Konstruktion gefordert.

Vgl. die ausführlichere Erörterung der Frage beim „Objekt: Ergänzung oder Erweiterung“.

Ohne Anschluß:

1. **What is your friend called?** — 2. Each person in turn reads out a little paragraph, and the others try to guess **what the paragraph is headed**. — 3. By universal assent the French **is reputed the most logical** of all languages. — 4. Mr. Asquith **is not proved a knave** because the women are **proved fools**. — 5. People are not born carpenters or glaziers, but sometimes they are born painters. I think I **have been born nothing**. — 6. But an Anti-Semite I **have been** dubbed, and an Anti-Semite I must apparently remain in spite of my protests.

Mit Anschluß durch **as** oder **for**:

7. **Regarded as a place to speak in**, the House of Commons chances to be, for its size, perhaps the most perfectly devised chamber in the world. — 8. As it is, he (Addison) is entitled to **be considered**, not only **as the greatest** of the English essayists, but **as the forerunner** of the great English novelists. — 9. Even among those who find him too „difficult,“ I take it that

Mr. George Meredith has been **accepted** as the **greatest** English novelist now living, a literary artist, indeed, in a class by himself. — 10. The foolish libels of Thackeray will soon be forgotten, and Jonathan Swift will at last be **recognised** for **what he was**, one of the greatest writers and one of the noblest men of a distinguished age.

„Nominativ mit Infinitiv“:

11. As regards any consequences from the law we will bear them not only willingly but gladly, having regard to our feelings in relation to the wrong that is **attempted to be inflicted** upon us. — 12. Mr. Justice Darling is **reported to have said**: “An eminent statesman had said all people could be bought and that it was only a question of price.”

Die mit Adverbien gebildeten Transitiva bedürfen stets des Anschlusses durch **as**:

13. At a time when their tongue **was looked on** simply as a medium of trade and business, Hastings was skilled in the languages of India. — Monism at present can only **be looked upon as a sort** of nebulous philosophy, and this does not come within the pale of Science.

β) Erweiterung des Prädikats

αα) durch Substantiva, die entweder

die Teile des Subjekts ausmachen:

1. The Government has descended, **horse, foot and guns**, to the help of the Irish politician. — 2. Aeschylus was, **head and heart**, a lyric poet. — 3. He retaliated by meeting me **all sweetness** at the door. — 4. In two strides he stepped up to where the great man sat, even now **all smiles and white teeth**.

oder

„prädikativ-attributiv“ aufzufassen sind, bzw. appositionell.

Das Setzen oder Auslassen von **as** ist vielfach willkürlich, kann indessen konstruktivisch geboten sein:

5. At length the serpent stood up **a man**, and spake; the man sank down **a serpent**, and glided hissing away. — 6. Dickens went into the crowd **a great emotional interpreter** of its surface oddities, pathos, and variety: whereas Mr. Gissing has gone into it **as a keenly interested** but merciless **searcher** into its mind, habits, and tastes. — 7. In his early years S. Johnson had occasionally seen the great; but he had seen them **as a beggar**. He now came among them **as a companion**. — 8. Two persons who had entered the house **friends**, left it with feelings of alienation.

ββ) durch Adjektiva:

1. Charles (the Second) died **as he had lived**: **brave, witty, cynical**, even in the presence of death. — 2. At present a writer enters the service **young**. — 3. The Americans marry **younger** and more generally. — 4. The spirit of the soldiers swelled up **high and fierce** against the chief. — 5. “For fourteen years,” he (Stephenson) wrote, “I have not had a day’s real health: I have waked **sick** and gone to bed **weary**, and I have done my work **unflinchingly**.”

— 6. But London is not **all** centre and Society. — Life is not **all** beer and skittles. — Saxony was **all** in arms behind him (Fred. II.).

rr) durch Adverbia.

Dieser Gebrauch beschränkt sich auf unbetontes

there.

Zu **to be** tretend kann es aus dem „Sein“ ein „Vorhandensein“ machen, ist aber in den meisten Fällen rein formelhaft und weist bei **to be** wie bei einigen andern — Zustand oder Bewegung bezeichnenden — Verben, sowie allgemein vor dem Passiv auf das (folgende) Subjekt hin.

Es kann mithin auch die Funktion von **it** übernehmen, dient indessen hauptsächlich konstruktivischen und rhythmischen Zwecken.

Bei **to be**:

1. Borough justices **there have been** of notoriously bad character, but for them the Lords-Lieutenant are not responsible. — 2. The German Government is now assuming that **there has been** some change in the relations between England and France, which **there has not**. — 3. The ancients held **there to be** a Fate which would have its fill, though women wept and men died. — **There is also very apt**, in the atmosphere of suspicion that surrounds the relations between the two countries, to be a suggestion of misunderstanding on a question of detail. — 4. **There has been** available a bewildering array of cheap series since Sir John Lubbock drew up his list of the one hundred best books.

Bei andern Verben:

5. **There was** peace between the English and French Crowns; but **there arose** between the English and French Companies trading to the East, a war most eventful and important—a war in which the prize was nothing less than the magnificent inheritance of the house of Tamerlane. — 6. **There has fallen** upon our Press a mixture of convention and terror which makes it impossible to print quite simple truths. — 7. Assuming the initial fact, we must agree with Dr. Wallace in assigning hundreds of millions of years to the age of the Universe. Then **there arrived** man. — 8. And so we perceive that from the little mother-country of the British Isles **there has sprung** the greatest maritime empire which the world has yet seen. — 9. This month **there comes** of age and into her inheritance the youngest sovereign of Europe, and the only woman to share that position with Queen Wilhelmina.

Beim Passiv:

10. H. Spencer had to build upon something, and most fortunate it was that, before he began his work, **there had already been rendered probable** the great generalisation, one of whose founders—Lord Kelvin—is still alive. — 11. It appears from “The Newspaper Press Directory” for 1904 that **there are** 2,595 magazines **published** now in the United Kingdom.

Idiomatisch in:

12. **There is no questioning** the fact that the game of golf played by our ancestors as a cheery pastime has vanished; and in its place we have a game, if you like to call it so, but a business game.

Begrifflich und betont:

13. Materialistic views of life have chilled any fervour surviving from the enervating prosperity of the last century. Doctrines of class-hatred are quenching the fires of patriotism, but the spirit is **there**. — Vgl. Wherever **there** is a romantic movement in art, **there** somehow and under some form, is Christ, or the soul of Christ.

c) Stellung des Prädikats.

Das Prädikat steht im „normalen“ Satz hinter dem Subjekt und vor dem Objekt. Ist das Prädikat mehrteilig, so können seine Teile nur durch adverbiale Bestimmungen voneinander getrennt werden.

Bem. Es wird zunächst die Stellung des Prädikats für sich geprüft werden. „Inversion“ siehe nächstes Kapitel.

Das Prädikat kann dem Subjekt teilweise oder ganz **voran**gehen:

α) Wenn es **hervorgehoben** werden soll.

Der Ton liegt meistens auf dem Prädikatskern, sonst auf diesem **und** dem Formwort.

Nominal:

1. **Black** is the raven, **black** is the rook, But **blacker** is the blackguard who steals this book. (Ownership Inscription.) — 2. Consequently, if a person cannot be happy without remaining idle, **idle** he should remain. — 3. But **far greater** than its effect on literature or social phrase **was** the effect of the Bible on the character of the people at large. — 4. It **had been** hard to stay, but the girl would not give up her self-imposed **hopeless** task. **Helpless** she had proved, and **hopeless** she had become. — False to his son it could not be said that **he had been**: false to his system **he was**. — 5. The Lords are prejudiced, they are dull, they are human, they are averse to change. And **so are** the English people. — 6. **Fords** that a babe can wade, **depths** in which a mammoth may disport himself are these massive works of the giants of literature.

Mit Ersparung der Copula:

7. Admirals All. (Überschr. eines Artikels.) — 8. **Happy** the school-boys who come under the influence of "T. B.!" (Upton Letters, by T. B.)

Verbal:

9. At all events, **fail** the Universal Review did, despite the pontifical benediction of Mr. E. Yates. — **Hate** them perhaps **we** should not, but **despise** them **we** must, if enslaved. — God will help them to bear the burden. . . . But bear it **man** can and **must**. — **Make** the Abbé Mendel's discovery **simple** I cannot, the facts being complex: but I must do my best. — 10. **Flounder** he no doubt will continue to do.

β) In kurzen Sätzen, deren Prädikat ein Verbum des Sagens ist und welche die direkte Rede unterbrechen oder abschließen.

Üblich ist die Umstellung nur bei einteiligen Verbalformen, mag das Subjekt ein Substantiv oder Pronomen sein; als Substantiv steht es meist nach.

Treten weitere Bestimmungen zum Prädikat, so sind für die Stellung lediglich Rücksichten auf Klarheit und Rhythmik entscheidend.

Bem. Außer den eigentlichen Verben des Sagens kommen auch solche in Betracht, welche wie z. B. *to think, to muse, to sigh, to suggest* nur mittelbar eine Äußerung enthalten.

1. Why, it was asked, do not some of you (University) men sit down and do some permanent work? — 2. "I wish Mr. Hampden and others to his likeness," **the Lord Lieutenant wrote** bitterly from Ireland, "were well whipt into their right senses." — 3. Carlyle has left us a mass of writings which are solid and substantial, which are independent of an opinion about his moral teaching and ideals. But his style, **say some**, will not that prove fatal to his fame? — 4. "Whoever may live to see it," **the grey-haired statesman** (Cardinal Morton) **used to say**, "this boy (Thomas More) now waiting at table will turn out a marvellous man." — 5. "If," **should have said the critic** who never appeared, "politicians are told to practise more and preach less, what about the publisher himself?" — 6. "I will rather die," **the King wrote** to Hamilton, "than yield to these impertinent and damnable demands"; but it was needful to gain time. — "The discontents at home," **wrote Lord Northumberland** to Strafford, "do rather increase than lessen"; and Charles was without money or men.

γ) Vor folgendem, syntaktisch dazugehörigem as, though:

1. **Young as he was**, More no sooner quitted the University than he was known throughout Europe as one of the foremost figures in the new movement. — 2. There is no exaggeration in this statement—**bold and wild though it may appear** at first sight to the casual reader.

δ) In besonderen Fällen, aus Gründen der „Fügung“, oft auch spöttisch:

1. And at the present moment there is a decided revival of interest in the higher class journalism, **witness the friendly and honourable rivalry** between our contemporaries, the *Saturday Review* and the *Outlook*. — 2. As the boy was yet in this attitude of humility, **enters** behind him a **portly gentleman**, with a little girl of four years old in his hand. — 3. **Enter Mr. Machen** in the part of Boswell to a talker both "literary" and "obscure", who offers a test whereby to separate literature from "fine" literature or, in effect, talent from genius. — 4. **Said a Headmaster** in the States to a friend of mine, "If you had asked me about co-education five years ago I should have been strongly in favour of it, but now *I am not so sure*." — 5. There is a story told of the Duke of Wellington, to whom a soldier was pointed out, trembling and afraid as he marched to the fight, the epithet "coward" being applied to him. **Said the great commander**, "Coward? No; he knows the risks he runs and faces them." — 6. **Remain the incorrigible dunces** at spelling, who never learn—not even in the prolonged school-days of adult life—to spell according to the dictionary.

C. Subjekt und Prädikat

in ihrem gegenseitigen syntaktischen Verhältnis, wie es sich in Stellung und Übereinstimmung zu erkennen gibt.

I. Inversion.

Vorbem. Eine Umstellung von Subjekt und Prädikat kann notwendig oder wünschenswert bzw. gestattet sein. Die Syntax hat hauptsächlich das Notwendige festzustellen, das rein Stilistische auszuschneiden.

Die Inversion ist **notwendig**:

a) im direkten Fragesatz — **Frage**;

b) wenn durch an der Spitze des Satzes stehende Adverbia, Adverbialia oder Objekte der ganze Satz verneint wird — **Verneinung**;

c) wenn zum Satze gehörende Adverbia oder Adverbialia der Betonung wegen an die Spitze treten — **Betonung**.

a) **Inversion** im (direkten) Fragesatz; s. Satzarten.

b) **Inversion** im verneinten Satz.

Bem. „Verneint“ im weitesten Sinne, also auch wenn irgend eine Beschränkung oder Bedingung vorliegt.

α) Unmittelbare Verneinung

durch die (eigentlichen) Adverbia:

hardly, little, less, least, never,

nowhere, scarcely, seldom, no sooner (than)

und die Bindewörter:

nor, neither.

Die Einwirkung auf die Stellung wird durch Bestimmungen des Adverbs selbst nicht gehindert.

1. A sort of verbal fencing has become a perfect obsession with the Irish. **Hardly ever will you** succeed in getting a plain answer to a question. Yes and no are almost unknown words. — 2. **Least of all authors is the poet** subject to the tyranny of his audience. — No man can understand himself; **much less can another** understand him. — My daughter, my daughter, **little did I think** when I received your vows that the enemy of your soul had so mastered you. — 3. **Never, surely, was such virtuosity** allied to such native fire, just as **seldom have such critical faculties been combined** with poetical imagination. — **Never** in its history did the party as a whole **formulate** its revolutionary principles more clearly. — 4. **No sooner is it known** that he is speaking, **than** numbers flock in, and hang on his accents with breathless attention. — 5. **Nowhere are the great lessons** of this cautious practical philosophy . . . more powerfully taught or more felicitously **illustrated** than in these speeches on Reform, which we recommend, no less for their wisdom than their eloquence, to the attention of our youthful countrymen. — 6. **Scarcely had the executive government** become really respon-

sible to the nation, when it began to appear . . . — 7. Indeed, the life of **Kant** presents little for relation. **Seldom can even a philosopher have lived** a life so withdrawn, so peacefully and entirely concentrated on the one function of thinking and enunciating the results of thought. — **Seldom, indeed, have Christian meekness and Christian humility equalled** the meekness and humility of his patient and abject ambition. — 8. They neither asked for, nor would they accept, assistance. — **Neither before God nor man am I ashamed** of them. — This neither explains it nor is it correct. — Matches do not glow nor do the heads fall off. — The sun did not shine, but then neither did the clouds rain, except for a few minutes that hardly counted. — Nor probably would the Bodleyan library be willing to exchange for it (the new Milton Msc.) their autograph of the poem to John Rous.

β) Mittelbare Verneinung

durch Adverbialia oder Objekte, die durch *alone, neither, no, not*, *only* verneint oder beschränkt sind:

1. **In neither case, therefore, was the independence** of England endangered; in neither case was her honour compromised: in both cases her liberties were preserved. — 2. **In no country have such strong fortresses been taken** by surprise; in no country have unfortified towns made so furious and obstinate a resistance to great armies (as in Spain). — 3. **In England only was he** (Henry II.) the king; **only on England has he left** his mark. — 4. **In one plan alone could he** (James I.) believe himself successful. — 5. **Not till that was done did she speak** or look him in the face. — 6. **But to none is it given** to be infallible, and want of doubt does not always mean absence of error.

Im unselbstständigen Satz und im Nachsatz gelten dieselben Gesetze:

1. **We believe that at no time would serious literary criticism have given** *Silas Marner* the first place, and certainly in popularity it has not equalled several of George Eliot's other works. — 2. It is safe to forecast that chiefly, if not **only**, by developments in connection with the sea **will the town of capstan and chanty (Plymouth) preserve** and enhance its honoured name. — 3. As the Reformation did not find the English bigotted Papists, so **neither was it conducted** in such a manner as to make them zealous Protestants. — 4. If, as Burke said, you cannot indict a nation, **neither can you gag it**. — It might, however, be urged that if America is not a nation **neither can it be called** an empire. — 5. We are told by those on the spot that **never since the time of the Commune has such grave danger threatened** the capital. — 6. He is one of the enthusiastic band who maintain that, **not only have we a folk-song** of our own in England, but that it is as distinctive as that of any other country. — 7. The wonder of language is inexhaustible but so common that **rarely do we give it a thought**. — 8. It is being shown from day to day **how very little do we know** of the details of the schemes and proceedings of Germany in regard to this naval business which is causing so much anxiety.

Bloß formale Verneinung hat keine Inversion zur Folge:

1. **To not a few minds** Matthew Arnold's poetry has brought more comfort and quiet inspiration than that of any other poet of the last half century. — 2. **Not only the national but the Imperial importance** of the occasion was attested by the presence of the President of the Board of Trade,

representatives of practically all the chambers of commerce in the country. — 3. And what is our failure here but a triumph's evidence for the fulness of the days? **Not without hope we suffer** and we mourn. — 4. **Not seldom the conflict may** quite naturally be conceived as lying between two persons of whom the hero is one. — 5. **In no long time the new organiser was** inundated with applications for advice and assistance by those who desired to arrange for special trains.

c) Inversion auf Grund der Betonung.

Bem. Es handelt sich vielfach um eine Art Ausruf, bei dem "how" vorschwebt. — Der Hochtton gestattet, da keine Pause eintritt, nicht die unmittelbare Folge des Subjekts. Ein Hilfsverb bildet die Überleitung oder tritt in die „Senkung“ und sichert die syntaktische Verbindung.

Überhaupt spielt der Satzrhythmus, besonders bei alltäglichen Adverbien wie **thus, so, again, yet**, eine entscheidende Rolle. Andererseits hat häufig die Inversion etwas Archaisches oder Geziertes. — Vgl. Adverb, Stellung.

α) Adverbia:

1. **Terribly is our good language** abused by the swell mob of stylists, for whom it is certainly not enough that Chatham's language is their mother's tongue. — 2. **Fain would a man** like Gray speak out if he could. — 3. **Therefore have we** (Irish Nationalists) **linked ourselves** to the only English Party that promises us the boon we seek. — 4. **Unlike the prophet, the statesman** is not without honour in his own country. **Especially is this so** if his country be in the district of which Birmingham is the centre. — 5. **Chiefly do I love** reading old plays of which the scenes are laid in London. — 6. **Much did the priest employ** himself in parish work. — 7. **Thus only does the weary Titan live.** **Thus only**, in the increasing prosperity of others. **England will seek and find** her own. — 8. **Again had the saying been verified** that a prophet is nowhere without honour save in his own country. — 9. The rich province which had tempted the cupidity of Surajah Dowlah became the most miserable part even of his miserable dominions. **Yet is the injured nation not extinct.** — **Yet was the spirit of the haughty daughter of the Cæsars unbroken.**

Trennung einfacher Ortsadverbien vom (einfachen) Prädikat würde den Rhythmus des Satzes stören in Sätzen wie:

10. **Out came the chaise—in went the horses—on sprang the boys—in got the travellers.** — 11. These laws did not extend to Ireland. The free peasantry of Ireland began to grow tobacco. The cultivation spread fast. **Down came your legislation upon it; and now, if the Irish freeman dares...**

β) Adverbiale Wortgruppen:

1. **For five weeks did George III. hunt** for a premier. (5 ganze Wochen.) — 2. From Mr. Lloyd George's speech on Saturday last the layman might regard him as the ineffable benefactor of mankind, and **over Friendly Societies in particular were his protective wings outspread.** ... — 3. It was Christmas Eve. **All day long in the Churches in Rome, had the services, the processions, the religious shows, gone on.**

Wenn dagegen Adverbia in Spitzenstellung einen selbständigen Gedanken ausdrücken, d. h. für einen selbständigen Satz stehen, so folgt ihnen eine Pause und keine Inversion.

Adverbia:

1. The fault in Rossetti's poetry is one which arises from his very love for effective language and resonant periods. Too often he yielded to the temptation of fine words, of a rolling combination of consonants and vowels. = It too often happened that he yielded. . . — 2. Tardily, perhaps, yet definitely, we English people have come to acknowledge our own inferiority in the art of prose, and the necessity we are under of learning the rules of that art from French masters. — 3. All English players dread a pause. Personally, I do not care how long a speech is so long as it seems to come spontaneously from the speaker. — 4. Erse and Gaelic are languages of comparatively recent growth and practically all the literature which they contain is poetry. — 5. Oddly enough the next paragraph begins: . . . — 6. Clearly we have gained enormously from this new shifting of the balance of power. — 7. Again and again it is found that working men regard the word "country" as signifying the body of rich people who live in it. — 8. I know of no purer English prose than that of John Bunyan and Daniel Defoe . . . yet Latin literature and these masters of English had little to do with one another.

Adverbiale Wortgruppen:

1. On more than one occasion it has been pointed out, however, that *Punch* very foolishly, and perhaps without knowing it, hits below the belt. — 2. In any case he (man) must steadfastly refuse to endow her (woman) with the vote until she is properly grown up to the six-foot standard. — 3. Above a century ago, the Père Bouhours propounded to himself the pregnant question: *Si un Allemand peut avoir de l'esprit?* — 4. With the deepest sorrow and regret the public will learn the sad news of the bereavement which has visited Sir Edward Grey in the moment of his political triumph. — 5. But from acts of confiscation and acts of attainder lawgivers are bound, by every obligation of morality, systematically to refrain. — 6. Than he (W. Scott), few men ever had a harder and more courageous struggle. Than he, few men ever gained a more steadfast triumph. Than he, few men ever had nobler hearts. — 7. Than the present we feel that no more appropriate opportunity is likely to occur in our time to repair this signal omission.

II. Übereinstimmung von Subjekt und Prädikat.

Die Formen, welche die für die „Zusammenordnung“ notwendige Übereinstimmung der beiden Hauptsatzteile unmittelbar und zweifellos anzeigen, sind in sehr beschränkter Zahl und nur für Numerus und Person vorhanden; um so bedeutsamer wird als mittelbares Erkennungszeichen ihre Stellung zueinander.

Ein Subjekt.

a) Das Subjekt im Singular.

Singularisches Subjekt erfordert singularisches Prädikatsverb.

Dieses Gesetz bedarf einer näheren Erläuterung nur in bezug auf das nominale Prädikat und die Kollektiva.

α) Das nominale Prädikat im Plural.

Die Copula richtet sich nach dem Subjekt:

1. She is all the great **heroines** of the world in one. She is more than an individual. — 2. I stand at the junction of all Time and Space. I **am** the three tenses. — 3. Ireland **is** by nature and by its history not **two** but one. — 4. Indeed, while the English public schools turn out many brilliant scholars, their staple product is essentially **men**. — 5. Literature **is** neither new things nor new words.

Mehrfaches Prädikatsnomen:

6. Now Science I like, but "Industry" **is** dust and ashes to me. — 7. In antiquity the commonwealth **was** Church and State in one.

Prädikat vorangestellt:

8. All these **things** (poet, Samaritan, preacher, parson) **was** George Herbert.

Ist es zweifelhaft oder gleichgültig, was Subjekt ist, was Prädikat, so ist die Sprache geneigt, das Voranstehende für das Subjekt zu halten:

9. The result **is** abnormally long **hours** in school and compulsory **games** that end in general "staleness". — 10. The chief curse **is** **taxes**. — 11. What we want **is** **orders**. — 12. What the Revolution preached **was** the Rights of man. — 13. The local authority in police burghs **is** the police **commissioners**.

to be friends

aus (ursprünglicher) Zusammenziehung entstanden:

14. I do not think that I could really **be friends with** any one who did not love Charles Lamb. — 15. The king of Borva had by this time **become excellent friends** with the young stranger.

β) Kollektiva.

Je nachdem Kollektiva als geschlossene Einheit, Gesamtheit oder als Einzelwesen, Einzelsachen vorschweben, tritt das Verbum in den Singular oder Plural.

Zu den Kollektiven sind in beschränktem Sinne auch einige Pronomina, eigentliche wie uneigentliche, zu rechnen.

Im einzelnen sind folgende Gesichtspunkte zu beachten:

1. Nicht alle Kollektiva gestatten eine doppelte Behandlung. Singular oder Plural des Verbums können durch die gebrauchsmäßige Bedeutung des Sammelnamens wie durch den ganzen Inhalt der Aussage geboten sein.
2. Wo ein Zwang zur Unterscheidung nicht vorliegt, oder wo sie gleichgültig ist, überwiegt die pluralische Auffassung, besonders da, wo bei partitivem Verhältnis das (hinzugefügte oder vorschwebende) Ganze pluralische Form hat.

3. Die Auffassung kann innerhalb desselben Gedankenganges, ja desselben Satzes wechseln, auch rein „persönlich“ sein.
4. Die Übereinstimmung erstreckt sich nicht immer auch auf die (attributiv oder prädikativ gebrauchten) Fürwörter.

Vorbemerkung.

Die Fülle der Möglichkeiten ist so groß, daß nur einige besonders charakteristische Fälle angeführt werden.

Eine Scheidung in geschlechtliche und geschlechtslose Kollektiva ist streng nicht durchzuführen. — Die Ordnung ist alphabetisch.

aa) Nominale Kollektiva.

Geschlechtlich.

1. Our aristocracy marry American wives, and their coachmen are giving place to American-trained drivers of American-built automobiles. — 2. The Admiralty are giving special attention to the improvement of the Naval Air Service, the importance of which has been emphasized by the recent manœuvres. — The Admiralty itself have practically the whole control. (Blue Book.) — 3. Under the common law of England and, I believe, under the Roman Dutch law of South Africa, the civil authority have the right and power to call upon civilians and soldiers also to come to their aid in an emergency. — 4. The Board of Agriculture for Scotland have published an interesting leaflet on the formation, maintenance, and use of Timothy meadows. — 5. A small body of sepoys was raised at Madras after the example set by the French, for the defence of that settlement. — 6. Here again they appeal not to their own feelings, but to the judgment of that vague class who are supposed to know about such things. — But this class of Americans is necessarily limited. — We believe that the better class of publishing house are wise in their adherence to the no-puff principle. — 7. All Souls' College, Oxford, have given their Research fellowship to a Professor in University College, London. — It would be a grievous mistake to suppose that the College of Cardinals has exercised a greater dominion over the public mind of Europe than the order of Saint Francis. — 8. A company of people were coming in at the gate. — The company was large and merry. — 9. The High Court have found that the magistrate's order to this effect was amply justified. — 10. The vast crowd were basking in a sweet enjoyment. — Your fireworks won't go off while the crowd is around. — 11. The imperial family were to be bought off with the Milanese. — While S. Johnson was thus irregularly educating himself, his family was sinking into hopeless poverty. — 12. Hazlitt has this interesting remark: "When a whole generation read, they will read none but contemporary productions." — A new generation of public servants rises up. — 13. The Government shrinks from putting their measures to the test of an election, while the dwindling majorities of their candidates warn them that elections are perilous. — The Government is now waiting for the next move of the men's representatives. — Gleich darauf in demselben Bericht: The Government have been genuinely desirous of effecting a settlement. They negotiated at length with the Trades Federation, and made what the Government regards as substantial concessions to the railwaymen. — Do the Government really expect the country to regard this travesty of legislation seriously? Do they really take their own bill seriously themselves? — The Government hopes to confine the strike to the Transvaal, and are credited with having the situation well in hand. — 14. Like many another clever lawyer, Mr. Asquith still thinks the large

jury he now addresses **are fools** and blind, and that **this jury does** not see through Mr. Asquith's tricks and dodges to gain a verdict. — 15. That the **mass of the nation desire** such a control, in some shape or another seems to be clear. — The great **mass of Church people** do not trouble **themselves** about the utterances of the Bishop of Hereford and his handful of admirers. — Whether we like it or not, **the mass of men** always and everywhere is conservative. — 16. **The multitude**, unacquainted with the best models, **are** captivated by whatever stuns and dazzles **them**. — 17. These motions do propose the creation of genuine constitutional guarantees against the mischiefs of which **the whole German nation** have been complaining. — Liberty inheres in some sensible object; and every **nation** has formed to **itself** some favourite point, which by way of eminence becomes the criterion of **their** happiness. — Never before, perhaps, **have the nation** felt **themselves** so surely and so closely in sympathy with the Queen as **they** do at the present time. Not only do **they** know that she shares with them the common burden . . . — 18. **The Independent party** was equally odious to the Roman Catholics of Ireland, and to the Presbyterians of Scotland. — **The party** make noise enough. — Let us see how the Conservative **Party** interprets this Constitutional idea when **they** are in power? — Gleich darauf sagt derselbe Redner (Lloyd George): This is how **the Tory Party** interpret the doctrine of the mandate when **they** are in power. — So long as a Government represents one **party** only, it is natural for the other **party** to do all that is in **its** power to turn it out of office. — Under our present Two-Party system, **the Labour Party** is outside the Constitution altogether. **It** is the fifth wheel to the coach. **Its** only hope is to bargain with one of the two official parties—to offer support in return for concessions; that is to say, to agree to vote for Bills in which **they** do not believe on condition **they** are assisted with Bills in which **they** do believe—not highly moral business methods. — **The Labour Party** have introduced two ambitious Bills, which are in the nature of propaganda. — No member of Congress or party can evade or avoid **his** or **their** own individual or party share of responsibility. — In demselben Artikel liest man: **The Irish Party** represents constituencies . . . ; **have** supported Budgets which **they** abhorred . . . ; **are** a pack of scoundrels . . . ; **is** anything like . . . ; the only English **Party** that **promises** . . . ; **the party** . . . labelled **itself** . . . — 19. But it is no doubt true that **the English people** are slow to appreciate the significance of an abstract theory or a general phrase. — **It** is **the people** at this time who **stand** in need of reformation, not the government. — Such, Sir, was once the disposition of a **people** who now **surround** your throne with reproaches and complaints. — **No people** of a great nationality **give up** their language in a foreign country so easily as Germans. — From my heart I thank my beloved **people**. May God bless **them**. — Behind the men of letters, the artists, the musicians, the economists, and the historians, **lies the people**. — **It** is **the people** who **make** the new work possible. — **A people** gets what it **deserves**, or a little more, what it is fit for. — 20. **The police** in this country is not, like the Navy or the Army, a single force, subject to the authority of a single chief or board. — Where **are** the police? — 21. **The population** of this country is not allowed to spend **their** income, or at least **are** only allowed to spend a portion of it, on **themselves**. — 22. **The British public** is not seen at **its** best when **it** is enjoying a holiday in a foreign country, nor when **it** is making excursions into the realm of imaginative literature. — The author of "the Story of Oxford" . . . writes for a **public** that **are strangers** to Oxford ways and phrases. — **The public** are beginning to learn what real good work is, and, by Jove, don't **they** pay for it, too? — **It** is all rot, **the public** care nothing for our speeches . . . What the public desire **The British public** is

not going to demand anything of the kind. ('Times' in demselben Artikel.) — 23. The Irish Episcopalian **youth** are mainly drawn off to Trinity College. — "The Liberal middle-class **youth** of the Germany of those days," says Dr. Brandes, "**was** as unprotected by the law and as much persecuted as **are**, in our days, the Socialistic **youth** of the fourth estate of the same country, or the Liberal **youth** of Russia." — The fact, we believe, is, that **young England**, like a much larger and much more important portion of the public, **are** indignant because **they** have been deceived. — English **youth** have been so educated time out of mind.

Geschlechtslos.

Der Gebrauch zeigt gegenüber den geschlechtlichen Kollektiven keine wesentlichen Unterschiede. Es handelt sich vorwiegend um Maß- und Zahlbestimmungen, beschränkte und unbeschränkte.

1. A very large **percentage** of our pithiest **sayings** are the wit and wisdom of ancient Greece and Rome. — Fully **ninety-four per cent.** (of the negroes) **have** struggled for land and failed, and **half of them** sit in hopeless serfdom. — Thus, in our translation of the Gospel, only **four per cent.** of Latin **words** is found. — Of nearly a hundred ways of forming an adjective by distinctive wordform . . . not more than a **third** are of native origin. — We still possess a hundred **dramas** . . . and of which at least a **half** are excellent. — 2. The **bulk** of the Latin **substantives** are in **-us** or **-a** or **-um**. — 3. The first **class** (of privately printed **books**) do not present many difficulties, the second **class** includes all those volumes . . ., the last **class** is the despair of the bibliographer. — 4. The **fleet** were sitting together like a flight of sea-fowl. — The **fleet** was off the coast of Portugal on the way back to England. — 5. With all their obvious faults the **generality** of American **papers** have one supreme virtue, which could to great advantage be adopted by their English contemporaries. — 6. This latter **group of facts** are the subject of a special branch of physiological inquiry. — It is to be feared that the literary fashions of these post-Augustan times were essentially decadent fashions, the **kind** that have made bad art in every century. — 7. The **majority** of the **narcissi** are April flowerers, and of these there are a **host** of striking **forms**. — 8. Doubtless the **multitude** of **thoughts** which rushed into his (Burke's) mind was such as even he could not easily arrange or express. — Of good stories concerning the late Dean (Hole) there are a **multitude**, many of them doubtless unauthentic. — 9. An **infinite number** of **varieties** lies between limits which are not very far asunder. The specimens which pass those limits on either side, form a very small minority. — The **number** of **presses** was at one time limited. — There are a **number** of **rings** containing locks of Prince Charlie's hair. To the dangers of the traveller there are those attaching to the pedestrian, who fares worse and worse as the **number** of motor or electrically-driven **vehicles** increase. — The Bishop of Madras points out that during the last fifty years a **number** of **strong influences** have greatly modified the attitude of the educated classes towards christianity. — 10. A large **proportion** of our **conceptions**, including all those of much generality, are of this order. — To-day, of course, a **considerable proportion** of the combined **budgets** of Christendom is devoted to military and naval expenditure. — 11. A few happy words and phrases, promoted, for some accidental fitness, to the wider world of letters, are all that reach posterity; the **rest** pass into oblivion with the other perishables of the age. — 12. If there are thus an **infinite variety** of fashions in the

external shapes of our wares, there are a certain **number**—naturally not so many—of **wares** that are new in substance and in form which we have either invented or very much developed. — 13. The **whole** of these debts have been incurred in the construction of productive public works. — The **whole** of these proceedings were so agreeable to Mr. Pecksniff, that he stood with his eyes fixed upon the floor.

ß) Pronominale Kollektiva.

Auch bei einigen — eigentlichen wie uneigentlichen — indefiniten Fürwörtern drängt sich gelegentlich die Vorstellung der Vielheit vor die der (formalen) Einheit.

Das zeigt sich unmittelbar in der pluralischen Form des Prädikats, mittelbar in der ziemlich allgemein beliebten Bezugnahme auf den Kollektivbegriff durch **they**, **their**.

Bem. Die betr. Kollektiva sind männlich und weiblich, sodaß nur durch die Verwendung von **they** und **their** der lästige Zwang, durch *he*, *his*; *she*, *her* genauere Angaben zu machen, fortfällt.

1. "I never congratulate **anybody**," she said, shaking her head — "I'll know **them**." — The present trustees are the last people whom **any one** in **their** senses would consult collectively. — We ourselves cannot imagine **any one** in **their** senses inviting Mr. Keir Hardie (the Socialist) to a garden party, but that, of course, is a matter of opinion. — 2. **Each** lived **their** own life on amicable terms, but somewhat apart from each other. — The chief obstacle which stands in the way of united action is the inability of Churchmen and Nonconformists to see that **each have** grievances, and to make allowances for each other's points of view ("*have*" ist nicht Konjunktiv!) — **They each** leave out the defects of the side **he** advocates. — 3. **Every one** tells me exactly what **they** have done wrong; and that without knowing it **themselves**. — If **everybody** spelled as **they** pleased we should still be able to understand each other's books, articles and letters. — It is true that when perspective was first discovered, **everybody** amused **themselves** with it. — **Every one** was eating **their** best, and drinking **their** worst. — When Johnson laughed, **everybody** thought **themselves** warranted to roar. — 4. **Nobody** ever put so much of **themselves** into **their** work. — **Nobody** could like Mrs. Gaythorne better than **they** liked you. — 5. **Neither** of these prelates were very high churchmen. — How little **have** either of these felt Byron's vital influence! — 6. What **none** of **them** do is to tell you how **they** got **their** point of view. — 7. It will be noticed that **no one** is stated in the above message to have seen the ex-Sultan with **their** own eyes. — 8. The Fifth-monarchy men prophesy from the Bible, and the Utilitarians from Bentham. The **one** announce that the last of the seals is to be opened, positively, in the year 1860; and the **other** assure us, that "the greatest happiness principle" is to make a heaven of earth, in a still shorter time.

Uneigentliche Indefinita:

9. There's **not** a creature will go near it if **they** can help it. — It will matter little to the **ordinary** reader. **They** will be content to enjoy the excitement of the narrative and not distress **themselves** about its possibility. — A curious superstition prevails in Ireland that **any young person** upon first hearing the cuckoo will find a hair of the colour of **their** sweetheart's adhering to **their** stocking, if **they** will at once take off **their** left

boot and examine carefully. — **Every old man** now recalled the image of her (M. de Stael's) father; and she watched over **their** comforts, and wept over **their** sufferings, with a painful intenseness of sympathy.

Vgl.: Mr. and Mrs. Fezziwig took their stations, one on either side the door, and shaking hands with **every person** individually as **he or she** went out, wished **him or her** a Merry Christmas.

b) Das Subjekt im Plural.

Vorbem. Die Grenze zwischen pluralischem und mehrfachem Subjekt kann und braucht nicht streng beachtet zu werden. Betr. Numerus des Prädikats, wenn es pluralischem Subjekt vorangeht, s. „*Mehrere Subjekte*“ 6*.

Die Abweichungen von der „natürlichen“ Übereinstimmung sind zum größten Teil durch den Sinn geboten; der Gebrauch ist weniger schwankend als beim singularischen Subjekt.

Die „formale“ Übereinstimmung kann häufig durch das Hinzudenken eines singularischen Subjekts herbeigeführt werden, zu dem dann das vorhandene Subjekt im appositionellen Verhältnis steht.

a) Namen, Titel, Bezeichnungen verschiedener Art:

1. **The United States** was the first country to prohibit the sale of alcohol, and it has prided **itself** on being in the forefront of similar social legislation. — 2. **The United States** will make use of commercial union with Canada to extend **her** control and influence over the Dominion. — 3. **The Estates-General** declared **itself** to be the National Assembly . . . und gleich darauf: and when **the Estates-General** was not sitting *Désiré* wandered aimlessly about the narrow, evil-smelling streets. — 4. Yesterday **the Eumenides** of *Aeschylus* was performed in the original Greek by members of Cambridge University, at the New Theatre, Cambridge. — 5. **The „Arabian Nights“** is a realistic book. — 6. **The Times** does not claim for **their** distinguished contributor that nice adjustment of the scales . . . — 7. The work which **Dr. Barnardo's Homes** is doing day by day, hour by hour, is to go out and save children; gleich darauf dasselbe Subjekt mit 'have admitted'. — 8. **Halliday brothers** becomes bankrupt. — 9. In the *National Review* **Three Stars** has been interviewing Shakespeare in the Elysian Fields. (*Three Stars* ist „nom de plume“.)

ß) Summen, Zeit- und Raumabschnitte:

1. **The fifty miles** was covered by the winner in four hours, fourteen minutes, forty-five seconds, and this in blazing August weather. — 2. **Is ten minutes** sufficient for a sermon? asks *The Daily Mail*. In our opinion one requires more sleep than this in these strenuous days. (Punch.) — 3. Nearly **thirty shillings** was paid for a pound of tea in 1710.

Beim Rechnen;

4. How do we know that **twice two** always makes four? Not by experience. — 5. Three times three is nine; twice two is four. — Three and three are (is) six.

γ) Bruchzahlen

meist singularisch:

1. **Nine hundred and ninety-nine thousandths**, at least, of the ordinary discourse of mankind consists of propositions. — 2. **Two-thirds** of the Cape to Cairo line **has** been built. — 3. **Two-thirds** of the Unionist press criticizes his speech unfavourably. — 4. **Two-thirds** of the entire contents are either drama or fiction, and over **three-fourths** have to do with literature.

δ) Abstrakta auf . . . ics.

Bei den meisten schwankt der Gebrauch; s. S. 69.

1. **The mathematics** never puzzled me, that I can say; but **they** never satisfied me. — 2. To Spencer, also, as many of his whilome opponents are now learning, **ethics** was the crown of all human thought. — 3. **Phonetics** is still regarded by the majority of educated persons as either a fad, or a fraud, possibly a pious one. — 4. From Locke's time downwards, our **whole Metaphysics** have been physical; not a spiritual Philosophy, but a material one. — 5. History is past Politics, and **Politics** are present History. — Without History, **Politics** has no root; without Politics, History has no fruit. — Take it from me, my friend, **politics** is a degrading game. There is no honour, no generosity, no gratitude in it from beginning to end. — Very naturally, since **English politics** are the great masterpiece of the Lie, its byeways are also strewn with lies.

ε) Die pluralische Form wird als solche nicht (oder nicht mehr) erkannt:

1. **The witan** was essentially an aristocratic body. — 2. **The saturnalia** holds its course. — 3. The ridiculous **paraphernalia** of the Primrose League appeals to the ignorance and frivolous vanities of women.

Einzelfälle:

1. I come now to the figures. The first figures I have to deal with is **Customs and Excise**, and here the first difficulty is to estimate the receipts from the duty on spirits. (*"Customs and Excise"* bilden ein *"item"* im Budget.) — 2. They (the Lords) claim that four or five **by-elections won and lost** over other issues gives them the power to set aside the verdict of the General Election on these great Bills. (Der Gewinn — Verlust von Nachwahlen schwebt als Subjekt vor.) — 3. For our own part, we are inclined to the opinion that sheer **bad manners** was at the root of the trouble. — Vgl. This is bad manners, hard lines. — 4. **Brave man after brave man** has fallen a victim to the spirit of daring that has made flight possible, and for every fallen aviator two have always been found to fill the breach. — 5. **More than one** of the previous meetings of this Association have been marked in the annals of Modern Language Study by a bright particular star. — Burns died in the prime of his manhood, miserable and neglected; and yet already a brave mausoleum shines over his dust, and **more than one** splendid monument has been reared in other places to his fame.

Mehrere Subjekte.

Die Subjekte können gleichwertig, für sich selbständig, nebengeordnet sein, aber auch synonym, einen Gesamtbegriff nur variierend; sie können endlich einander steigern oder ergänzen.

Die Form kann, was Satzstellung und Verknüpfung betrifft, sehr verschieden sein, sodaß ein festes Gesetz selbst für die einzelnen Gruppen nicht aufgestellt werden kann.

Die Gruppen selbst gehen leicht ineinander über.

a) Die Subjekte stehen vor dem Prädikat.

α) Gleichwertige, selbständige Einzelsubjekte erfordern, ob singularisch oder pluralisch, das gemeinsame Prädikat im Plural.

Bem. Die folgenden Sätze sind nach der Form des Subjekts geordnet.

1. Such a **display** of wickedness, naked, yet not ashamed, such cool, judicious, scientific **atrocities**, **seem** rather to belong to a fiend than to the most depraved of men. — 2. The local and national history of France, Germany, and Italy are fully represented, and the history of the Papacy and of French Protestantism form an important part of the collection. — 3. The vigour and the strength of the Proclamation are, indeed, its most conspicuous and most welcome characteristics. — 4. That metric faculty and variety are what never desert Mr. Swinburne throughout the book. — 5. Neither Ministers nor the House are in a mood to indulge in heroic prolongation of the Session, as were the use and wont when Mr. Gladstone drove the State coach. — 6. A village school where reading and writing were taught. — 7. It is not collecting and classifying alone that represent the highest phase of natural history study. — 8. Our age has evolved an almost incredible anomaly, a new vice. It is the vice of reading the casual, the foolish, the trivial, without knowing them to be casual, trivial and foolish. (Nur "them" läßt die Auffassung erkennen.) — 9. Always to be right, always to trample forward, and never to doubt, are not these the great qualities with which dulness takes the lead in the world? — 10. To dwell in paradise, to be blessed with direct communings with the Eternal, are indeed not ours. — 11. To enter into a treaty and to keep one are two different things. — 12. The time is ripe for a new dispensation, although when and how it is to come are beyond the power of the unprophetic to foresee. — 13. Whatever character I may possess and whatever in the way of writing I may have accomplished have been founded on a deep and inquiring love of human nature in life and in literature. — 14. What they shall be paid, what powers they shall enjoy, whether they are to have any influence on decisions of great moment to the women of England, depend entirely on the discretion of Ministers responsible to a Parliament representing men alone.

Verschiedenartige gleichwertige Subjekte durch pronominales Subjekt zusammengefaßt:

15. Such a prince as our Henry the Fifth would have been the idol of the North. The follies of his youth, the selfish and desolating ambition of his manhood, the Lollards roasted at slow fires, the prisoners massacred on the field of battle, the expiring lease of priestcraft renewed for another century, the dreadful legacy of a causeless and hopeless war, bequeathed to a people who had no interest in its event, everything is forgotten, but the victory of Agincourt!

β) Es schwebt ein singularischer Gesamtbegriff vor, dessen Teile und Schattierungen (Synonyma) durch (singularische) Einzelsubjekte angegeben werden.

Das Prädikat steht meist im Singular.

1. It is his (Goldsmith's) **sunny wit and sweet heart** which clarifies his style; his lovable humour draws for us perpetual refreshment from the vicissitudes of a life as hard as ever fell to struggling man. — 2. **The naming** of the parts of a flower and **the defining** of botanical terms too often **passes** for botany. — 3. Contemporary literature is the breath of civilised life, and those who sincerely think and write, the salt of the social body. **To mumble** over the past, **to live on the classics**, however splendid, is senility. — 4. No one will have the hardihood to contend that . . . our **heart and genius** is in war. — 5. In connection with the situation in South-Eastern Europe the **futility and collapse** of the Christian gospel **is** hatefully apparent. — 6. The tumult and the shouting **dies**. (Kipling, *The Recessional*.) — 7. The **passion and pity**, which is not in the book, **was** supplied by the readers of the time. — 8. Still, **reason and experience** **does** move: "*E pur si muove*," even in the most belated countries.

Der Plural würde einen nicht gewollten Sinn ergeben oder — Unsinn:

9. The Latin races are less inclined to changes of creed than the Anglo-Saxon; three hundred religions and only one **sauce** still **holds** good for the Anglo-Saxons. — 10. But **the Empire and its demands** is a subject on which Lord Rosebery is always serious. — 11. A willing and useful worker in some homestead where the **wife and mother** has toiled single-handed for many a long year. . . . — 12. **Many a good man and many an evil one** **has** been made bankrupt with results far from comfortable to himself. — 13. **Every single man and woman who** sits in the theatre on the first night is prepared to wager anything from a shilling to ten pounds before the curtain rises that there will be one more failure. — 14. In Italy **the rise and decline of art** **was** ever closely associated with the prosperity and adversity of the powerful city states. — 15. **Not the external and physical** alone **is** now managed by machinery, but the internal and spiritual also. — 16. The **paradox and scandal** of the world is that for 15 centuries . . . European history has been a tale of blood.

γ) Jedes **einzelne** Subjekt soll hervortreten oder eins derselben besonders stark.

Bem. Es handelt sich meistens um rhetorische Zwecke; daher ist die Verknüpfung vielfach asyndetisch. — Die Stellung eines pluralischen Subjekts unmittelbar vor dem singularischen Prädikat wird vermieden.

1. **To know him** (the Great Being), **to serve him**, **to enjoy him**, was with them (the Puritans) the great end of existence. — 2. **Impatience of restraint, unwillingness to study, is** never the way to begin. — 3. The fire which glows in Macaulay's history, the intense patriotic feeling, the love of certain moral qualities, **is** not altogether of the highest kind. — 4. All my **property, all my furniture** **is** destroyed. — 5. **Seriousness, character** **was** the foundation of things with him (Gray). — 6. That **pomp** of language, that full and tuneful diction, that **felicitousness** in the choice and exquisiteness in the collocation of words, which to prosaic writers seem artificial, **is** nothing else but the mere habit and way of a lofty intellect. — 7. The **whole book, and every component part of it, is** on a gigantic scale.

every,

nur singularisch, läßt diese Auffassung schärfer erkennen:

8. **Every business, sport, and age has** in fact a language of its own: and these are constantly changing. — 9. But what I do think is unfair, and what is particularly irritating to *me*, is that **everybody, even Papa and Mamma, takes** it for granted that Romeo was really in love with Juliet, and had given up all thoughts of me.

δ) Haupt- und Nebensubjekt.

Das (singularische) Sinnsubjekt beherrscht die ihm formal neben-, logisch untergeordneten Subjekte. — Das Prädikat steht im Singular.

1. The **manner as well as the plan** of the Divine Comedy is carefully imitated. — 2. New York as well as New England **was** restless for *Boz* to appear. — 3. **Selden as well as other writers** on the same topics, **confounds** the indigenous gods of the Greeks with those which they imported from the Babylonians. — 4. In Australia **every woman, as well as every man**, over twenty-one **has** a vote, and the Australian woman uses it with marked effect. — 5. **The conquest** of the air, **like** all the conquests that man has made over the elements, **is** taking a costly toll of valuable life. — 6. Tennyson fulfilled all the best qualifications of a true national poet, and it has been well said that **not only his work but his life** was of inestimable value to the whole of the English-speaking world. — 7. **Not only dramatic, but all, poetry** is founded on illusion. — 8. **Man, no less than the lower forms of life**, is a product of the evolutionary process. — 9. For 4 years **one of these books, if not both of them**, has been unobtainable for love or money.

ε) Disjunktiv oder kopulativ?

Werden mehrere, nur singularische Subjekte durch (n)either . . . (n)or, or getrennt, so schwankt der Gebrauch, besonders bei *neither . . . nor*, da durch die Verneinung der Trennung auch eine Betonung der Gesamtheit herbeigeführt werden kann: das Disjunktive wird zum Kopulativen. Doch kann es sich auch um eine Steigerung handeln.

1. I do not think **either Montaigne or Johnson were** good judges. — 2. To the artist **neither the pleasant nor the unpleasant, the moral nor the clean, profit** anything in themselves. — 3. But can they really think that Homer, **or Pindar, or Shakespeare, or Dryden, or Walter Scott, were** accustomed to aim at diction for its own sake? — 4. To the eye of a Smith, a Hume, or a Constant, all is well that works quietly. **An Order of Ignatius Loyola, a Presbyterianism of John Knox, a Wickliffe, or a Henry the Eighth, are** simply so many mechanical phenomena, caused or causing. — 5. If a baker, a mason, or a waggoner attracted notice by **his** diligence and sobriety, **he was** in all probability one of Oliver's old soldiers. — 6. **Neither Mr. Herbert Gladstone nor Mr. Austen Chamberlain has made for himself** anything like the position occupied by **their** distinguished fathers. — 7. **Neither Beaconsfield nor Littré spared himself** intellectual worry. — 8. In order to mark this change precisely, **a word or two is needed**.

b) Die Subjekte folgen dem Prädikat.

Die „natürliche“ Übereinstimmung unterbleibt, wenn Zahl und Form der Subjekte einstweilen noch unbestimmt vorschweben.

Gelegentlich betrifft der formale Widerspruch auch Ein Subjekt im Plural. Im übrigen gelten die im Vorigen aufgestellten Gesichtspunkte.

Bem. 'It is' ist rein formelhaft geworden, ebenso 'there is', soweit es nicht begrifflich ist (s. S. 188).

1. **It is the book and its success that are** mysterious. (Rob. Crusoe.) — 2. In the same ranks **was found** the whole **body** of Protestant **Nonconformists**, and **most** of those **members** of the Established Church who still adhered to the Calvinistic opinions which . . . — 3. But such **was** the **extravagance**, **dishonesty**, and **incapacity** of those who had succeeded to his (Cromwell's) authority that his liberality proved worse than useless. — 4. Seldom, if ever, **has** the poignant **tragedy** of lonely motherhood, its unheeded **sacrifices**, its unrealised **ideals**, been more sympathetically portrayed. — 5. By the phrase "sound change" **is meant those changes** in pronunciation which **take place** in every language in the course of time. — 6. People are never tired of talking of Byron's pose, of Byron's Byronism, by which **is meant** his **vanity**, his **affectations**, his **insincerities**. — 7. **There was**, no doubt, **madness** and **wickedness** on both sides. — 8. At all Scottish and American universities, we may rejoice that **there is** always **found** a large **number** of the most distinguished **students**, who, figuratively speaking, cultivate knowledge upon a little oatmeal, earning money between terms to pay their way. — 9. But turn to the Golden Treasury, you who would learn the way of excellence, for there you shall see that, where simplicity is, **there is strength** and **grace** and **loveliness**. — 10. But has man succeeded? — **Witness** the **hatred** between the classes; **witness** the stifled cries from beneath, all the **threats** and **revolutions**. **Witness** the **complaints** of the unemployed: **witness** **emigration**! (Vgl. S. 190.) — 11. The English literary genius seems incapable of large views and the study of world movements of thought. **Witness** the innumerable **handbooks**, **monographs**, and **period studies** in English thought, all of which may be very good, but they are no substitutes for one great book.

Übereinstimmung der Person.

Bei der geringen Zahl verbaler Unterscheidungsformen (die für den Plural überhaupt fehlen) beschränkt sich die Übereinstimmung auf wenige Fälle.

a) Das Subjekt besteht aus mehreren persönlichen Fürwörtern im Singular: das Verbum folgt im Plural.

1. Harry, I am sure, will excuse you for talking, in your extreme friendliness, of matters that **he and I have** not yet thought fit do discuss. — 2. **You and he supply** the money, the princess the name, and I the energy, the skillfulness, and the estimable cause. — 3. Everybody from that moment developed into a sort of nascent conflagration for which **neither you nor I** are responsible. — 4. I am very glad to have your opinion: but **you and I** are the last people in the world to know whether a play will succeed or not. — 5. Varney bowed low, and made no other answer, but he said to himself, "She has brought me to the crisis—she or I are lost. It is now decided—**She or I must** perish." — Pronomen und Nomen: 6. Mr. Asquith—Let us see exactly what it is. **I and my colleagues**, he says, are selling our convictions.

b) Ein durch **who** als Subjekt eingeführter Attributsatz folgt der Person des (zu bestimmenden) Substantivs; vgl. Ersparung des Subjekts, S. 183.

1. As for **you**, Joseph, **who** do your wicked deeds in such confoundedly holy ways, you are as drunk as you can stand. — 2. Can even I believe that you would choose a dowerless girl—**you who**, in **your** very confidence with her, weigh everything by Gain? — 3. I am a **man that has** had ill-fortune all my life through.

c) Die Auffassung, wer die vorschwebende Person ist, wird mittelbar an persönlichen und besitzanzeigenden Fürwörtern in andern Funktionen erkannt:

1. **The rest of us** have to content ourselves with the language as it is and endeavour to say some portion of what we think by the means it provides. The poet, however, is in a different case. — 2. **Most of us** have some little system of **our** own. — 3. **Every one of us** is sincere when alone with **our** own soul, because then we have nothing to fear. — 4. **Don't any unfair ones among you** suppose that because I'm a woman I don't understand the difference between bad goings-on and good. — 5. Unfortunate must **those of us** count ourselves who must perforce decide that the "Christmas Carol" is not fact but a beautiful myth. — 6. Until after the war of 1870 **we** were the only nation **who** sent **our** middle and lower classes abroad.

D. Das Attribut.

Vorbem. Für die Syntax des Attributs im Satz wird zunächst auf den Teil der Wortlehre verwiesen, wo vom Adjektiv und seiner Stellung die Rede ist. Die dort gefundenen Gesetze verlangen vom Standpunkt des Satzes aus eine Ergänzung bzw. Bestätigung, sodaß die früheren Belege vielfach herangezogen werden können.

Das Attribut tritt als Adjektiv, Substantiv, Adverb und Satz auf.

Jedes Attribut ist ursprünglich Prädikat. Das einmalig oder „ad hoc“ Ausgesagte (Prädizierte) wird dem Subjekt mehr oder weniger dauernd „attribuiert“, kann auch mit ihm zu einem selbständigen neuen Begriff „zusammengesetzt“ werden. Zwischen diesen beiden Grenzen liegen verschiedene Bedeutungsstufen ergänzender oder erweiternder Natur, für welche besondere Formen in Sprache oder Schrift nicht in ausreichendem Maße vorhanden sind.

I. Das Attribut als Adjektiv.

Vorbem. Zum Adjektiv werden einstweilen auch die adjektivisch gebrauchten Partizipien gerechnet. Diese finden erst eine besondere Berücksichtigung bei der Betrachtung des prädikativen Adjektivs (b).

a) Das attributivische Adjektiv,

α) nebengeordnet.

Adjektiv und Substantiv haben gleichen Nachdruck.

1. **Big words** seldom go with **good deeds**. — 2. **Fine feathers** make **fine birds**. — 3. The signing of Peace has been received in **comparative silence** by the **established poets**. — 4. Walpole had long been **absolute Dictator** of England, and he now ruled alone. His financial ability gave him the means of **unlimited bribery**; his decisive majority he owned like a herd of **purchased cattle**. — 5. You remember Horace Walpole's account of the death of George II.: it might be **the cynically amused description** of the **ridiculous end** of a **notoriously ridiculous shopkeeper** in his neighbourhood. — 6. A foregone conclusion. The chosen people u. ä.

Die Bedeutung des häufigsten Attributs, des bestimmten Artikels, ist S. 81 fg. erörtert; fehlt er vor Adjektiv + Substantiv, so erscheinen diese enger zusammengehörig, als Gesamtbegriff — besonders häufig bei Eigennamen:

1. Why (ask the experts) do the German professors and educated professional class hate us? Surely they ought to sympathise with **enlightened, progressive England**. — 2. This is the strong, simple, and honest policy, and no one could carry it out better than **quiet, courteous, immovable Sir Edward Grey**. (Summer 1911.) — 3. The tribesmen fled before a niggard nature, and before **fiercer man**. — 4. Nevertheless, to others besides Sir William Harcourt, **lamp-post like Lord Hugh** recalls the appearance of his father (Lord Salisbury) at the same age.

In Apposition:

5. For concerning Wordsworth posterity—**relentless judge** of false and true, of base and beautiful,—has spoken with no uncertain voice. — 6. **Arbuthnot, famous author of John Bull**, an ironic master only less than Swift, came also to the summons. — 7. **The pious Cranmer** voted for that act; **the pious Latimer** preached for it; **the pious Edward** returned thanks for it; and all the pious Lords of the council together exhorted their victim to what they were pleased facetiously to call "the quiet and patient suffering of justice." — 8. "To be or not to be" quoth **the discursive Hamlet**, but he did not for an instant realise what is meant by "not to be." Nor do I. Do you?

β) übergeordnet.

Der Zusammenhang oder der (tatsächliche) Gebrauch verleiht dem Adjektiv die größere Bedeutung; es enthält den neuen Gedanken, ist betont.

Die schriftliche Darstellung verfügt zur Bezeichnung dieser Betonung über einige graphische Mittel oder greift wie die Sprache zu syntaktisch-stilistischen.

Graphische Mittel:

1. "If my government is made to stand," said Cromwell, "it has nothing to fear from **PAPER SHOT**." He said true. No **GOOD** government will ever be battered by **paper shot**. — 2. Referring to this subject *The Globe*

remarks:—"It is nothing less than scandalous that the myrmidons of Mr. George should have been suffered to practise this abominable blackmail and both an apology and **liberal compensation** are due to their victims." We fear, however, that they will only get **Liberal compensation**. (Punch.) — (Liberal im politischen Sinn.) — 3. The upshot of this whole process may be read in brief in the huge, progressive, and general decline of the death-rate. In face of that massive and incontrovertible fact, to talk of *increasing* misery is more than ridiculous. — 4. Mr. Asquith appeals to the memory of Parnell. Parnell's shade should rise in contempt of him. How he would have scorned this flexible **strongman** whom he would have used with even less regard than Mr. Redmond.

Syntaktisch-stilistische Mittel.

αα) Wiederholung.

1. And an author, a **modern author**, who is guilty of all these sins of commission and omission must not expect affection from the warm heart of Scotia. — 2. To the Tories he (J. Chamberlain) was the worst of the Liberals, while to the **Liberals, the decent ones**, he was worse than any Tory. — 3. It is a **trifle**, and not a very **successful trifle**. — 4. And at the same time, in spite of the wishes of those very Parliaments, the **laws—the unjust and wicked laws**—which were in force against the Papists, had not been carried into execution. — 5. No one knows better than we English the **heavy, heavy cost** of Imperialism. — 6. The old house stood by the silent country road, secluded by many a **long, long mile**, and yet again secluded within the great walls of the garden.

ββ) Nachstellung.

1. Each city begot an immortal friendship, an immortal play, and a **love—well, not immortal**. He (Schiller) left souvenirs of his heart wherever he stayed. — 2. It happens that the world is so constituted that the man who avoids **frauds pious** is most likely to avoid **frauds impious** too. — 3. Cloten is an arrogant fool, Osric a foppish fool, Ajax a savage fool; but Nicias is, as Thersites says of Patroclus, a **fool positive**. — 4. Even before the last years of **Victoria, the great, the good, and the eminently respectable**, the whole trend of ideas in this country was in the direction of a wider outlook and a saner and more catholic judgment. — Roosevelt, the Irrepressible. (Überschrift.)

Zuweilen handelt es sich dabei um bewußtes Anlehnen an älteres Sprachgut, um dem Durchschnittsleser geläufige Zitate: auch können rhythmische Gründe die Nachstellung „schwerer“ Adjektiva wünschenswert machen:

5. The perfect ease of his manner bespoke a practised familiarity with the **position difficult**. — 6. There is Hinduism, **the faith meditative, the faith militant**. — 7. Lassalle might have interspersed his legal contests on behalf of Countess Hatzfeldt with **imprisonments many**, by reason of sedition. — 8. Dumas père began with plays, and had but to touch a drama to succeed; for he was a playwright to the marrow. He was a **romancer miraculous**. — 9. It has been my privilege on occasion to discuss Anglo-German naval policy with Von Tirpitz. He is **suavity and frankness incarnate**. — 10. English undefiled; a mind (minds) diseased; the City Beautiful.

γ) untergeordnet

und unbetont, mit Eigennamen zu einem Begriff verschmolzen:
St. Louis, Great Yarmouth, Little Britain, Little John.

b) Das prädikativische Adjektiv und Partizip.

Entsprechend der ursprünglichen Stellung des Prädikats wird das prädikativische Adjektiv (Partizip) zunächst hinter dem Substantiv zu suchen sein. Daß es auch an die Spitze des Satzes treten kann, ist schon bei der „Stellung des Prädikats“ festgestellt worden.

In jedem Falle handelt es sich um einen unentwickelten oder gekürzten Satz.

α) Adjektiv:

1. **The King dead**—and the Prince a slave to love—to the idle hours of an unprofitable love! It was a fine vision. — **A man dead** is a **man dead**; and there is an end of the matter. (Ist einer erstmal tot, so ist er eben tot.) — 2. We have had great actors. We have good **actors not a few** at the present moment. — 3. Lavender returned to town **more in love** than ever; and soon the news of his engagement was spread abroad—he **nothing loth**.

Besonders häufig ist der Anschluß solcher Wortgruppen an den Hauptsatz durch **with**; vgl. β.

4. Going about the Country **with your Eyes open**. (Büchertitel.) — 5. So here (in *Facts and Comments*) we have the last casual, intimate talk of Herbert Spencer: the talk of a man **with the day's impressions vivid** in his mind. — 6. In Überschriften, Ausrufen, Plakaten: Whiskey hot! — Dinner ready. — Hearts Courageous.—Books Beautiful. — The Home Beautiful. (*“How your home is made beautiful.”*)

In Spitzenstellung mit logischem Einschlag:

7. **Few in number**, the **British troops** fought with the greatest pertinacity. — 8. **Insane** he is enslaved, **sane** is he not free? — 9. **Ardent** and **intrepid** on the field of battle, Monmouth was everywhere else effeminate and irresolute.

β) Partizip.

1. Partizip.

Dazu können auch die Adjektiva auf . . . **ant** und . . . **ent** gerechnet werden.

1. The policy of our successors was different. Their specific was to despoil churches and plunder landlords, and what has been the result? **Sedition rampant**, treason thinly veiled, and whenever a vacancy occurs in the representation a candidate is returned pledged to the disruption of the realm. — 2. **No man living** is better qualified to write of the *Empire of Business* than Mr. Carnegie, and **few men**, living or dead, have brought out of a business career so much that is wholly good. — 3. The crowd round a couple

of dogs fighting is a crowd masculine mainly, with an occasional active, compassionate woman. — 4. My lord made a movement as if to throw aside the clothes and rise. "If there be any truth in this—" said he. "Do I look like a man lying?" I interrupted checking him with my hand. — 5. For the time being (= damalig); the debt owing; with drums beating and colours flying.

Das Subjekt ergibt sich aus dem Possessivum des Hauptsatzes:

6. Rejecting all experience, separating themselves from all the great parties, their opinions become singular and forced. — 7. Being for the most part young men, their historian, Mr. D'Israeli, declares war against age, and proclaims that England is alone to be saved by its youth.

Mit Anschluß durch with:

8. With Scotland threatening war, and a naval struggle impending with Holland, it was necessary that the work of the army in Ireland should be done quickly.

Das 2. Partizip

bringt, wenn rein verbal und prädikativisch gebraucht, eine wesentliche Aussage entweder für den besonderen Fall oder unter bestimmten zeitlichen oder (und) kausalen Bedingungen, die einer weiteren genaueren Bezeichnung nicht bedürfen.

1. New Books Received. (Überschrift.) — The list of books received will appear in our next issue. — 2. Every one knows that it is impossible for the most sincere lover of truth to be wholly free from error, that each opinion formed is a mixed product, that we all see through a glass darkly, and that no finite intellect can discover truth absolutely. — 3. The wind, from whatever quarter it blew, carried to England tidings of battles won, fortresses taken, provinces added to the Empire. — 4. Motor-driving, as at present practised, is an incentive to selfishness. Many of the motorists do not care for the results entailed. — 5. It was Bossuet, a Catholic prelate, who said: "Every error is a truth abused." — 6. The great Coal Strike still holds Great Britain in its clutches, and every passing day doubles or even trebles the dangers involved. — 7. I am wretched even at the moment of victory, and I always say that, next to a battle lost, the greatest misery is a battle gained. — 8. We know of no great revolution which might not have been prevented by compromise early and graciously made. — 9. I am, I believe, as strongly attached as any member of this House to the principle of free-trade, rightly understood. — 10. Things printed can never be stopped, Richie. Our Jorian compares them to babies baptized. („Ist etwas erst mal gedruckt usw.") — 11. Glasgow's peculiar claim to regard lies in the perfect equality of the various schools, the humanities not neglected, the sciences appreciated, neither accorded precedence.

Bem. Die drei „absoluten Partizipialsätze“ bilden die Apposition zu „schools“. Etwa = die verschiedenen Fakultäten, wo (so daß) die Geistesw. nicht vernachlässigt, die exakten anerkannt werden, ohne daß die einen vor den andern bevorzugt werden.

Mit Anschluß durch with, without:

12. Mr. Harrison is a Positivist with all things between heaven and earth ordered and labelled in his philosophy. — 13. The great penman

(H. Rochefort) who has just been buried in Paris, **without a prayer said over him**. "made history" as well as a sort of literature. — 14. To be whisked along a highway at racing speed, in self-made dust, **with confused noise and garments soiled to win a prize**, is fatal to all true appreciation of scenery. — 15. The volume was published in folio . . . with a **Preface**, which is here reprinted from that edition, **prefixed**. — 16. England, **with conscription made law**, would no longer offer the conditions under which Parliamentary institutions flourished.

In folgenden Sätzen ist die syntaktische Beziehung unklar oder locker; vgl. 1. Part. 6 u. 7.

17. **Unknown, disappointed, baffled at every turn**, nothing could rob **this incorrigible dreamer** of his Dream. — 18. Byron persists strangely. **Denounced as a corrupter of youth**, **his poetry** is in every school-reader. **Accused of blasphemy**, **he** is quoted by aldermen and local preachers. **Pronounced by critics to be unread**, **he** is republished in richest form. **Remembered as the enemy and outrager of polite society**, **his statue** faces Rotten Row. A hater of London, **his London birthplace** is marked with peculiar care and decoration. **Kept out of the national pantheon**, a recurrent and punctual voice asks, **Why?**

II. Das Attribut als Adverbium.

Adverbia des Ortes und der Zeit können in attributiver oder prädikativer Funktion zu einem Substantiv treten, von dem sie nur durch eigene Bestimmungen getrennt werden können.

Meistens folgen sie ihm; einige wenige können zwischen Pronomen oder Artikel und Substantiv stehen, andere müssen es.

a) Die gewöhnliche Stellung:

1. State your idea as clearly as you may, it will not reproduce your thought in their mind but bring up **something already there**. — 2. The Prussians defended it (Dresden) desperately. The inhabitants of that wealthy and polished capital begged in vain for mercy from **the garrison within**, and from **the besiegers without**. — 3. A word once out flies everywhere. — 4. It is true that the **debates** of both Houses of Parliament **the whole session through**, uniformly tended to the protracted deliberation. How not to do it. — 5. It'll be the end of this wonderful time, of this our **time together**. — 6. **Ay, a bucketful now** saves an ocean in time to come!

b) Die Zwischenstellung.

Bem. Ob sie zu wirklichen Adjektiven geworden sind oder (noch) adverbial empfunden werden, ist belanglos. Entscheidend ist, daß sie nicht nachstehen.

Allgemein gebraucht werden nur *then*, *up*, *down*, *home*, und *above* (the *then* Minister; the *above* remarks) und *off* in: the off(-)side, gelegentlich *almost*, z. B. in: such *almost* masterpieces, s. S. 60.

III. Das Attribut als Substantiv.

a) Vor dem Substantiv,

α) unverändert — mit adjektivischer Funktion:

1. Every other person to whom she (Elizabeth) addressed her speech, or on whom the glance of **her eagle eye** fell, instantly sank on his knee. —
2. The Salvation Army Social Wing Matches are now ready. (Plakat.)

Weitere Belege s. S. 60.

β) verändert — sächsischer Genitiv,

den wir nach seiner Bedeutung und nach der Stellung zum Beziehungswort betrachten.

αα) Die Bedeutung

des sächsischen Genitivs beschränkt sich nicht ausschließlich auf subjektiv-possessive Verhältnisse. Rhythmische wie konstruktivische Rücksichten weisen ihm gelegentlich die Verwendung als 'casus' für objektive Verhältnisse zu.

Auch kann er mit dem Gebrauch unter α) konkurrieren oder im Interesse der Aussprache die 'casus'-Endung fallen lassen.

Betr. Ausdehnung auf Maßbestimmungen, s. die Sätze zu S. 48, β.

1. Not that he (Wordsworth) is a **poet's poet** in the same way as Shelley and Keats—but perhaps none but poets fully realise his greatness. — 2. George Eliot had a **man's education**, and the course of her life brought her into contact with more men than women. — 3. Mme D'Arblay's Diary is, for the most part, written in her earliest and best manner; in true **woman's English**, clear, natural, and lively. — 4. Wide is the gap that yawns between **scholar's English** and **penny-a-liner's English**. Vgl. doctor's-dissertation English. — 5. I have no delusions, I am doing **good hodman's work**, and that is all. — 6. Free Trade in goods must be supplemented by Free Trade in land; **woman's labour** must be curtailed, and **child labour** abolished. — 7. To do **yeoman's service** und **yeoman service**. (Sibilians!)

Prädikativisch:

8. It might not be wise to inquire too curiously whether he (Swinburne) loved **the sea** because it was **England's** or England for the sake of her sea. — 9. **His** (Schiller's) **body and soul** the **Duke's**, he learned a good deal of Latin, a little Greek, mastered for himself smuggled literature, and passed from piety to pessimism, from the spirit of religion to the spirit of revolt.

Objektiv:

10. **Buckingham's impeachment** was voted and carried to the Lords.

ββ) Stellung.

Eine Verschiebung kann eintreten infolge der Ersparung bzw. der Selbstergänzung des Subjektwortes zum Zweck der Betonung:

1. **Lowell's** was, in almost every respect, a fortunate **life**. — 2. Above all, **Benger's** is the **food** for restful nights. (Plakat.) — 3. **Mr. Swinburne's** is **prose** of the great tradition, at times lyrical and impassioned like his verse, and always preserving the true vocal quality.

b) Nach dem Substantiv,

α) unmittelbar („casuslos“):

1. **Timber** any considerable distance from the water involves a forest tram-line or expensive handling. — 2. The barrier against feminine government is a dam in which a **hole** the size of a sixpence would necessarily grow, by the inrush itself, to be the size of a half-crown, the size of a plate, the size of St. Paul's, and finally the size of the dam itself. — 3. Then the question of their train up to town (= up-train) the next day was debated. — 4. The discovery this week of a rare volume of works printed by W. Caxton ... is one of those heartening events ... — 5. To me the daily paper, morning or evening, is no source of interest.

Modal:

6. I was standing with Mr. Balfour, **British fashion**, on the hearthrug before a lighted fire.

β) mittelbar — mit Präpositionen (außer of).

Solche Wortgruppen können entweder allgemein übliche, zusammengehörige Verbindungen sein, wie *the question at issue*; oder sie sollen in dem betreffenden Zusammenhang als zusammengehörig aufgefaßt werden, wie *statesmen to the front*; oder endlich, sie stellen einen als Satz gedachten Zusammenschluß dar, bei dem die präpositionale Bestimmung als Prädikat zum Substantiv tritt.

Bem. In den beiden ersten Fällen würde es sich demnach um eine attributive, im letzten um eine prädikative Beziehung handeln. Diese letztere verlangt zwischen Substantiv und Attribut eine Pause, was im Druck nicht immer beachtet wird.

1. Yet it is doubtful whether that ambiguous personality "**the man in the street**" realises the tremendous grip which Marconi's invention has effected upon **the world at large**. — Of all British **statesmen to the front** during the last thirty years, he (Lord Salisbury) was single in regard to freedom from reproach of bending the knee to the Baal of **the man in the street**. — 2. Johnson grown old, **Johnson in the fulness** of his tame and in the enjoyment of a competent fortune, is better known to us than any other **man in history**. — 3. Throughout those years the Ottoman Empire, aided by German instructors, has kept its armour from rusting, but it has neglected **the man within the armour** and the soul **within the man**. — 4. To the peasants of old times, **the world outside their own direct experience** was a region of vagueness and mystery. — 5. The respect which the translators felt for the original, prevented them from adding any of the hideous decorations **then in fashion**. — 6. A direct collision soon took place between the two parties, into which the **House of Commons, lately at almost perfect unity** with itself, was now divided. — 7. It was Johnson who founded the average prose style **which (in decadence enough)** still sways the average man when he takes up his pen; and Johnson based himself on Sir

Thomas Browne. — 8. How many actors now on the stage can recite verse with ease, music, and meaning?

those, one

dienen zur Substantivierung solcher Attribute:

9. He set his teeth closely, and his compressed lips moved as those of **one in great pain**. — He had the air of **one at peace** with all the world. — 10. They are lands for the landless, prosperity and wealth for those in **straitened circumstances**. — Reformers are usually hated by **those in authority**.

Die Apposition

ist eine besondere Form des substantivischen (oder substantivierten) Attributes. Sie kann, wie das adjektivische Attribut, dem leitenden Substantiv neben-, über- und untergeordnet sein, prädikativisch gebraucht werden und kausale Beziehungen enthalten.

Das appositionelle Verhältnis kann, formal betrachtet, unmittelbar oder (und) mittelbar bezeichnet werden —

mittelbar: durch Pause bzw. graphisch und durch die Formwörter *of* und *as*;

unmittelbar: durch Stellung bzw. Betonung.

Die Apposition dient:

α) Zur Erklärung, Kenntlichmachung.

Sie steht nur nach. Im Interesse der Klarheit können

to wit, viz, (namely), that is, i. e.

hinzugesetzt, aus konstruktivischen Gründen kann das leitende Substantiv wiederholt werden.

1. It appears that **fifteen hundred papers** are published in Berlin, **that is to say, a third** of all the papers that are issued in the German Empire. — 2. In "**The Blessed Damozel**," however—**the masterpiece** of Rossetti, though it was the work of nonage—the language is curiously perfect, and has a magic fascination. — 3. Literature addresses itself, in its primary idea, to the ear, not to the eye. We call it the power of speech, we call it **language, that is, the use of the tongue**. — 4. It seems reserved for Dickens to enjoy, with the Bible and Shakespeare, that **penalty** of popularity and familiarity, **inaccurate usage**.

Mit Personalpronomen:

5. **With us Europeans**, as already pointed out, between the claims of religion and of the body, nationality has staked out its domain. — 6. **We moderns** have dubbed Africa the Dark Continent, and the name sticks, although we flatter ourselves that we are doing something on the coasts of the south, east, and west to introduce a little light on the land.

Das leitende Substantiv wird wiederholt:

7. It has long been **the fashion**—a **fashion** introduced by Mr. Hume—to describe the English monarchy in the sixteenth century as an absolute monarchy. — 8. **One unpardonable fault, the fault** of tediousness, pervades the whole of the Fairy Queen. — 9. Many objections have been made to **a proposition** which, in some remarks of mine on translating Homer, I ventured to put forth; **a proposition** about criticism, and its importance at the present day.

β) Zur besonderen Hervorhebung oder Charakterisierung, besonders bei Eigennamen. Die Apposition enthält häufig eine logische Nebenbeziehung — besonders mit **as**.

1. Oxford, **the English mother of philosophy**, has been strangely inarticulate upon her own subject. — 2. Lord Roberts, **“the hero and the man complete,”** astonishes the world from time to time by some new evidence of his activity and capacity. — 3. Herbert Spencer, **the cold scientist**, wrote a huge autobiography. But Shakespeare, **the artist**, wrote not a line about himself. — 4. Such was Frederic the Ruler. But there was another Frederic, **the Frederic of Rheinsberg, the fiddler and flute-player, the poetaster and metaphysician**. — 5. **As a Baconian** who has studied the “Shakespeare Problems” for many years, will you allow me a little space to answer Dr. Engel, whose book you reviewed recently? — 6. **As a possible President** his potential power is in many ways greater than that of a European monarch. **As actual Vice-President** his authority is of the most trivial character. — 7. **The princess, a woman and a foreigner**, was not likely to be a judicious adviser about affairs of state; the earl could scarcely be said to have served even a noviciate in politics.

γ) Zur Erweiterung,

mit freierer Stellung, durch Pausen kenntlich gemacht:

1. Owing to the abuse of the power (of granting Civil List pensions) by the Hanoverian sovereigns these grants are limited to £ 1,200, **the exact amount** disbursed in the list published this week in a Parliamentary Paper. — 2. The subjects chosen are Newman, Martineau, Comte, Spencer, and Browning, **a diverse company** indeed!

Die Apposition gehört zu einem Satz:

3. But, **strangest anomaly of all**, this country (Spitzbergen), about equal in area to Scotland, and known for over four centuries, and on the very confines of Europe, belongs to no one. — 4. I, like many another, am apt to judge my fellow men in comparison with myself, **a wrong and a foolish and natural thing to do**.

Die grammatische Beziehung zwischen voranstehender Apposition und Beziehungswort ist häufig locker; vgl. S. 211, 17.

5. **One of the earliest members** of the Royal Academy, it was Gainsborough's custom to have his pictures conveyed to the metropolis by a prosperous London carrier, a Mr. Wiltshire, of Shockerwick, near Bath. — 6. Born in England, trained in America, **journalist, Member of Parliament, traveller** in many lands, **his** (Sir Henry Norman's) career tends to that freedom from racial prejudice which peculiarly fits him for his present task. — 7. **A “no**

man's land" for nearly a century, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, in 1583, formally annexed **Newfoundland** for Queen Elizabeth.

d) Zur Angabe von Teilbegriffen aller Art.

Bem. Die Auffassung berührt sich mit der Prädikats- und Objekts-erweiterung — nicht nur in diesem Falle! Hier handelt es sich durchweg um prädikative Attribute, welche, ursprünglich Sätze, zu Gruppen zusammengefaßt sind und in appositioneller Form auftreten.

1. The half-dozen essays treated **topics none of them new, several of them trite**—trampled to death, you might have thought; Carlyle and Browning, for instance—the theme of every amateur essay-society. — 2. Here he (in a maiden speech) paused long. "My lords," he exclaimed helplessly, "if ever I rise again in this House, you may cut **me off root and branches and all for ever**." — 3. Let each of our English writers . . . set **himself heart and soul** to revive at least one long-neglected English word. — 4. Even here, however, science condemns our existing **methods, root and branch**, as absurdly prodigal of human labour, and as incredibly inefficient. — 5. The letters of Lamb contain probably the most complete revelation of a **man, body, soul and clothes**, that has yet been made by poet, novelist, letter-writer, diarist or autobiographer.

e) Zur Anreihung der Art an die Gattung („appositiv“); vgl. of, S. 158.

Ein allgemeines Gesetz ist nicht zu erkennen!

Für geographische Bezeichnungen bzw. Benennungen ist der Anschluß durch **of** das Übliche; bei andern Bedeutungsgruppen schwankt der Gebrauch nicht nur für die ganze Gruppe, sondern auch für die einzelnen Wörter der Gruppe.

1. There are people who are disposed to class all imaginative producers together, and to call them by **the name of poet**. Above all are the French inclined to give this wide extension to **the name poet**, and the inclination is very characteristic of them. — These inexperienced (Whig) politicians felt all the enthusiasm which **the name of liberty** naturally excites in young and ardent minds. — They (Amadis and Barlowe) made a prosperous voyage (in 1584) and formally took possession of a district to which Elizabeth was pleased to give **the name Virginia**. — 2. It is perhaps not strange that **the very phrase Standard English** should arouse antagonism in minds which . . . are prejudiced by being insufficiently informed. — 3. **The very phrase "foreign affairs"** makes an Englishman convinced that I am about to treat of subjects with which he has no concern. — 4. In the first place let us have it clearly set down that the popular use of **the term evolution**, to signify the notion that man is descended from a monkey, is little less than an abuse of the term. — On reading this I could not help asking what the reviewer meant by **the term realist**. — 5. The title of Nabob of Arcot. — The Title Supreme Pontiff. — The title "King of France." — 6. **The word journalist**, we are afraid, does not gain in dignity with the advance of time, indeed it stinks in the nostrils of the more fastidious. — **The words bard and inspiration**, which seem so cold and affected when applied to other modern writers, have a perfect propriety when applied to him. — She had taken Mrs. Burgoyne's **word of "mad"** in a general sense, as meaning eccentricity and temper.

Übereinstimmung der Attribute.

Hiervon kann, abgesehen von der Stellung, nur da die Rede sein, wo zum sächsischen Genitiv eine Apposition tritt.

Ist das leitende Hauptwort von einer Präposition abhängig, so wird diese nur dann wiederholt, wenn eine falsche Beziehung zu vermeiden ist oder wenn es sich um eine Hervorhebung bzw. Steigerung handelt:

1. Mr. Asquith had incidentally referred to "our friend John Morley's Life of Cobden," and the cheers were instantaneous and universal; then they dropped, and all of a sudden they broke out again from the left gallery. — 2. I slept on Sunday night at **my dear friend's, Mr. Johnson's**, at the Observatory. — 3. The disappointment of Falstaff at his old boon-companion's coronation, was not more bitter than that which awaited some of the inmates of Rheinsberg. They had long looked forward **to the accession** of their patron, as **to the day** from which their own prosperity and greatness was to date. — 4. I have thought of you as your sister might think, and **spoken to you as my brother**. — 5. When Byron died he (H. Heine) wrote of him as "**my cousin**," and declared that: "he (Byron) was the only man with whom I felt myself of kin . . . I always felt at home in intercourse with him as with an entirely congenial comrade."

Die Fügung substantivischer Attribute.

Vorgehen können dem Oberbegriff nur Substantiva in den unter III. a) genannten Funktionen und als Apposition.

Wenn nachstehende Attribute miteinander oder mit „Ergänzungen“ konkurrieren, so folgen sie der im (vollständigen) Satz herrschenden Ordnung, soweit dieselbe für die Wortgruppe durchführbar ist.

Oberstes Gesetz bleibt indessen, daß falsche oder unklare Beziehungen vermieden werden.

1. When, in your *villegiatura*, you see **the Anglo-American Oil Company's four hundred gallon waggon** dash down the country lane, and you remember that you must either light your cottage with candles or pay the price that Mr. Rockefeller thinks proper, that is melodrama, crude, gripping, convincing. — 2. The rapid advance **throughout the selfgoverning Dominions in recent years** of the idea of universal military training . . . is a circumstance of good augury. — 3. The crystallised result of this resolve was **the introduction into the Encyclopædia, for the first time in its history, of biographies** of living men and women. — 4. Touching at Leghorn, Byron was cheered by Goethe's verses in return for **the dedication to him of Sardanapalus**. — 5. There at home sat my grandfather, dejected, telling me that **the loss of me a second time** would kill him. — 6. Their number (of taverns and coffee-houses in Fleet Street) is legion; every by-lane boasted one or more; many of the alleys and courts took their names from **the presence in them, or close by, of some noted house**. — 7. Here is no bad question for historical students at the opening of an academic year, **the opening perhaps to some of their academic course**.

E. Das Objekt.

Der **Form** nach ist das Objekt ein Substantiv, Verbum, Adverb, Wortgruppe oder Satz; am häufigsten ist es ein Substantiv oder Substantivversatz.

Eigene Erkennungsformen besitzt das Objekt nur in einigen Fürwörtern; in den meisten Fällen wird es syntaktisch erkannt, an der Stellung.

Nach Bedeutung und Inhalt des von ihm zu bestimmenden Prädikats bietet das Objekt eine (notwendige) Ergänzung oder eine (entbehrliche) Erweiterung. Es kann die vielseitigsten Funktionen übernehmen, da es nicht nur Verba ergänzt, sondern auch Nomina und Adverbia (Präpositionen).

Überblick.

Das Objekt ist ein direktes oder indirektes:

direkt — insofern als die „Ergänzung“ unmittelbar, ohne Formwörter geschieht bzw. geschehen kann;

indirekt — insofern als die Natur des Prädikats eine Ergänzung nur mittelbar erfordert oder erwarten läßt.

Direkt ist das **nähere**, in erster Linie in Frage kommende — „Objekt“ schlechtweg (I.);

indirekt ist das **entferntere**, weniger bedeutsame Objekt, grammatisch beschränkt auf die häufigste Ergänzung durch die beteiligte Person, seltener Sache. (II.)

Treten direktes und indirektes Objekt zugleich auf (III.), so kann eine Unterscheidung auch ohne Formwörter erfolgen und besondere Formen der Passivbildung ermöglichen. (IV.)

I. Das direkte Objekt

tritt ohne Anschlußwort als Ergänzung zu Verben und verbalen Ausdrücken, welche unter den Begriff der **Transitiven** fallen, s. S. 9.

Allgemeine Vorbemerkung.

In bezug auf das Objekt ist es syntaktisch gleichgültig, ob man z. B.

to overlook oder **to look over**

to upset „ **to set up**

to undergo „ **to go under**

setzt; beide Gruppen sind Transitiva, welche als selbständige Verbalbegriffe in der Sprache vorhanden sind. Begrifflich aber führt die formal verschiedene Behandlung von „*over*“, „*up*“, „*under*“ zu ganz verschiedenen Bedeutungen.

Dagegen ist es begrifflich ziemlich gleichgültig, ob man sagt

to read through a book oder

to read a book through.

Im ersten Falle ist „*to read through*“ das Transitivum, im zweiten „*to read*“. Im Passiv fällt der Unterschied ganz fort.

1. **What the eye does not see, the heart does not grieve over.** — 2. I looked over the water to the white line of shore and batteries where this

wonder stood, who was **what** poets dream of, deep-hearted men **hope** for, none quite **believe in**. — 3. To-day we **look** for, rather than **at**, the rivals. — 4. "You are aware," retorted the baroness, "that **what** a man idolizes he won't see **flaw in**." — 5. They will **live through** once again, more intensely and vividly than ever, the **whole gamut** of their feelings for — and against — the unfortunate man (O. Wilde) to whose memory the book is dedicated.

a) Die Bedeutung des Objekts.

α) Das Objekt zeigt die Person oder Sache an, welche von der Tätigkeit des Verbums betroffen wird, ihr Gegenstand, ihre Wirkung oder ihr Ziel ist. Das Prädikat ist

αα) ein transitives Verbum

in einfacher oder zusammengesetzter Form:

1. With the loss of twenty-two soldiers killed and fifty wounded, Clive had **scattered an army** of near sixty thousand men, and **subdued an empire** larger and more populous than Great Britain. — 2. The poor may **buy what** they have failed to **grow**, but **what they buy** they have to **pay** for. — 3. The day broke, the day which was **to decide the fate** of India.

Einige Verba können das direkte (meist) Sachobjekt unmittelbar oder mit **of** einführen, ohne daß die Bedeutung wesentlich geändert wird:

to accept, to admit, to allow, to approve
to conceive, to disapprove, to permit.

Bei **to admit, to allow, to approve** ist **of** das Übliche. Vgl. S. 161.

4. If a man threatens to become more powerful than the party leaders **approve of**, there is nothing like cooping him up in the Vice-Presidency (of the U.S.). — 5. The second critic is Mr. Keir Hardie, who **disapproves of** everything that is not calculated to turn the children into little Socialist politicians. He **disapproves of** the boy scouts, for instance. — 6. His life after this scarcely **admits of** any detailed abstract.

Wie fließend die Grenze zwischen transitiv und intransitiv ist, zeigt sich nicht nur bei den sog. kausativen Verben: (s. S. 10).

7. Eleanor! did we **walk you** too far this afternoon? — 8. He is clever; I do not deny that; but he does not **work Lionel** sufficiently (läßt ihn nicht genug arbeiten),

sondern auch in Sätzen wie:

9. He had **joked him** about it even before they came within sight of Sheila's home. — 10. France and football! Yet we would be kind to the new sporting France, and to please her we **played her** at football, and all of us know how ignominiously she was defeated.

Als unbestimmtes Objekt steht **it** z. B. in:

Go it. Chuck it. Come it strong u. ä.

Mr. Morley's "**Mend it or end it**," applied to the House of Lords, must needs have been borrowed, we are told, from Sir Walter Scott's *Monastery*.

Bem. Hierzu und zu **it** in Bildungen wie "**to cab it**" vgl. Pron. Pers., S. 105.

ββ) ein verbaler Ausdruck,

der begrifflich einem Transitivum gleichkommt:

1. The conviction of his brother's faithlessness **stood James in good stead**. — 2. He knew that it would be impossible to find among the natives of India any force which would **look the Colonel's little army in the face**. — 3. Spain had no army which could have **looked in the face an equal number** of French or Prussian soldiers. — 4. What is the hardest task in the World? To think, I would put myself in the attitude to **look in the eye an abstract truth**, and I cannot. — 5. The wit and oratorical style of the Tory statesman (Disraeli) were unique. While he **ran an adversary through the body**, says Froude, he charmed even his enemies by the skill with which he did it. — 6. What did she expect of him? Not any of the things which the ignorant or vulgar bystander expected of him — **that he was certain** (= *that he knew for certain*).

β) Das direkte Objekt steht für den **Inhalt** der Tätigkeit nach an sich begrifflich vollständigen Verben — daher gewöhnlich nicht passivisch:

1. "You're not married?" I said, ludicrously faintly. "I've not seen the man I'd marry," she answered, **grinning scorn**. — 2. To talk Shakespeare, shop, politics u. ä. — 3. As I **walk the streets** of this noisy modern London I often have him (Shakespeare) by my side and what a companion he is! I **walk with him** not **this noisy modern city**, but the busy, bustling country-town London in which he dwelt. — 4. Put in another way, the Englishman **lives his will**: whereas the others, especially the Germans, **will their lives**. This leads the Englishman to an intense dislike of dogma — as you say, he thinks conscious pragmatism immoral.

Objekt ist ein bestimmtes Substantiv, das seiner Ableitung nach dem Verbum entspricht oder ihm begrifflich verwandt ist:

5. Joseph **dreamed a dream**. — 6. The man who had made it what it was **slept his last deep sleep** in the bed-room known as the kitchen loft. — 7. She felt like one who has **sinned a great sin**. — 8. Both were conscious of a hidden amazement. But a minute since he had spoken that word, **looked that look**. — 9. Let them **love their love** That bites and claws like hate, or **hate their hate** That mops and mows and makes as it were love. . . **Kiss him the kiss**, Iscariot. (Browning.)

γ) Das direkte Objekt enthält **Raum-, Zeit-, Maß- oder Wertbestimmungen** und dient zur Ergänzung begrifflich farbloser Verba wie **to be, to come, to go** oder zur Erweiterung begrifflich vollständiger Verba.

Bem. Im zweiten Falle wird man auch von einem Adverbiale reden können. — Bei Alters- und Maßangaben steht das Objekt gewöhnlich vor dem Adjektiv.

1. Tolstoi is a **few months** the senior of Mr. George Meredith, who entered upon his seventy-fifth year last Wednesday. — 2. Ireland is already self-governed and free, and England is not **a penny** the worse. — 3. The space **was only twenty feet square**. — 4. Tortured as he (Charles II.) was with pain, he begged the bystanders to forgive him for **being so unconscion-**

able a time in dying. — 5. It is felt that life is worth living, for the rich, and that England is for them a country worth living in, worth loving, worth defending, and worth serving.

Mit Ersparung der Copula:

6. Nova Scotia is a long and rather narrow peninsula, united to the province of New-Brunswick by an isthmus only sixteen miles wide. — 7. The English army started for the north. It crossed the Tweed, fifteen thousand men strong. — 8. "Are we going the right way about our work and are our methods abreast of our time?" Lord Rosebery is doubtful. — 9. Melanchthon was one of these moderate persons, and "appears," says Doctor Nares, "to have gone greater lengths than any imputed to Lord Burghley." — 10. We'll go halves in what we get, of course. — To go shares. — 11. It had been impossible to refuse to see him. He had come a pilgrimage from Rome and could not be turned away. — 12. Why should they dread, let us say, a German conquest of the land whose good things do not come their way? — 13. In due time Mr. Wilks came his rounds, looked into our room in turn, satisfied himself that we were all safe in bed, put out the gas, and passed on.

b) Ersparung oder Gemeinsamkeit des Objekts.

1. There is one story,—which illustrates this fact . . . though the biographer does not seem to grasp, at least he lays no stress upon, its shocking significance. — 2. The Hundred Years' War retarded at first, only to intensify later, the national idea. — 3. What his father, James II., lost without fighting for, and his son, the Young Pretender, fought for without winning, this Old Pretender played at plotting for. — 4. His slanderers were wholly unable to comprehend the great principles which Hastings himself so well understood and acted up to.

Graphisch inkorrekt:

Bem. Der Strich bezeichnet die Stelle des fehlenden Kommas.

5. He was a man full of life and energy, therefore a man who could sympathise with, understand and—being a poet—express the emotions of mankind and of womankind. — 6. De Quincey himself laid something of this to the charge of opium, but while it may have aggravated, Mr. Low (Editor of De Quincey) is of the opinion that it does not entirely account for the deficiency.

c) Stellung des Objekts.

Das direkte Objekt hat seinen „natürlichen“ Platz unmittelbar hinter dem Verbum, dessen Ergänzung es ist. Es kann aber auch an die Spitze und an das Ende des Satzes treten, sowie zwischen die Teile des Verbums.

a) Das Objekt an der Spitze,

abgesehen vom Relativsatz und Fragesatz.

Bem. Es ist zunächst zweifelhaft — abgesehen von Satz 1—3 —, welche syntaktische Funktion der an der Spitze stehende Satzteil hat: klar wird die Funktion erst durch die Stellung oder (und) die Form des Subjekts. Steht das Subjekt unmittelbar hinter dem Objekt, so folgt diesem eine kurze

Pause; tritt Inversion ein, so fällt die Pause fort: das Objekt tritt in engere Beziehung zum Satz. Endlich kann das Satzverhältnis auch durch nachträgliche Bezeichnung (durch Pronomina) festgestellt werden.

αα) Ohne Inversion.

Einfache Transitiva:

1. Me rather the arts of the poisoner, the sorcerer, the forger, and the blackmailer would have attracted. — 2. Me the whole scene affected as if it had burnt my skin. — 3. Learning Browne had—learning vast and varied. — 4. These great men we trust that we know how to prize; and of these was Milton. — 5. But Mrs. Grantly's sway, if sway she has, is easy and beneficent. — 6. Yet even these passages (The Pilgrim's Progress) though we will not undertake to defend them against the objections of critics, we feel that we could ill spare. — This lesson time will teach to all alike.

Zusammengesetzte Transitiva.

Bem. Nur die edlere Prosa vermeidet die Trennung von Adverb-Präposition und Objekt. Vgl. sp. „Wortfrage“.

1. The slang we must ask forgiveness for, but it is the only expression. — 2. Progress, we certainly must look for. (Komma im Text!) — 3. The only woman he (Swift) did know, he didn't write about. — 4. The most startling innovations which they introduced and forced through both Houses of Parliament they had given a definite undertaking to the electorate not to legislate upon at all.

ββ) Mit Inversion.

Die Fälle, in denen das Objekt aus andern als den bei der Inversion (S. 191) angegebenen Gründen die Stellung des Satzes beeinflusst, sind selten; meist archaisierend:

1. King James was flying, the Dutchmen were coming; awful stories about them and the Prince of Orange used old Mrs. Workop to tell to the idle little page. — 2. Such a changed France have we. (Carlyle.) — 3. Such power had a Tudor sovereign! — 4. Even Jeffrey's volubility, if it broke bounds, or occupied more than its due share, would he (Judge Cockburn) effectually cut short by a timely jest, or the sudden intrusion of a grotesque illustration. — 5. Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I unto thee.

γγ) Mit nachträglicher Feststellung,

durch Wiederholung oder (und) durch Fürwörter:

1. Knowledge, penetration, seriousness, sentiment, humour, Gray had them all. — 2. Everything which another man would have hidden, everything the publication of which would have made another man go and hang himself, that he (Boswell) has told about himself. — 3. The great sorrows of life take care of themselves and bury themselves; the little ones, let us smile upon them. — 4. "This most amiable man," she cried out, "that you design for me, I know everything about this amiable man, and thank you and my family for the present you make me." — 5. But what a woman's eyes might see in him, without help or other knowledge, that she saw.

β) Das Objekt am Ende,

d. h. durch andere Bestimmungen von seinem Verbum getrennt.

Einer solchen Trennung steht ein formales Hindernis so lange nicht im Wege, als Betonung und Pause bzw. Redezeichen die gewollte Auffassung sicher stellen.

1. I wish to ask you, and I hope I shall be endorsed by Members of the House, to take steps to **exclude** absolutely from the inner Lobby of this House, during its sitting, **All Women**. (Punch.) — 2. Setting aside Shakespeare—who is a supreme sonneteer to himself . . . **we have remaining** to us as poets of the sonnet pure and simple **practically nobody**. — 3. The aim of all exposition is, without waste of words, clearness; its use is **to develop**, in analysis and synthesis, **grasp**. — 4. A formalist always, precise, pedantic, intolerably consistent, he (Robespierre) passed through all the changing horrors of the most terrible six years in the annals of *modern Europe*, and **preserved** from first to last as the chief trait in his character **an eminent respectability**.

Ergänzung bzw. Erweiterung des direkten Objekts.

Sie tritt da ein, wo das Objekt zugleich als Subjekt einer neuen Aussage gedacht ist.

Diese Konstruktion entspricht naturgemäß der bei den Copulativen und passiven Factitiven festgestellten Erweiterung oder Ergänzung des Prädikats.

Ob die Anfügung mittelbar oder unmittelbar erfolgt, hängt für nominale Bestimmungen von der Bedeutung des Verbums ab. Wird sein Begriff vervollständigt oder „ergänzt“ wie bei Factitiven, so wird unmittelbar angeschlossen; nominale „Erweiterungen“ des (vollständigen) Verbalbegriffes geschehen mittelbar durch **as**, seltener durch **for**.

Der Gebrauch hat gewissen Gruppen oder Einzelverben die eine oder die andere Konstruktion zugewiesen; und von diesem Gebrauch können wieder Abweichungen durch syntaktische, besonders Stellungen-Gründe gefordert werden oder stilistisch erwünscht sein.

a) Die Ergänzung oder Erweiterung erfolgt durch **Verba**, und zwar in den **unbeschränkten Formen**.

a) Infinitiv

mit oder ohne **to** (s. S. 26, 29).

1. He has the power of visualizing the unseen; he can **make** the wildest **improbabilities appear** plausible and even necessary. — 2. How long will John Bull **permit this absurd monkey** (Disraeli) **to dance** upon his stomach? — 3. Perhaps the cynic will say that this ancient controversy may be summed up in the familiar proverb, “Young men think old men fools, and old men **know young men to be so**.”

β) Partizipien.

1. Partizip:

1. She (Queen Victoria) **saw** a vast and growing **work being performed** by her subjects, and she did not feel that she was in touch with it. She accordingly left it alone, and had the wisdom not to attempt to patronize what she was not sure of comprehending. — 2. Anyone who **thinks the Motherland dead or dying** is vastly mistaken. We found in Great Britain the same sturdy, steady men who developed in those islands the greatest people the world has ever seen. — 3. The story moves and sways, and **sets hearts beating and pulses throbbing**.

2. Partizip

in verbaler Funktion (nicht in Fällen, wo es prädikatives Attribut ist).

Es ist meistens als nominaler Rest eines Satzes aufzufassen, der das Ziel oder die Folge des Hauptsatzes ausdrückt und sich formal an das Objekt anschließt.

1. These architectonic characterisations rarely go home; they do not ingratiate assent. Even if they indicate the truth one **wants that truth stated differently**. — 2. She (Jane Austen) **brings you acquainted** with every inhabitant of the Parish. (Selten!) — 3. My efforts to gather the reason for his **having left me neglected** at school were fruitless.

Am häufigsten dient das 2. Partizip zur Ergänzung oder Erweiterung des von **to have** oder **to get** abhängigen Objekts, wo es eine doppelte Verwendung findet:

entweder

für eine bequeme Passivbildung; vgl. Objekt IV:

4. Captain Scott made no millions of money; indeed he did not. This man did none of those things which usually **get men looked upon** as great and earn adulation for them. — 5. The Seigneurs should **have their powers** of life and death over the bodies and souls of the peasants **abrogated**. — 6. One afternoon we went together by train to the Starnberg Lake, on the beautiful banks of which, in sight of the snow-clad Alps, he (Lenbach) **was having a stately villa built** after the design of his friend Gabriel von Seidl.

oder

um, durch das Objekt vom Hilfszeitwort getrennt, den erreichten Zustand zu bezeichnen, also sich dem Attributiven nähernd:

7. He had married a country girl in his youthful days, and **had her still hidden away** in some out-of-the-way village. (*held her in a hiding place*.) — 8. Yet German cooks in many ways are an improvement on English cooks. They learn readily, and in the matter of cooking vegetables, at any rate, they **have their English colleagues beaten** every time. — 9. For "man of science" substitute "lover of truth," and you **have the philosophic temper defined**. — 10. In Berlin he (Reinhardt) **had six hundred performers engaged**, and the play was produced in a circus, where the average takings were one thousand five hundred pounds per night. — 11. No Foreign Office has ever had its ambassadorial organisation more thorough and efficient than the great newspaper of to-day **has its staff** of foreign representatives **arranged**.

b) Die Ergänzung oder Erweiterung erfolgt durch Nomina:

α) Substantiva.

αα) Ohne Anschluß:

1. Persecution found them (the Puritans) a sect, it made them a section.
 2. I never remember him anything else. — 3. I confess myself an anarchist in the matter of spelling. — 4. Pedantry was so deeply fixed in his (Lord Lyttleton's) nature that the Hustings, the Treasury, the Exchequer, the House of Commons, the House of Lords, left him the same dreaming schoolboy that they found him. — 5. Laws exist in vain for those who have not the courage and the means to defend them. Electors meet in vain where want renders them the slaves of the landlord; or where superstition renders them the slaves of the priest. — 6. You may call me all the hard names you like; I deserve them all and more. — 7. The shareholder's thoughts are deemed to be devoted to his egotistical interests, but the broad fact constantly exhibits him a public sacrifice. — 8. Syntax signifies that nexus between words which constitutes them Sense.

ββ) Mit Anschluß:

as:—1. If, rejecting all that is merely accidental, we look at the essential characteristics of the Whig and the Tory, we may consider each of them as the representative of a great principle, essential to the welfare of nations.
 — 2. The great orator (Pitt) had already described Clive as a heavenborn general. — 3. George Bernard Shaw says: "I always regard the theatre as, before all else, a place where two or three people are gathered together, and I do not see why it should not take as large a part in the formation of the soul and mind of the people as the church." — 4. Mr. George Gissing acknowledges Dickens as his Father in Letters in a pleasant little paper in the New York Critic called "Dickens in Memory."

Unentbehrlich ist as bei Ergänzung von Verbalsubstantiven und präpositionalen Transitiven:

5. Hence in the first settlement of America the conception of a Spanish colony as an extension of Spain was mixed up with a different conception of it as a possession belonging to Spain. — 6. Mr. G. F. Bodley's election as a Royal Academician brings within the inner circle at Burlington House an architect who is also a Minor Poet. — 7. People have too thoroughly learned to look at book-learning as the proper fruit of education. — 8. If once we begin to think of England as a living organism, . . . we shall find these divisions altogether useless. — 9. The intervention of Roumania is, at any rate, of great importance in one respect, in that it indicates her definite separation from Austria, who has hitherto counted on her as an essential ally.

for ist selten bloßes Formwort; vgl. for als Präposition.

10. But when Holland . . . had England for a rival on the seas, she succumbed. — Voltaire would rather have had a single cultivated Parisian for audience than a street-full of casual Athenian wayfarers. — 11. We must add Byron, Byron, Tupper and Kipling are the chief poets who have taken for their public the public. — 12. If he does not set you down for an idiot, he lays an information against you before the Bishop, and has you burned for a heretic.

β) Adjektiva (Partizipia).

aa) Ohne Anschluß:

1. The first (critic) is Sir Frederick Banbury, who **thinks everything socialistic** that was not done a hundred years ago. — 2. We should not like to see Oxford, the eldest daughter of Paris, departing so far from the example of her mother as to **label herself local**. — 3. I cannot but **conceive him calm and confident**, little disappointed, not at all dejected, relying on his own merit with steady consciousness, and **waiting** without impatience the vicissitudes of opinion, and the impartiality of a future generation.

ββ) Mit Anschluß:

1. The **play and wilfulness** of life, in which the Elizabethans found its chiefest charm, the Puritan regarded as **unworthy** of its character and end. — 2. We continually **speak** of our country as **crowded**. — 3. Ordinary intelligence must admit that men of distinction, whoever they are, owe everything to the human race which has produced them; but it does not follow that we must needs **dismiss them for wholly uninteresting** on that account. — 4. To take sth. **for granted**, to give one up **for lost**.

Die Ergänzung ist als Folge oder Ziel aufzufassen:

1. It is always safe to prophesy of the far-distant future, for no one alive can **prove me wrong**, and I care not for the laughter of the unborn. — 2. He (Pitt) never bent to flatter popular prejudice. When mobs were **roaring themselves hoarse** for "Wilkes and liberty," he denounced Wilkes as a worthless profligate. — 3. That work, he said, was one of the two or three works **which he wished longer**. — 4. We conceive that it is the same with political science. Like those other sciences which we have mentioned, it has always been **working itself clearer and clearer**, and depositing impurity after impurity. — 5. The Press attacked old Panic and **stripped her naked**.

γ) Adverbialia

oder Erweiterungen in verschiedenen Formen und mit verschiedenen Eigenbedeutungen:

1. The friends **cried themselves to death** on account of the loss of their playmate. — 2. Literally Scott **wrote himself to death**. — 3. The principle of Union **had everything its own way**.

Die „normale“ Stellung der Objektserweiterung ist mit Rücksicht auf die Fügung des Satzes nicht immer durchführbar:

1. Lord Acton's feeling for poetry is said to have been limited. He was a magnificent talker. He **leaves incomplete**, indeed only **begun his great work** of editing the *Cambridge Modern History*. — 2. Thus our system of education too often defeats its own object, and **renders odious the very things** we wish to make delightful. — 3. Few men outside the rank of great writers have done so much for learning as the late Mr. George Smith, who conceived and rendered possible the "Dictionary of National Biography." But he received no public recognition from his country.

Ein Begriff dagegen liegt vor in:

4. The urgent necessity to **make good**, with the least possible delay, **the appalling handicap** under which the United Kingdom suffers must be

patent to all. — 5. Good style is the greatest of revealers,—it **lays bare the soul**. — 6. He declaimed his lines with rare taste and excellence, and **made clear the marvellous simplicity** of language in which Goethe clothes his deepest philosophy.

II. Das indirekte Objekt.

Wenn das Verbum nur ein indirektes Objekt hat, so muß es durch (funktionelles) **to** kenntlich gemacht werden. In Frage kommen alle (eigentlichen) Intransitiva und die zu Intransitiven gewordenen Transitiva.

a) Echte Intransitiva:

1. An angel **appeared to** him in a dream. — 2. The young man **belongs to** a respectable family. — 3. Disappointments will often **happen to** the best and wisest men.

b) Gewordene Intransitiva.

Das direkte Objekt ist gebrauchsmäßig im Verbalbegriff enthalten, vom Verbum aufgesaugt:

1. It was natural that such a suspicion should **attach to him**. — 2. The bright brown sails, low hulls, and gaily painted spars of the barges dropping down with the stream **added to the beauty** of the scene. — 3. "Is there a peculiar flavour in what you sprinkle from your torch?" asked Scrooge. "There is. My own." "Would it **apply to any kind of dinner** on this day?" asked Scrooge. "To any kindly given. To a poor one most."

Zu I und II:

Das Objekt ergänzt Nomina,

zu denen in diesem Falle auch gewisse Adverbia gerechnet werden.

Wo der Verbalbegriff in nominaler Form auftritt, ohne Gerundium oder Partizip zu sein, bedarf es zum Anschluß des Objekts eines besonderen Formwortes.

a) Substantiva.

Wenn das dem Substantiv zugrunde liegende oder vorschwebende Verbum transitiv ist oder als Transitivum aufgefaßt wird, wird das Objekt durch **of** angeschlossen:

1. "Human Personality and Its Survival of bodily Death." — 2. The political danger of the Jesuit preaching was disclosed in **his evasion of any direct reply**, when questioned . . . — 3. The fact of their betrothal was made known . . . **Sophia's acceptance of him** delighted her father. — 4. It ought not to be our object to insil into the minds of the young a blind admiration, or a blind **contempt, of the institutions** under which they live. — 5. It (the Jacobite secession) was known to have sown a deep **distrust of the whole Tory party** in the heart of the new sovereign (George I.).

Erfolgt bei solchen „transitiven Substantiven“ der Anschluß durch to (for), so ist die verbale Auffassung zurückgetreten; von einem direkten Objekt ist nicht mehr die Rede:

6. Her affections consisted so far of a distinct **dislike of and contempt for her father**. — 7. It is worthy of remark that the first acts of this Convention (William III.'s) bore on their face restraint of popular rights and **assistance to authority**. — 8. After such trials as those mentioned, Victor Hugo's are but light. Hugo had a real double, in flesh and blood, who exploited his physical **resemblance to the Man of Genius**. — 9. Had she really been right in the resistance which had cost her so much pain six years ago, and again four years ago — the **resistance to her husband's wish** that they should adopt a child? — 10. His (Sir Philip Francis') whole character and mode of life, his opinions, his ambitions, his ideals, are a strong **contradiction to the theory** of his being the author of the celebrated Letters. — 11. **Visitors to the Gallery** are requested . . . — 12. They (Laud and the High Churchmen) preached passive **obedience to the worst tyranny**.

b) Adjektiva.

Von unmittelbaren Ergänzungen oder Erweiterungen durch Objekte kann bei den eigentlichen Adjektiven, den Eigenschaftswörtern, keine Rede sein.

Erfolgt beim 1. Partizip der Anschluß unmittelbar, so liegt die verbale Auffassung vor; vgl. of, S. 160.

c) Adverbia — Präpositionen.

Wo Adverbia zweifellos — in dem S. 132 d angegebenen Sinne — als Präpositionen stehen, ist das von ihnen „regierte“ Nomen als direktes Objekt aufzufassen.

Bem. Die Frage, ob das Objekt zur Präposition gehört oder zu Verb — Adverb, ist nur von Fall zu Fall zu entscheiden: vgl. S. 218.

Da bei

near, opposite und like

der unmittelbare Anschluß nicht in allen Fällen erfolgt, sind sie als vollgültige Präpositionen nicht (noch nicht) anzusehen, so wenig wie gewisse „präpositionale Ausdrücke“.

near, nearer, nearest, next

lassen einen wesentlichen Bedeutungsunterschied zwischen unmittelbarem und mittelbarem Anschluß nicht erkennen; jedoch steht to gern da, wo das Objekt nicht an erster Stelle folgt:

1. Milton had been, now for seven years, **near enough to college life**. — One shudders to think how **near we were to war**. — Adjectives should be placed as **near as possible to the words** they modify. — 2. When he (de Valera) rises to that larger and saner point of view he will be **nearer the end** which he has set before himself, and Ireland will be **nearer to the reality** of liberty and peace. — This inspired paragraph leaves the mystery no **nearer solution**. — I was no **nearer my revenge** than I had been of

old. — If she is religious, it brings her nearer **Heaven**. — Perhaps he came unconsciously **nearer to Christianity**. — 3. He came again and introduced the subject which was **nearest his heart**. — He wore a hair shirt **next his skin**. — He began to hope that she would sit **next to him** at dinner.

like, unlike

schließen in den weitaus meisten Fällen direkt an.

Wo **to** steht, ist der Gebrauch entweder archaisch-rhetorisch oder durch syntaktische Rücksichten geboten.

1. I was thinking how **like** are our own lives to the lives of ships at sea. — How **like** a mind is to a river! — Crabbe was "**as like Parson Adams as twelve to a dozen**;" and **like** Fielding's unworldly, simple **parson** we may believe he was. — Parliament will rise without troubling about the Copyright Bill. How **like** Parliament! How **like this Government**! — 2. But it is difficult to conceive two men of talents and integrity more utterly **unlike** each other. — No three men could be, in head and heart, more **unlike** to one another.

Trotz Trennung vom Objekt fehlt **to** in gewissen Wortfragesätzen:

3. To-day, when dress follows the lines of the body and reveals its form, a woman has to be careful **what** that form **is like**—to hold herself well, to keep slim, to aim at preserving or regaining symmetry. — What a nation of revolutionists **you** are in America! **What** does it feel **like**, I wonder, to be a people without a past, without traditions?

opposite

schwankt durchaus:

1. "Glorious prospect," said a gentleman sitting **opposite the open window**. — Near to the winter fire sat a beautiful young girl, so like the last that Scrooge believed it was the same, until he saw her, now a comely matron, sitting **opposite her daughter**. — She was soon lying at ease, with the window **opposite her bed** opened wide to the moonlit lake. — 2. When she reached the gate at the other end of the orchard, which opened nearly **opposite to the churchyard**, Bathsheba heard singing inside the church. — Almost her only words at table were addressed to the girl sitting **opposite to her**.

III. Direktes und indirektes Objekt.

("Objective Case.")

Treten zwei Objekte, ein direktes und ein indirektes, zum Verbum, so gibt es zwei Mittel, sie von einander zu unterscheiden — durch Stellung oder (und) durch **to**.

a) Durch die Stellung.

Das indirekte Objekt steht gleich hinter dem Verbum, während das direkte sich eine freiere Stellung wahrt.

Pronomina:

1. An inauspicious life did him (Th. Hood), in some sense, **the same wrong** which was done to Keats or Shelley by hasty death. — 2. In the ferment of this awakening Ellen Key's mind developed, but her sympathies, training and circumstances **gave her a wider outlook** than almost any of her contemporaries. (Man erwartet **to any.**) — 3. On one point, however, which has caused considerable soreness amongst our Canadian fellow-subjects, he was able to **give us and them a comforting assurance.** — 4. And never **do both me and her the injury** you have hinted at. — 5. The barons, deaf to the Queen's entreaties, **denied her that pity** which she had so often refused to others. — 6. And if only our Theosophists had had the forethought to approach the wisdom of the East with the equipment of the West they would have **saved themselves and their critics much unnecessary trouble.** — 7. His fame had **raised him** (Frederick II.) **up enemies.** — 8. In order to make them free men the peasants must be made peasant proprietors. That is the only way to **bring them prosperity and Russia health.** — 9. I had no business to **tell even you the things** printed here.

Substantiva:

1. I **grudge no man his laugh**, least of all a presumably worried editor. — 2. It is the object of capital to **give the worker the least wage** for which he will consent to work, and to **charge the consumer the highest price** which he can be persuaded to give. — 3. This behaviour **does the Government much more harm** than it **does the Opposition.** — 4. A whole-some awe of long sentences would wonderfully improve the Official style, and would **save the country many reams** of good paper. — 5. Where a working man draws a share in the profits of industry he knows that this share at least is not going to **buy some rich man a new car.**

Bei Sachobjekten ist die Unterscheidung durch die Stellung **weniger allgemein**, weil die „beteiligte“ Sache leichter mit dem direkten Objekt verwechselt werden kann.

Bem. Am häufigsten ist der Gebrauch bei den Begriffen des Gebens.

1. We believe that if he had **given the interests of letters**, rather than **himself, a moment's thought**, he would have refrained from publishing his late poem. — I have only discussed the Bill so far as it **gives sickness and disablement benefit.** — The feelings which **give the passage its charm**, would suit the streets of Florence as well as the summit of the Mount of Purgatory. — 2. Ministers who conduct business in this fashion cannot expect other people to **pay their proposals more respect** than they pay to them themselves. — 3. This book has plenty of those delicately smart hits which have **gained the former productions of this author their popularity.** — 4. We wish this publication all success. — 5. None can do those scenes **so much justice.**

Eine besondere Verwendung des Objektskasus zeigt der sog.

Ethische Dativ

bei persönlichen Fürwörtern, die, „enklitisch“ an das Verbum angelehnt, der Darstellung etwas Vertrauliches oder Lebhaftes geben:

1. It is the name of a young writer who **grows you paradoxes**, while you sleep, all over the place. — 2. You may pick upon any day next year, and some one at Lloyd's will **quote you a percentage** of insurance against

the weather being wet thereon. — 3. Has anything happened to you? — No, Ralph, but something may happen to you if you don't **heed me what I say**. — 4. The main things are to be able to stand well, walk well, and look with an eye at home in its socket: I **put you my hand** on any man or woman born of high blood.

b) Durch to,

welches vor dem indirekten Objekt entweder stehen **muß** oder stehen **kann**.

to muß stehen,

wenn aus Gründen der Klarheit oder zum Zweck der Betonung die allgemeine Objektsbezeichnung nicht ausreicht.

α) Das indirekte Objekt folgt dem direkten:

1. America **gave tobacco to Europe** and Europe **gave it to Asia**. — 2. Panama **ceded the Canal Zone to the United States**. — 3. Columbus can make no progress but by proving to the Sovereigns that the territory he discovers will **yield revenue to them**. — 4. But the selfish rapacity of the king of Prussia **gave the signal to his neighbours**. — 5. The world had **shown no mercy to him**, and he need **show no mercy to the world**.

Nur **it** kann sich zwischen Verbum und unbezeichnetes indirektes Objekt schieben:

6. "Petros will **save you a great deal of troublesome detail**," he said, "just as you have of late **saved it me**."

β) Das indirekte Objekt steht an der Spitze des Satzes:

1. What are the rights of an author in his work as against the public **to whom he has once given it**? — 2. The epitaph which said that **to Leon and Aragon Columbus gave a new world** was almost literally true. — 3. **To a woman** the consciousness of being well dressed **gives a sense of tranquillity** which religion fails to bestow. — 4. Clive was a man **to whom** deception, when it suited his purpose, never **cost a pang**. — 5. **To God, to his parents, to his country, no one knows what he owes**.

γ) Inhalt und Bedeutung des Verbums erfordern — unabhängig von der Stellung — den Zusatz von **to**.

Bem. Der Gebrauch ist bei einer Anzahl von Verben feststehend. Im allgemeinen handelt es sich um eine feierlichere Form einer Übermittlung, so daß **to** begrifflich aufzufassen ist.

1. Proud of your confidence and encouraged by your sympathy, I now **deliver to you**, as my last words, **the cause of the Tory Party, the English Constitution, and of the British Empire**. — 2. Hil. Belloc enjoys, in fact, many of the advantages of a dual nationality, and is well fitted **to convey to English readers a comprehension of things French**. — 3. How was Sheila **to go to her father and explain to him what she could not explain to herself**? — 4. One overpowering sentiment had **subjected to itself pity and hatred, ambition and fear**. — 5. Heated by the study of ancient literature the Puritans set up their country as their idol, and **proposed to themselves the heroes of Plutarch as their examples**. — 6. Remember me **to your friend**. (Grüßen Sie Ihren Freund von mir.)

For kann als Formwort mit to konkurrieren und ist bei einigen Verben das Übliche:

1. This book **opened the doors for me** of magazines and reviews; — (fortfahrend:) The knowledge of French matters also **opened the door of** the daily press to me. — 2. The championship of the Lollards **earned for Wycliffe the title of** "the first Protestant," and the desecration of his grave. — 3. That placid reserve and stolidity with strangers which goes under the name of "insularity," and which has probably **made for us more enemies** than we deserve, was evidently of little use when pitted against this busy Gallic pen. — 4. His (Burney's) professional merit **obtained for him the degree of** Doctor of Music from the University of Oxford; and his works on subjects connected with his art **gained for him a place**, respectable, though certainly not eminent, among men of letters.

to kann stehen

auch in den Fällen, wo ein syntaktischer oder logischer Zwang nicht vorliegt, also immer!

Die Gründe sind stilistischer, häufig rhythmischer Art (Vermeidung der Folge zweier hochtoniger Wörter!) und entziehen sich daher einer allgemeinen Festlegung:

1. To end, as we began, with London as a whole, we can **commend to visitors and Londoners the excellent guidebook** compiled by Mr. and Mrs. E. T. Cook. — 2. History must **do to both parties the justice** which neither **has done to the other**. — 3. The official appointment, which **gives him absolute power** over the public life or death of a play, **gives to the public no guarantee** of his fitness for the post. — 4. Thousands who have no spark of the genius of Dryden or Wordsworth, **do to Dryden the justice**, which has never been done by Wordsworth, and **to Wordsworth the justice** which, we suspect, would never have been done by Dryden. — 5. I believe the whole of this question, as regards the giving of Home Rule all round to be absolutely hypocritical. (Opposition cheers.) It is put forward for the simple purpose of pretending that you are only **giving to Ireland something** that you would also **give to England and Scotland**. — 6. Mr. Carnegie has announced his intention of **presenting to Mr. John Morley the library** of the late Lord Acton which he purchased recently.

Das direkte Objekt kann dem Verbum vorangehen, auch unausgedrückt bleiben, ohne die Form des indirekten zu beeinflussen:

7. Besides, whatever may be the attractions of the single tax for urban areas rapidly extending, it has **nothing to offer the farmers and the rural labourers**, whom Mr. Lloyd George declared his anxiety to help. — 8. We can, at least, own that he (Emerson) towers above his contemporaries, and has left upon literature an impression of nobility and beauty such as all nations of the earth may **envy the American people**. — 9. Such severity of injustice must for ever render incurable the wounds you have already **given your Colonies**. — 10. What a beautiful tribute he (Dickens) **paid Irving!** — 11. I am convinced that the increased popularity of your magazine is greatly owing to the impartial **treatment you accord all parties**.

IV. Die Passivkonstruktion.

Das verhältnismäßig reich entwickelte Passiv bietet der Sprache zwei besondere Vorteile: es gestattet die bequeme Voranstellung bzw. Hervorhebung des Subjekts und das Festhalten am Subjekt im mehrfachen Satz und in längeren Ausführungen.

Unbestimmte Subjekte werden weniger verwendet als bestimmte oder persönliche.

Vorbemerkung.

Es entspricht dieser Ungebundenheit, daß das (vom Standpunkt der Verwandlung aus und theoretisch) Mögliche nicht immer gebräuchlich oder auch nur erlaubt ist.

Die Erörterung geht von der aktiven Konstruktion aus und betrachtet die passive als Verwandlung der aktiven — lediglich aus praktischen Gründen, da der sprachliche Vorgang natürlich ein ganz anderer ist. Das Streben, das grammatische Subjekt an der „natürlichen“ Stelle zu lassen, mußte bzw. muß zu einer Behandlung des Prädikats und der Prädikatsbestimmungen führen, welche vom rein grammatischen Standpunkt aus nicht immer zu erklären ist; als wenn der Grundsatz herrschte: Subjekt möglichst an die Spitze, alles andere findet sich!

a) Ein Objekt.

Transitiva (S. 9 f.) können mit wenigen Ausnahmen ins Passiv gesetzt werden.

Das Objekt wird zum Subjekt; das ursprüngliche Subjekt wird durch *by*, seltener *of* angeschlossen, ist jedoch entbehrlich, wenn es unbestimmt ist (*one, people, they* u. a.).

α) Einfache Transitiva:

1. *Clive was recalled by broken health to England, and the fortunes of the struggle in India were left for decision to a later day.* — 2. *And his twin-brother is Mr. William Gillette, the American actor who has helped, or been helped by, Dr. Conan Doyle to construct a play about him, and, what is more, takes the principal part in it himself.* — 3. *The navigation of the Rhine has been for many years protected by an international treaty, which assures to the ships of all the nations an absolute free use of its waters.* — 4. *Here you have in the new Irish Bill the Executive dependent upon, chosen by, and controlled by the representatives of the people.*

β) Zusammengesetzte Transitiva,

welche oder falls sie gebrauchsmäßig einen selbständigen Begriff bilden.

Verbum + Präposition müssen als Transitivum empfunden werden.

Bem. Das (im Aktiv gedachte) Objekt muß von dem neuen Verbalbegriff abhängen, nicht von der Präposition; in letzterem Falle würde eine adverbiale Ergänzung zum Verbum vorliegen und ein Passiv überhaupt nicht möglich sein.

aa) Mit Präpositionen,

welche nun wieder zu Adverbien werden:

1. A book which is praised in all the Reviews, **thousands will not only buy but be delighted with.** — 2. My own belief is that Greek and Latin are **things to be led up to, not begun with.** — 3. Have you read Ivanhoe? It is the least dull, and the most easily **read through** of all Scott's novels. — 4. Do not deceive yourself; **do not be run away with** by gratitude and compassion. — The desire of her bosom was to be **run away with.** — 5. He saw clearly enough that **the bed had not been slept upon.** — 6. "I don't spend much of my time here now," the old man said, following Nurse Isabel's glance round the room. . . . **"It does not look lived in, does it?"** — 7. The Professor for his part was far from responsive. He was probably used to **being fallen in love with** by his pupils.

Aktiv und Passiv:

8. Don't **you read or get read to.** — 9. Not long ago, however, a sickness prevented me from **reading to myself** and, wanting to **be read to**, I demanded "Vanity Fair." — 10. In fact, we gather from all authorities that it was Carlyle's joy **to talk and not to be talked to.** — 11. There would be a great party at the Red House on New Year's Eve, she knew; **her husband would be smiling and smiled upon**, hiding her existence in the darkest corner of his heart. — 12. Thou shalt not **steal**, thou shalt not be **stolen from.** (Carlyle.)

ββ) Mit Substantiven,

die im Aktiv direktes Objekt sind:

1. They shall be made an example of. — 2. New **means must of necessity be had recourse to.** — 3. You have vast opportunities for those long, long **thoughts given birth** by a country that is as rich in historical interest as any portion of the vast American continent. — 4. The position thus taken up by the Ministry is surely a most unreasonable one, and their programme one **which cannot be given effect to.** — 5. Certain Japanese sympathisers in Nankin were caught by the invading army and **made short work of.**

b) Zwei Objekte — direktes und indirektes.

(Objective Case.)

Beide können im Passiv zum Subjekt werden.

Der Satz

one gave him a book

kann auf vierfache Weise in passiver Form auftreten:

- α) he was given a book;
- β) a book was given (to) him;
- γ) to him was given a book;
- δ) he had a book given (to) him.

Die Reichhaltigkeit an Konstruktionen bietet der Sprache die Fähigkeit, mit der durch das Hervorkehren des entscheidenden Subjekts gesicherten Klarheit und Übersichtlichkeit eine große Knappheit des Ausdrucks zu verbinden.

Den Umfang des Gebrauches festzustellen, dürften die zu den Einzelfällen gegebenen Belege genügen. Keineswegs aber gestatten alle Verba sämtliche Verwandlungsformen. Andererseits braucht der passiven Form nicht immer eine aktive zu entsprechen.

α) He was given a book:

1. Why then should **women be denied the benefit** of instruction? — 2. At Strasburg, for example, a boy who leaves school at the age of fourteen, whether **he is found work** or not, must at once begin his further education. — 3. Since the Negro became a man, since **he was** liberated from serfdom and **given his personal as well as political freedom**, he has been a Republican, and voted for the Republican candidate. — **The paragraphs** meant to deal in this section with the results of the Balkan War **have been elaborated** into a special article, and **given a place** to themselves. — 4. **Advertisements for The Scotsman cannot be guaranteed insertion** or classification unless received before six o'clock on the Evening before Publication. — 5. Turkey was vanquished but, with amazing folly, **she was left her arms**. — **I was left a thousand pounds** by an uncle. — 6. He wholly forgot that **he had just been offered**, and had just refused, a **fortune**. — **The rumour that Dr. Robert Bridges is to be offered**, and will in all probability **accept**, the **bays**, has given rise to great disappointment and fierce heart burnings in certain quarters. — 7. Every servant also **was owed the greater part** of his wages. — 8. **The Negro was given liberty** by the armies of the North: but **he is still refused equality** or fraternity by the South. — 9. **Members**, successful in the ballot, **will be sent a special form of admission**. — 10. **We** (English) are apt to **be sent intellect** instead of wealth and to **be shown modest establishments**, considered more truly representative of democratic simplicity. (Es handelt sich um amerikanische Botschafter.) — 11. For him it is enough to **be shown the enemy**. — 12. She shrank as if **she had been struck some blow**. — 13. In the eager division of the prizes of the world, **this simple fellow (Michael) had been compassionately granted the cloud-land of thought**.

Das Objekt ist ein Satz oder Infinitiv:

14. Let a boy **be shown that it is matter of pride to be a gentleman** and that no man is a *gentle* man who is not gentle to women. — 15. There is a story that **Milton was offered to be continued** in the secretaryship.

β) A book was given (to) him.

Der Fortfall von to ist, da die Passiva den intransitiven Verben zuzurechnen sind, ungewöhnlich. Er beschränkt sich im allgemeinen auf die Fälle, wo das indirekte Objekt eine Person, besonders ein persönliches Fürwort ist:

1. **No such reception** (as Dickens') **had been given** any foreign visitor to America before that time. — 2. On the motion of Viscount Churchill, seconded by the youthful Lord Ivor S. Churchill, **a vote of thanks was accorded the leaders** who had addressed the gathering. — 3. There were printed papers **given the Audience**. — 4. **An account of the moneys on other heads was denied the public**. — 5. **Few lessons would be set the class** as a whole; each lad would be treated as an individual, not as a mere unit—or cypher?—among numbers. — 6. **And this account was given you**

you, yourself—by Wahnisdorf?" repeated the Princess. — "Yes, to myself." — 7. Hold out your hands and take the things that are offered you. — 8. The fact is, much will be forgiven a writer, if what he says is quite clear—the exact reflex of his thought. — 9. People are apt to forget that a revolutionary strike is actually an attempt at civil war and no mercy should be shown those ready to endanger the State for the sake of their personal gain. — 10. A good many questions have been asked me. (Nach: to ask one a question.)

γ) To him was given a book.

Bei dieser Stellung des indirekten Objekts kann to nicht fehlen; vgl. S. 231, β.

1. To the children of the higher grades of the peerage are given the courtesy titles of lords and ladies, though in formal documents a duke's or marquis's son will be quaintly styled "John Butler, Esquire, commonly called Lord John Butler." — 2. Adela began to feel that the hour of explanation was approaching, and grew surer and surer that to her would be left the task. — 3. To such a man (Francis Sforza) much was forgiven—hollow friendship, ungenerous enmity, violated faith. — Vgl. β, 8.

δ) He had a book given him.

Diese bereits S. 36 erwähnte und S. 224 als Objektserweiterung behandelte Konstruktion kann in vielen Fällen als eine besondere Form der Passivbildung angesehen werden, bei der allerdings to have und to get begrifflich aufzufassen sind:

1. The mechanical road-vehicle has already a literature of its own. There is probably no subject of public interest which has so many journals devoted to it as that of automobilism. — 2. Look round this room—we have a piano lent to us. — 3. We have this house and furniture given to us by a lady interested in us. — 4. Each Latin word has its function as noun or verb or adverb ticketed upon it. — 5. The illusion that war can be a means of national profit is dead — we are slowly learning that we cannot even get our costs paid by a beaten enemy without having our trade ruined by the payment. — 6. The poor are to be given something, the rich are to have something taken. — 7. Why should not girls have money spent on their education, as their brothers have? — 8. Here is a reviewer dealing with a book, which is written by well-nigh the only living poet of eminence we have left to us („der uns noch geblieben ist“). — 9. Urgent appeals are made not to allow the movement to be a failure, and the memorial, whatever it is, may finally get itself erected. — 10. The workmen who went on strike to claim it for themselves would soon be driven in by hunger to take any hours or wages they could get offered them.

F. Das Adverb.

Vorbem. „Adverb“ steht hier für denjenigen Satzteil, welcher die näheren Umstände bezeichnet, unter denen eine Aussage eintritt, also nicht nur für das Adverb im engeren Sinn (Umstandswort), sondern für alle adverbialen Bestimmungen, soweit sie nicht in Satzform auftreten.

Das Adverb ist inhaltlich und syntaktisch der vielseitigste Satzteil. Es kann nicht nur die einzelnen Satzteile und den ganzen Satz bestimmen, sondern auch mehrere Teile zugleich, mittelbar wie unmittelbar.

Es tritt in den verschiedensten Formen auf, die entweder selbständige Bedeutung haben oder als Präpositionen und Konjunktionen Beziehungen zwischen Satzteilen und Sätzen ausdrücken.

Bem. Da die besondere Form bzw. Doppelform des eigentlichen Adverbs S. 78f., g. erörtert, seine Bedeutung als Präposition und Konjunktion in selbständigen Kapiteln behandelt ist, so bleibt nur die Stellung im Satz bzw. zu den Satzteilen zu erörtern.

Die Stelle im Satz.

Das Adverb ist, in welcher Form und Bedeutung auch immer es auftritt, der beweglichste Teil des Satzes. Je gebundener die Stellung von Subjekt, Prädikat und Objekt, um so freier, „persönlicher“ ist die des Adverbs. Das wird erreicht oder ermöglicht einmal durch eigene Formen, welche von vornherein eine Verwechslung mit anderen Satzteilen in den meisten Fällen ausschließen, dann durch die reiche Gliederung des Verbums, welche die mannigfachste Verteilung oder Einschlebung der Adverbia gestattet.

Die Freiheit ist indessen keine Willkür. Die Stellung wird grundsätzlich durch den Sinn bestimmt, wird aber daneben durch den Satzrhythmus beeinflusst, der sich selbst in schlichter Darstellung geltend macht: Betonung, Tonhöhe, Pausen erhalten erhöhte syntaktische Bedeutung.

Allgemeiner Vorbehalt.

Adverbia können gebrauchsmäßig einen bestimmten Platz beanspruchen, entweder, weil sie nur an dieser Stelle den gewünschten Sinn geben, oder weil sie auf Grund ihrer Bedeutung selbständigere Satzteile ausmachen, die sich nicht ohne weiteres schieben lassen, so wenig wie die Sätze, denen sie entsprechen.

Andrerseits können stets Gründe für Ausnahmestellungen vorliegen, die gerade durch ihre Abweichung vom Hergebrachten besonders wirksam sind. Hier berührt sich die Syntax mit der Stilistik.

Überblick.

Die Adverbia (Adverbialia) gehören zum Verbum (I), zum Substantiv (II), zum Adjektiv bzw. Adverb (III), zum Satz (IV).

I. Das Adverb gehört zum Verbum.

Das nur das Verbum bestimmende Adverb kann sich naturgemäß nicht allzuweit von ihm entfernen; es kann ihm vorangehen, folgen und eingefügt werden.

Voranehend ist das Adverb im allgemeinen weniger bedeutsam, oft den Verbalbegriff nur vervollständigend oder mit ihm verschmolzen, auch Ergänzungen des Verbums mitbestimmend. Aus syntaktischen und stilistischen Gründen kann es auch dem Subjekt vorangehen und an die Spitze des Satzes treten.

Nachstehend enthält das Adverb selbständige, neue und wesentliche Bestimmungen nur des Verbums und kann um die Stelle unmittelbar nach demselben mit dem Objekt streiten. — Das weitere Fortrücken zum Ende hin und besonders die völlige Endstellung dient besonderen Zwecken stilistischer Art.

Die **Einfügung** in das mehrteilige Verbum ändert an dem allgemeinen Gesetz nichts, da der Verbalbegriff bzw. der einfache Prädikatskern für die Stellung ausschlaggebend ist.

Allgemeine Beispiele,

wo zuerst dieselben Adverbia in verschiedener Stellung, dann verschiedene Adverbia in demselben Satz auftreten.

Dieselben Adverbia:

1. For bombast, his (Dryden's) prevailing vice, his new subjects gave little opportunity; his better taste **gradually** discarded it. — But from the moment of that sudden shock, the unhappy man (Omichund) **sank gradually** into idiocy. — **Gradually** the intercourse of the two statesmen (Pitt and Rockingham) became courteous and even amicable. But the past was never wholly forgotten. — 2. Yet, unless we **greatly** err, this subject is, to most readers, not only insipid, but positively distasteful. — I think it a mistake to suppose that what is now being called Spelling Reform **matters greatly** to the elementary schools. — 3. The young peer (Byron) had great intellectual powers; yet there was an unsound part in his mind. He **had** **naturally** a generous and tender heart; but his temper was wayward and irritable. — When this book (Hohenlohe's Memoirs) appeared in its original dress it **naturally** **created** a considerable sensation in Germany. — **Naturally** also the expectation of marriage interferes to some extent with a girl's energy in learning her trade, and so tends to keep her unskilled. — 4. But we **know** **most** **certainly** that in 1679, and long after that year, James was a **most** bloody and remorseless persecutor. — If it was from the Annus Mirabilis that Milton formed his opinion, when he pronounced Dryden a good rhymist, but no poet, he **certainly** **judged** correctly. — **Certainly** Washington society has found the British Embassy under his (J. Bryce's) regime little suited to its taste.

Verschiedene Adverbia:

5. Whatever the conceited editor of this book may think, those persons who **estimate** **most** correctly the value of the improvements which **have** **recently** **been** **made** in our institutions, are **precisely** the persons who are

least disposed to **speak slightly** of what was done in 1688. — 6. If this term (American nation) means anything, it means that splendid nucleus of English emigrants who laid the foundation of the present Imperial Republic, and **long guided** its counsels **exclusively**. — 7. He **really** sings and plays **delightfully**. — 8. It was dull, cruel torment to appear thus, but he bore the pain **voluntarily, voluntarily** increased it.

Gang der Darstellung.

Es werden einfache (a) und zusammengesetzte (b) Zeitformen unterschieden, bei den einfachen beschränkende (a, α) und unbeschränkte (a, β); zu den zusammengesetzten werden alle mehrteiligen Verbalformen gerechnet, mögen die beschränkenden Formen einen Infinitiv oder ein Partizip einführen.

Am Schluß (c) werden Spitzenstellung und Endstellung gesondert geprüft werden — ohne Rücksicht auf die Form des Verbums.

a) Das Adverb bei den einfachen Zeitformen.

α) Bei den beschränkenden Formen.

αα) Voranstehend.

Die Adverbia enthalten eine Steigerung bzw. Abschwächung des Verbalbegriffs, mit dem sie ganz verschmelzen können, oder eine modale Erweiterung.

Steigernd (abschwächend):

1. A greater name is to be added to the ignominious list. By this Parliament was brought to justice that illustrious philosopher (Bacon), whose memory genius has **half redeemed** from the infamy due to servility, to ingratitude, and to corruption. — 2. But Clive was not a man to do any thing by halves. **We almost** blush to write it. He forged Admiral Watson's name. — 3. The Mohawk **hardly** feels the scalping-knife while he shouts his death-song. — 4. Some years before his death, Dryden **altogether** ceased to write for the stage.

Adverbialia:

5. Gentlemen, it is to that spirit that I **above all things** trust. — 6. If she (Fancy) takes up her abode permanently anywhere in particular, or **so much** as loiters there over-long, it is probably with felonious intent. — 7. Our theme is Johnson, who **in no way** shared in the advantages of birth and position which **in some degree** were useful to Cowper.

Modal, häufig temporal oder lokal gefärbt:

1. All these pleasures then, and all these virtues, I repeat, you **nationally** despise. — 2. Mr. Lloyd George is apparently to be allowed by the Prime Minister to "focus attention" on this agitation, which Lord Crewe **contemptuously** sneers at, and which Lord Haldane **more timidly** disparages. — 3. We **seldom** send of our best (men) to the Colonies, and we **not seldom** send of our worst. — 4. Mere negation—mere Epicurean infidelity, as Lord Bacon **most justly** observes—has never disturbed the peace of the world. — 5. Yet they (the women) did no such thing, but **blindly** cherished what he (Asquith) **carelessly** threw them. — 6. There are few things more wonderful to me than that old people **never** tell young ones how precious their youth is. They sometimes **sentimentally** regret their own earlier days.

sometimes **prudently forget** them: often **foolishly rebuke** the young, often **more foolishly indulge**, often **most foolishly thwart** and restrain; but **scarcely ever warn** or watch them.

Mehrere Adverbia, Wortgruppen oder Sätze:

1. The Phantom **slowly, gravely, silently**, approached. — 2. Thus **liberty, partially indeed and transiently**, revisited Italy; and with liberty came commerce and empire, science and taste, all the comforts and all the ornaments of life. — 3. Few nations **so generously as Britain clothe, feed and pay** their soldiers. — 4. The politicians needed his (Mr. Roosevelt's) popularity to strengthen the Republican "ticket" and ensure Mr. McKinley's election. At the same time they wished to put him away and "side-track" him once and for all; and they **reasonably, but, as it turned out, wrongly, calculated** that his nomination as the Vice-Presidential candidate would compass both ends. — 5. The intelligent reader whom our writer has to consider will possibly not know the linguistic facts; indeed he **more likely than not takes** *save* for a Saxon word. — 6. The Nabob of Oude pressed him to accept a large sum of money, and a casket of costly jewels. Clive **courteously, but peremptorily refused**.

ββ) Nachstehend.

Das nachgestellte Adverb ist entweder dem Verbum gegenüber der bedeutsamere Begriff, oder es dient zur Erweiterung, Berichtigung, Erläuterung des Verbalbegriffes, nicht des Satzes.

Not steht nie vor den beschränkenden Formen.

1. Whatever the Bengalee does, he does **languidly**. — 2. In his extremity, he (George III.) **looked wistfully** towards that Whig connection, once the object of his dread and hatred. — 3. He (a great author) **writes passionately**, because he **feels keenly**; forcibly, because he **conceives vividly**. — 4. Mr. Lloyd George **enjoyed himself hugely** in Liverpool yesterday. — 5. The reformation **moves slowly**, but it moves. — 6. He (Pitt) **spoke always** as one having authority. — 7. Thus absolute monarchy was established on the Continent. England **escaped**; but she **escaped very narrowly**. — 8. Cite **always**; quote **rarely**; use phrase without quotation **never**.

Stellung von Adverb und direktem Objekt.

Im allgemeinen wird die Stellung des Adverbs zwischen Verbum und direktem Objekt vermieden; besonders in kurzen, sich aus der ganzen Darstellung selbständig abhebenden Sätzen wird das Adverb meist vor dem Verbalkern oder nach dem Objekt angetroffen.

Grundsätzlich aber steht der Zwischenstellung nichts im Wege, falls die syntaktische Beziehung klar bleibt. Oft ist sie gerade dieser Beziehung wegen unerlässlich, ganz abgesehen von rhythmischen Gründen, denen allerdings die Schrift nur unvollkommenen Ausdruck verleiht.

Bem. Eine Unterscheidung nach einfachen und zusammengesetzten Zeiten bleibt hier außer Betracht.

Das Adverb vor Verbum oder nach Objekt:

1. William came to his duchy as a child; but his childhood and youth were of a kind which **made him a man**, and a strong and wise man, **very early**. — 2. Clive's indomitable spirit rose up stronger and stronger under the load of public hatred. He **fought out the battle obstinately to the end**. — 3. The colonies raised at Pitt's call twenty thousand men, and **taxed themselves heavily** for their support. — 4. In this respect, two historians of our own time may be proposed as models, Sir James Mackintosh and Mr. Mill. Differing in most things, in this they **closely resemble each other**. Sir James is lenient—Mr. Mill is severe. — 5. The circumlocutions which are substituted for technical phrases, are clear, neat, and exact. The illustrations at once **adorn and elucidate the reasoning**. — 6. The *Guardian* is the semi-official organ of the Church of England, and more or less **faithfully reflects the mind** of the clergy. — "I should say," said Dr. Gow of Westminster, "that boys are not really different from what they used to be; but, being imitative creatures, they **reflect very faithfully the change** in the habits of their elders." — 7. As no degree of self-approbation **can satisfy his** (Tolstoi's) **restless vanity wholly**, every other day he changes the cut of his soul.

Das Adverb zwischen Verbum und Objekt:

1. But the name of Clive **quelled in an instant all opposition**. — 2. The authors of this book have been happy in their choice of a title. "The King's English" **expresses clearly and concisely the subject and scope of the work**. — 3. Huxley **felt intensely the reality of evil**.

Verba, die mit einem Adverbium einen festen neuen Verbalbegriff bilden, lassen eine Trennung durch ein Objekt gewöhnlich nur zu, wenn dieses ein unbetontes Personale ist:

4. The English accordingly **pulled down Meer Cossim, and set up Meer Jaffier again**. — But the gratitude of Meer Jaffier did not last long. He had for some time felt that the powerful ally who **had set him up, might pull him down**. — 5. The day broke. The Nabob **had slept off his debauch, and permitted the door to be opened**. — 6. The Fire of London, it has been observed, was a blessing. It **burned down the city, but it burned out the plague**. — The friends of Miss Penrhys were ill advised in trying to **cry down a man like my father**. — 7. Parnell listened, as was his wont, until everybody **had put in his plaint**. — 8. Montaigne **sat himself down**, when he took refuge from the world in his famous tower, to describe himself.

Durch Verwendung von Pausenzeichen kann das Adverb besonders hervorgehoben werden:

9. But Mr. Paul goes on to describe, **very justly, her own style as hard and metallic**, and we ask why this was so. George Eliot herself once described style as "a manifestation of mental attributes." — 10. Kant's very thought, in late years, became fixed: he **repeated unconsciously, the same circuit of ideas**. — 11. There are money, enthusiasm and taste in Canada, which might well be expended on the Amherst library. But the inhabitant of the old country will **hope—selfishly perhaps, but inevitably—that certain things may remain in the island**.

To be

als reine Copula tritt gewöhnlich vor das Adverb, — hinter das Adverb, wenn die Prädikatergänzung ein *that*-Satz ist:

1. He (J. H. Newman) never exaggerated; he was never unreal. — 2. Those who have much are often greedy; those who have little always share. — 3. Frau Cosima is evidently to the manner born for receiving regal homage. — 4. A novel is never dull when the plot-interest is alive, and when the plot-interest declines it is always dull. — 5. The old theologians told us that man is by nature depraved. It is at least as true to say that man is by nature religious; and, indeed, the former proposition may be held to contain and imply the latter. — 6. From America we receive more books of such essays or papers than come from all the English publishers. The reason possibly is that, since there are more readers and writers in America than in England, therefore there are more examples of each different kind of books. — 7. The fact incontestably is, that for every violation of the fundamental laws of poetry, which can be found in Homer, it would be easy to find twenty in Virgil.

β) Bei den unbeschränkten Formen.

Es herrscht dasselbe Gesetz, nur daß not stets vor diese Formen rückt; to kann durch Adverbia vom Infinitiv getrennt werden.

αα) Gerundium-Partizip:

1. We do not always agree with his (Leigh Hunt's) literary judgments; but we find in him what is very rare in our time—the power of justly appreciating and heartily enjoying good things of very different kinds. — 2. Clive gradually accustomed them to danger, and by exposing himself constantly in the most perilous situations, shamed them into courage. — 3. He had died without even so much as confessing he was wrong. — 4. And things are now much worse, since education has become pedagogical, without at the same time becoming psychological. — 5. Labour, speaking broadly, is discontented for two reasons: It does not like its work and it is not satisfied with its pay. — The Crusades took their rise in Religion; their visible object was, commercially speaking, worth nothing. — It has recently been pointed out by an American aviator that a flight from England to America is possible (speaking geographically) of which only 270 miles would be over the sea.

ββ) Infinitiv.

Ohne to, s. b).

Mit to:

1. The natives had learned to look with contempt on the mighty nation which was soon to conquer and to rule them. — 2. Renan was convinced that "humanity and philosophy were getting richer all the time, by more and more valuable results"—results to which he was destined to contribute so largely. — 3. Thus faithfully and impersonally to reflect usage is a task both large and hard; and even harder than for French or Italian is the task for English. — 4. A wise and witty Irishman once said that if you want to educate a child properly, you must begin one hundred years before its birth. — 5. In theology there are ever present two contradictory tendencies. One school attempts wholly to deify and the other wholly to humanise the Founder of Christianity. The same conflict of aims is observable in the world of biography. — 6. By ratifying that law (Petition of Right) he bound himself never again to raise money without the consent of the Houses, never again to imprison any person, except in due course of law, and never again to

subject his people to the jurisdiction of courts-martial. — 7. Germany has set herself, **consistently, steadily, methodically and tirelessly** to challenge British power on the seas. The British Government have seemed to waver, and occasionally to fall torpid, and then to endeavour to recover lost ground by a spurt.

“Split Infinitive.”

Vgl. S. 29.

Er ist ein brauchbares Auskunftsmittel, dem Adverb die ihm zukommende Stelle vor dem Verbum zu sichern.

Bem. Einstweilen kann er nicht als allgemein gebräuchlich angesehen werden, obgleich er oft unvermeidlich ist. — Surely a phrase which is clear when written as well as when spoken is better than a phrase which is only clear when spoken. Surely, therefore, “I ask you to **kindly** clear out” is better than “I ask you kindly to clear out” — schreibt ein englischer Grammatiker.

1. My head was swimming, but nevertheless I strove to **calmly** consider my situation. — 2. The assembly of Virginia was the first to **formally** deny the right of the British Parliament to meddle with internal taxation. — 3. This earl would have deemed it a condescension to **so much as** invite me to his house. — 4. None the less, Mr. Hardy, unlike the young lady of to-day who begins to wield a pen almost before her hand has strength enough to **boldly and intentionally** split an infinitive, was then well over thirty. — 5. The legislative power that imposed the charge, created the trust, chose the trustees and declared the object of the trust, had the right to, if it so think fit, **abolish** the charge altogether.

b) Das Adverb bei den **zusammengesetzten** Zeitformen.

Grundsätzlich gruppieren sich die Adverbia um die unbeschränkten Formen als die Träger des Prädikatsbegriffes. Wo indessen die beschränkenden Formen hervorgehoben oder selbst begrifflich werden, folgen die Adverbia den auf S. 238 gefundenen Gesetzen.

Bei weiterer Zusammensetzung (β) verlangen rhythmische Gesichtspunkte stärkere Berücksichtigung, vorausgesetzt, daß die Verteilung oder Einfügung der Adverbia keine falsche Auffassung herbeiführt.

Not folgt stets der beschränkenden Form.

a) Zwei Formen — eine beschränkende, eine unbeschränkte.

aa) Das Adverb zwischen beiden Formen:

1. A great quantity of wealth is made by English functionaries in India; but no single functionary makes a very large fortune, and what is made is **slowly, hardly, and honestly** earned. — 2. The pecuniary transactions between Meer Jaffier and Clive were **sixteen years later** condemned by the public voice, and severely criticised in Parliament. They are **vehemently defended** by Sir John Malcolm. — 3. I do not wish to exaggerate, but I do believe that the “classics” are **very seldom** read, **still more seldom** studied, except by the small circle of students of literature and by girls, boys and

young folk preparing for examinations. — 4. I saved the one woman I **have** deeply loved, the one creature who deeply loved me. — 5. Well, whatever bit of a wise man's work is **honestly and benevolently done**, that bit is his book or his piece of art . . . But if you read rightly, you **will easily** discover the true bits, and those *are* the book. — 6. Doctrines subversive of every principle of freedom **were personally favoured** by the sovereign, **openly avowed** by the government, and **zealously defended** by the most powerful classes. — 7. In poetry as well as in prose, that which is **best said** is generally that which is **shortest said**. — 8. Mr. Bernard Shaw **has in a letter to the Times, in his vigorous way, summed up** the Chancellor of the Exchequer (Lloyd George) as a "sentimental amateur." — 9. Before France had taken any part in our quarrel, he (Chatham) **had repeatedly, and with great energy of language, declared** that it was impossible to conquer America.

Beim Infinitiv:

10. But the English government **was not to be so shaken off**. — 11. But he (Clive) **appears to have strictly adhered** to the rules which he had laid down for the guidance of others.

Häufig ist die Einschreibung des Urhebers beim Passiv:

12. They (the servants of the Company) **were, by the ancient usage of the service, and by the implied permission of their employers, warranted** in enriching themselves by indirect means; and this had been the origin of the frightful oppression and corruption which had desolated Bengal.

ββ) Das Adverb nach beiden Formen:

1. Someone **has said finely** that a large forehead in a man is like a great expanse of sky in a landscape. — 2. Dividends **cannot flow eternally** as they did in the fairy times of Queen Victoria. — 3. Many persons who **have conducted themselves foolishly** in active life, and whose conversation has indicated no superior powers of mind, **have written** valuable works.

γγ) Das Adverb vor beiden Formen.

Der Gebrauch beschränkt sich auf einige wenige Adverbia, die entweder selbst betont sind oder dem betonten Hilfsverb — als logischem Prädikatskern — vorangehen.

Das Hilfsverb ist betont:

1. Anarchism is diabolically destructive, and it **ever has been, and ever will be**, utterly futile. — 2. We do not know—we **never may know**—if the disaster was an avoidable one. — 3. Europe **never has been and never will be** under the domination of the sergeant major. — 4. There is a true Church wherever one hand meets another helpfully, and that is the only holy or Mother Church which **ever was, or ever shall be**. — 5. No, my Lords, I hope I **shall never see**—God forbid I **ever should see** . . . any preparations . . . to defend this our "ancient ally" from the attacks of its enemies.

Das Adverb ist betont:

6. If we consider what women did in the early Victorian days and what they do to-day, the comparison **certainly would not be** in favour of our grandmothers. — 7. "You **never can tell**." (B. Shaw.) — 8. We **certainly shall not echo** the remark of Millar, the publisher of Johnson's dictionary, when the last sheet was brought to him: "Thank God, I have done with him."

β) Mehr als zwei Zeitformen.

Bei der großen Konkurrenz von Hilfsformen ist ein besonderes Gesetz um so weniger zu erkennen, als sich bei dem Auftreten mehrerer, der Bedeutung nach verschiedener Adverbia oder Adverbialia das Streben nach Verteilung geltend macht, hier also andere als grammatische Gesichtspunkte in erhöhtem Grade maßgebend sein können.

αα) Zwischenstehend:

1. Although he (Emerson) **may be not greatly** read in England to-day, his popularity in the United States flourishes exceedingly. — 2. It was impossible that a plot which had so many ramifications **should long remain entirely concealed**. — 3. It **had accordingly** been understood, from a very early period, that the Company's agents were at liberty to enrich themselves by their private trade. — 4. It is quite possible that if Byron **had not been savagely, and in his case quite justifiably**, attacked, in the *Edinburgh Review* when he published that unfortunate work, "Hours of Idleness," he **would never have written** his great masterpiece, "Don Juan." He **would certainly have achieved** greatness in some line, for he had . . . — 5. There is much in this book which **had far better never have been written**.

ββ) Nachstehend:

1. No father in all England **could have behaved more generously** towards a son, who had rebelled against him wickedly. — 2. It is certain that Mr. Taft will cause suits to be brought against such law breakers as he thinks he can convict; such suits **will be tried vigorously** in the courts and perhaps less in the newspapers. — 3. There can be no question but that his (Dr. Laurie's) thought **would have come to us more easily** if he **could have written more simply**.

γγ) Vor allen Hilfszeitwörtern.

Der Gebrauch beschränkt sich auf wenige Adverbia, die dann in dieser Stellung betont sind:

1. Clive had reason to be well pleased that the English were disposed to give solid rupees, which **he never could have extorted** from them, in exchange for a few Persian characters which cost him nothing. — 2. S. Johnson has not remarked, that to the very same work is prefixed an eulogium on Milton, which **certainly could not have been acceptable** at the court of Charles the Second. — 3. A Captain Jones left a chart telling of a spot in the ocean where diamonds **apparently may be had** for the mere scratching of the earth, and a secret expedition has been fitted out to secure the treasure.

c) „Ad verbum“ an bevorzugter Stelle.

Das Adverbium kann wie die übrigen Satztheile an der Spitze und am Ende des ganzen Satzes stehen, ohne daß dadurch sein logisches Verhältniß zum Prädikat geändert wird.

Im Gefüge der „Rede“, d. h. in zusammenhängender Darstellung können beide Stellen als bevorzugte insofern angesehen

werden, als sie für den syntaktisch klaren Zusammenhang, aber auch für den Rhythmus der Gliederung, d. h. stilistisch von Bedeutung sind.

α) Das Adverb in Spitzenstellung.

Das Adverb kann an die Spitze, also auch vor das Subjekt treten, wenn es entweder äußerlich hervortreten oder den Satz entlasten soll.

Bem. Führt es in dieser Stellung zur **Inversion**, so wird auf diese verwiesen (S. 193); gehört es als **Satzadverb** appositionell zum ganzen Satz, auf Abschnitt IV; ist es nur **satzverbindend**, auf die Satzreihe bzw. die Konjunktionen.

1. **Ever more imperiously** they (her saints) ordered her (Joan of Arc) to drive the English out of France and to anoint the Dauphin Charles as King at Rheims. — 2. But all was in vain. **Slowly, but steadily, the power** of Britain continued to increase, and that of France to decline. — 3. **Regretfully** we remember that never again will Mr. Henty brighten his "dear lads'" Christmastide. — 4. So gradually and with prudence M. Briand is seeking to consolidate his position. — 5. **Sometimes** she (Queen Victoria) **was taken**, and at very awkward moments, with what the French so aptly term *le fou rire*. — 6. **Leisurely**, our four horses are taken out; **leisurely**, the coach stands in the little street, bereft of horses, . . . **leisurely**, the new horses come into visible existence, one by one; **leisurely**, the new postilions follow, . . . **leisurely** the old postilions count their money.

β) Das Adverb in Endstellung:

1. "Gabriel," she said automatically, when he entered, turning up a face of which only the well-known lines remained to tell him it was hers, all else in the picture **having faded quite**. — 2. Karl Baedeker, with his marvellously accurate knowledge of the price of everything, **spread** his net for this traveller **successfully**. — 3. It is true, **we have** a considerable number of these compounds **still**—as *thunder-storm, thunder-cloud, kingdom, witchcraft, sword-bearer, earthquake, handicraft* . . . — 4. Cite always; quote rarely; use phrase without quotation **never**. — 5. Charles II. was not a tyrant from the ordinary motives. He **valued** power for its own sake **little**, and fame still **less**.

II. Das Adverb gehört zum Substantiv.

Das Adverb kann — durch Satzverkürzung — unmittelbar zum Substantiv treten, welches also im Grunde Prädikatsnomen ist.

a) Vor dem Substantiv.

α) Ohne Artikel:

1. To this point we trace the power of those princes who, **nominally vassals**, but really independent, long governed, with the titles of dukes, marquesses, and counts, almost every part of the dominions which had obeyed Charlemagne. — 2. The famous High Church leader of the middle of the last century was always known to his contemporaries as **simply Dr. Pusey**, despite that he was one of the canons of Christ Church.

β) Mit (unbetontem) Artikel.

αα) Vor dem Artikel:

1. I think the manner in which they have invited me here, **locally a stranger**, to receive the expression of their cordial sympathy, and only because they recognise some effort on my part to maintain the greatness of their country, is evidence of the spirit = "*me who am locally a stranger.*" — 2. They had been merely first Magistrates, Doges, Stadtholders; he (George III.) was **emphatically a King**, the anointed of heaven, the breath of his people's nostrils. — 3. Such, as far as we can now judge, was the feeling of the country respecting Nabobs in general. And Clive was **eminently the Nabob**—the ablest, the most celebrated, the highest in rank, the highest in fortune, of all the fraternity. — 4. "You are **quite a woman**, little Fan," exclaimed the boy.

ββ) **Zwischen** bestimmtem Artikel bzw. Possessivum und Substantivum — in gedeckter Stellung, attributivisch — bei einigen wenigen lokalen und temporalen Adverbien:

The (man who was) then minister.

Vgl. Attribut, S. 211.

b) Nach dem Substantiv.

Nur bei einigen pronominalen Adverbien, unbeschränkt bei präpositionalen Wortgruppen — attributivisch:

1. To enforce these measures of repression troops were sent to America, and General Gage, the **commander-in-chief there**, was appointed Governor of Massachusetts. — 2. The man in the street.—The way down.—The voyage out.

Hervorhebend oder berichtigend:

3. In fact, **the Strand particularly** was a veritable street of private palaces until the close of the seventeenth century. — 4. Would that a similar holiday could be given to all the politicians and all **the law-makers generally**. — 5. A great deal of misunderstanding exists regarding the real object of **the distribution** of capital **geographically**.

In der Briefformel: Yours sincerely N. N. u. ä.

Die steigernden oder abschwächenden Adverbia

also, at least, even, merely, only, too

können dem Substantiv, **alone** muß ihm folgen; **only** tritt auch vor das Verbum:

1. Lord Rosebery's speech is an appeal to the nation to support the development of the Empire not with **applause only** or even with money **votes alone**. — 2. What we need is, in the words of the Prime Minister, cooperation in peace and war within the Empire itself. That is the problem. It is not a problem for British **statesmen only or chiefly**; it is a problem for the statesmen throughout the whole of the Empire. — 3. No more fatal mistake could be made than to dissolve the bonds of union to **which alone** they owe their past success, and by **which alone** they can hope to remain safe and prosperous in the future. — 4. I have **only** known in my life **two sorts** of constituents, the municipal and the academical. Both have been

kind to me. Neither has ever rejected me. — Mr. M. makes a slip, which I only observed a few days ago. — 5. Some of the Hungarians also are among those who have not yet had enough of war. — 6. A few unpromising fights, a few forlorn hopes even, fought now with courage and good temper, would pave the way to success another year, and the candidates we elect to help may rest assured of our best efforts in their support. — 7. In one walk, at least, it had been admitted by envy itself that he was without a living competitor. — 8. We are apt to think of Carlyle as a prophet merely, a satirist or a dreamer; we forget the amount of actual work done for us by his hard toil. — 9. Milton means what he says; and means it with his might too.

III. Das Adverb gehört zum Adjektiv (Adverb).

Die Zugehörigkeit kann unmittelbar sein oder mittelbar.

Unmittelbar werden nur die „Eigenschaftswörter“ (s. S. 57) bestimmt, und zwar durch Gradadverbia; diese können ihrer Bedeutung nach unbestimmte (allgemeine, relative) oder bestimmte (konkrete, absolute) sein; die bestimmten können zugleich eine Beziehung auf das Subjekt oder Objekt enthalten:—wie sehr?

Mittelbar ist die Bestimmung durch Adverbia dann, wenn nicht nach der Stärke oder Schwäche der Eigenschaft gefragt wird, sondern nach den Umständen, unter denen sie sich betätigt:—wieso? inwiefern? — modal.

a) Gradadverbia

können steigern und abschwächen.

Die Grenze zwischen den relativen und absoluten Gradadverbien verwischt sich vielfach in der Praxis: auch „bestimmte“ Adverbia können auf längere oder kürzere Zeit zur „unbestimmten“ Steigerung verwendet werden; sie können auf besondere Klassen der Gesellschaft beschränkt bleiben, endlich Mode werden oder „slang.“

α) Unbestimmte Gradadverbia:

Den „grammatischen“ more—most, less—least schließen sich andere als weniger allgemein an:

1. The tendency to drop the terminations has characterised the whole history of the English, and some have been lost within a comparatively recent period. — 2. India is of vast extent, with an area almost, and a population just, equal to the area and population of Europe without Russia. — 3. His (Burns') Letters to Mrs. Dunlop are uniformly excellent. — 4. Apart from these particular articles, it is not too much to say that the Quarterlies maintain an extraordinarily high standard of scholarship and writing. — 5. A more nearly just verdict . . .

Weitaus die meisten gehen zwar von konkreten Steigerungsbegriffen aus, werden aber tatsächlich als allgemein steigerrnde verwendet:

6. It is abundantly evident that the First Lord is fully alive to the grave needs of our national defence, and every public-spirited citizen will desire that he should not be hampered in fulfilling his trust. — 7. The confi-

dence which he (James II.) placed in the loyal assurances of the High Church party was the **most exquisitely** ludicrous proof of folly that a politician ever gave. — 8. Mr. G. H. Wells, the famous novelist and social writer, led off with a series of six stimulating and **brilliantly** lucid articles and contributed two further articles later in the controversy.

3) Bestimmte Gradaverbia.

Diese stehen begrifflich zwischen den graduellen und den modalen Adverbien (b): sie enthalten eine Beziehung auf das Subjekt oder Objekt, sind daher attributiv-adverbial.

Bem. Nur in der **ly**-Form auftretend, bilden sie ein wertvolles Mittel knappen, plastischen Satzbaus.

1. When it was all over and a verdict of "Dead from natural causes" had been returned, the coroner said he had been told that the dead man had always earned miserable wages and that the widow was **grindingly** poor. He suggested that the jury should give her their fees. — 2. Our native histories of our native literature leave much to be desired. But they are not so **hopelessly** bad as to justify the translation of the precious work before us. — 3. Theoretically, indeed, and in the abstract, the Church has begun to meddle in industrial questions. We discuss them in **ardently ambiguous** phrases at all our Church congresses and diocesan conferences. — 4. We are **sadly destitute** of terminations appropriated to those adjectives which express the substance of which a thing is made; being generally obliged to turn the substantive itself, unchanged, into an adjective, often with a total sacrifice of euphony. — 5. But experience has clearly shown that a Calvinistic Church, like every other church, is disaffected when it is persecuted, quiet when it is tolerated, and **actively loyal** when it is favoured and cherished.

b) Modale Adverbia.

Das Adverb gehört, wie S. 246 beim Substantiv, infolge einer Ersparung der Copula scheinbar **nur** zum Adjektiv:

1. Thus the system on which the English Princes acted with respect to ecclesiastical affairs for some time after the Reformation, was a system too **obviously unreasonable** to be lasting. — 2. In result, failing definite sustained effort to break up a narrow "caste" feeling, the public school presents a **practically solid** phalanx of the fortunate, insulated against any knowledge of, or sympathy with, the less fortunate = "*a ph. which is pr. solid.*" — 3. Hansard himself only publishes the speeches of members by connivance, and in defiance of a **very properly obsolete** law. — 4. Some of the cases already quoted were those of a very small minority of **inconveniently** rich. — 5. The eugenists say that a tendency to disease is heritable, that we should aim at preventing the multiplication of unhealthy stocks, and should forbid the **physically and mentally unfit** to marry at all.

Erst steigernd, dann modal:

6. The claims they make are **eminently eloquent, morally and socially** right.

Logische Verschiebung.

Das modale Adverb erscheint — im leichteren Stil — in adjektivischer, dem Adjektiv selbst durch **and** koordinierter Form.

1. "Your name?"—"Kate! **Short and sweet**, isn't it?" — 2. It's lucky she's so nice and **solid**.

Das Adverb gehört zum Adverb:

1. German papers are not much read in Britain, though **just now** they would repay the reading. — 2. Dryden's criticism has stood the test of time **strangely well**; and it is a proof of his sanity of view that he was superior to the fads of the day as few critics have been. — 3. The whole English law, substantive and adjective, was, in the judgment of all the greatest lawyers . . . **almost exactly** the same after the Revolution as before it. — 4. In the autumn of 1674, the gout attacked him (Milton) **internally** . . . and he died, **peacefully** and apparently **painlessly**. ("*jingling*.")

Die Stellung

der Gradadverbia ist die „natürliche“; sie gehen dem durch sie gesteigerten Adjektiv voran.

Nur **enough** geht dem Adjektiv **nie** voran, während das einen Komparativ bestimmende **still** in seiner Stellung schwankt. — Beide können, wie auch **altogether**, sogar hinter das zum Adjektiv gehörige Substantiv treten.

1. She sank down against a straggling furze bush, **an easy pillow enough**; and the bed of snow, too, was soft. — Coleridge is a **good enough authority** for its modern use. — That was to each the only consolation—**cold enough** and **scant enough comfort**. (Ellinger, Verm. Beitr. S. 5.) — 2. That (the abolition of the labour class), I know, sounds a vast proposal, but this is a **gigantic business altogether**, and we can do nothing with it unless we are prepared to deal with large ideas. — 3. The Parliament which James had called soon after his accession had been refractory. His second Parliament, called in the spring of 1614, had been **more refractory still**. — There is a noble curiosity, questioning, in the front of danger, the place of the great continents beyond the sea: — **a nobler curiosity still**, which questions of the source of the River of Life.

rather und **quite** können durch den unbestimmten Artikel vom Adjektiv getrennt werden:

4. In a country like this it is only in a **rather special atmosphere** that education and learning, as such, and apart from commercial or other utilitarian considerations, can be fostered or even appreciated. — In truth, Xenophon, though his taste was elegant, his disposition amiable, and his intercourse with the world extensive, had, we suspect, **rather a weak head**. — 5. But this philosophic treatment of history does not enter into Mr. Bell's scheme. His work is the work of one who has a definite point of view, and **a quite unnecessary terror** of sacerdotal claims. — In Germany the energetic beginner often finds it so easy to obtain support from a banker that this is looked upon as **quite a secondary consideration**; the principal thing is to get orders and to deliver the goods.

Modaladverbia können nachgestellt eine Berichtigung oder Einschränkung enthalten:

6. There is little doubt that in all the qualities which make a man attractive, **socially and intellectually**, M. Poincaré is head and shoulders

above any of his recent predecessors in the great office he holds. — 7. It is taken for granted that the Chinese and Japanese **are strong commercially** because they can live on next to nothing. — 8. No franker, more magnanimous, fearless man—**morally or physically**—I think, ever lived (than Viscount Wolsley).

IV. Das Adverb gehört zum ganzen Satz.

Nur diejenigen Adverbia kommen hier in Frage, welche als gekürzte Sätze dem (Haupt-)Satz gegenüber **attributivisch** bzw. **appositionell** aufzufassen sind und, weil Sätze, die Inversion ausschließen. — Die Spitzenstellung wird bevorzugt.

a) Das Satzadverb an der Spitze.

Nur mit gerader Wortstellung und Pause bzw. (häufig felder!) Interpunktion:

1. **Luckily for him however**, at that time Sir William Denison, Governor of Tasmania, hearing that a relative of Arnold's (his grandson) was in New Zealand, offered him the post of Chief Inspector of Schools for Tasmania. — 2. **Sadly, sadly**, the sun rose; and it rose upon no sadder sight than the man of good abilities and good emotions, incapable of their directed exercise. — 3. **Consciously or unconsciously**, each generation is adapting to itself the inheritance of all generations. — 4. **Significantly**, he had no toleration for the ideas of others; he was not even able to understand or enter into them. — 5. **Frankly**, we consider the mildness of this name a mistake. (Punch.) (*"The Daisy"* für ein Kriegsschiff.) — 6. **Often as not**, this affectation of cynicism, like the blundering impudence of a shy man, is merely the soft warm heart of a latter-day sentimentalist in a pitifully thin disguise. — 7. . . . and if the Servian reply does not please their great neighbours, **presumably** the guns will fire. — 8. When Sir Wilfrid Laurier thinks that such an unusual effort is necessary, **clearly** he does not face the General Election of 1911 with his usual calm confidence. — 9. So, perhaps, now that, **unhappily**, a well-known writer has been killed by an automobile in Paris, something may be done to check the dangerous speed of French automobilists in the streets.

b) Das Satzadverb eingeschoben:

1. Give an Englishman the idea—**rightly or wrongly**—that he is being treated like a child about some restriction, and he is just as angry whether he wants to do the thing or not. — 2. Napoleon, as he found to his cost—and **curiously enough** to his surprise—had morally perverted the French character. — 3. And to say this is, of course, to say that there exists a human instinct with which every philosophy must, **whether logically or illogically**, in the long run make terms. — 4. I, **happily**, belong to, and have passed a long life in, a profession that has been engaged in conserving health, preventing disease, and protecting life and limb.

c) Das Satzadverb am Satzende.

Die Grenze gegen das „ad verbum“ Adverb (I, c, β) ist kaum zu ziehen. In der hier in Betracht kommenden Verwendung ist das Adverb meist ein nachträglicher Zusatz, der mit Pause und ohne Hochtön gesprochen wird.

1. One hears a lot of cheap talk about missionary failures and defects, and sometimes they do fail, and it is true there are defects more or less peculiar to missionaries, **necessarily** = "*which must needs be.*" — 2. The worker is beginning now to strike for unprecedented ends—against the system, against the fundamental conditions of labour, to strike for no defined ends at all, **perplexingly and disconcertingly** = "*which is perplexing and disconcerting.*" — 3. I will down to the Squire for a distraction, if you esteem it necessary, **certainly**.

Das Satzgefüge

entsteht, wenn Teile eines Satzes selbst in Satzform auftreten. Es ist daher nur eine besondere Form des Einzelsatzes.

Ein unmittelbares und zuverlässiges Mittel, den Hauptsatz vom Nebensatz zu unterscheiden, besitzt das Englische nur in einigen Konjunktionen (im engeren Sinn). Moden und Zeiten können zur Unterscheidung dienen, auch kann die gegenseitige Stellung beider Sätze maßgebend sein: dagegen ist die Wortstellung innerhalb beider Sätze grundsätzlich dieselbe.

Die mittelbaren Erkennungszeichen der Betonung, der Pause, der Bewegungen aller Art stehen der Schrift weniger zur Verfügung als der Rede.

Der formal unabhängige Satz kann der logisch abhängige sein und umgekehrt.

Nach Inhalt und Bedeutung kann der Nebensatz etwas Tatsächliches, Vorhandenes, Erreichtes ausdrücken oder etwas nur Angenommenes, bedingungsweise Eintretendes, noch zu Erreichendes.

Subjekt-, Objekt- und Attributsätze können zugleich in einem äußeren (tatsächlichen) und in einem inneren (kausalen) Verhältnis zum Hauptsatz stehen. Von den „subjungierenden“ Konjunktionen lassen nur einige die Art der logischen Beziehung zum Hauptsatz ausreichend erkennen, sodaß Zeiten und Moden zu Hilfe genommen werden; in ihren einfachen (flexivischen) oder zusammengesetzten Formen. Trotzdem aber wird die Art des Abhängigkeitsverhältnisses vielfach nur aus dem Zusammenhang klar.

In gewissen Fällen enthält der Hauptsatz bereits einen Hinweis auf die innere Beziehung zum Nebensatz.

Nach der für den Einzelsatz gewählten Einteilung werden unterschieden:

- A) Subjektsätze,
- B) Objektsätze,
- C) Attributsätze,
- D) Adverbsätze.

A. Der Subjektsatz.

Der Subjektsatz kann angeschlossen oder selbständig sein.

a) Angeschlossen,

und zwar durch die Konjunktion **that** oder durch relativ-interrogative Fürwörter.

α) Anschluß durch **that**:

1. **That he (Pitt) was in error** will scarcely, we think, be disputed by his warmest admirers. — 2. The crowning pity of it all is **that a system of government should be capable** of driving men such as Stepniak into murderous protest and barren exile. — 3. In view of her past history, the wonder should be, not **that Newfoundland has made** so little progress, but **that she has made** so much.

Verläßt der Subjektsatz seine „normale“ Stelle, so bedarf es in der Regel eines Hinweises darauf — meistens durch **it**; vgl. S. 184.

4. „Notes,” says Dr. Johnson, “are a necessary evil.” If this is true, it follows **that the briefer they are the better**. — 5. It is an old remark, **that boys who shine at school do not make** the greatest figure when they grow up and come out into the world.

Durch **should** erhält der **that**-Satz kausale oder finale Eigenbedeutung; doch kann es auch nur zur Abschwächung dienen:

6. This system (the “*New Method*”) is at once so sensible and so consonant with Nature, **that it may seem astonishing** to any one unacquainted with the ways of schoolmasters **that it should not have been adopted** long ago. — 7. It is right **that a false Latin quantity should excite** a smile in the House of Commons; but it is wrong **that a false English meaning should not excite** a frown there. — 8. **That war should have broken out**, has falsified many predictions.

Auch ein **if**-Satz kann Subjekt sein:

9. In the first place, **it would conduce to the general comfort if that monstrosity, the family biography, were done away with**.

β) Anschluß durch (interrogative) Relativa,

welche durch Zusammenziehung oder Verschlingung auch dem Hauptsatz angehören; s. Objektsatz α, αβ.

1. **Who offers much** brings something unto many. — 2. **What my father was himself willing to undergo** for the sake of my instruction, may be judged from the fact that I went through the whole process of my Greek lessons in the same room and at the same table at which he was writing. (J. St. Mill.) — 3. **Whichever** of these conclusions **we adopt**, requires us to treat the religious sentiment with respect. — 4. **What are known as Acoustic**

changes, or changes due to faulty imitation, occur chiefly in foreign words. — 5. If there is a moral in the matter it is that, as there is no duty incumbent on any one to quote, **whoever does** should do it properly.

γ) Anschluß durch Interrogativa,

(Pronomina oder pronominale Adverbia):

1. How formidable airships will prove in warfare is a much disputed question (1910). — 2. Whether by prudent conduct **they** (the Lollards) **might have secured** a repeal of the persecuting act, is uncertain. — 3. **It** is a strange thing **how little** in general people know about the sky. — 4. When the violent acts of the Long Parliament are blamed, let it not be forgotten from **what** a tyranny **they** rescued the nation.

b) Ohne Anschluß:

1. The fact is **our views** on Germany and the Germans **require**, like our Poor Law and one or two other things in the United Kingdom and Ireland, urgent revision. — 2. There is no doubt **some of Shaw's work** begins to look woefully old-fashioned. — 3. It is to be hoped **nothing serious has happened**. — 4. He was perfectly aware that in Parliament it was impossible **anything great could be done** without co-operation. — 5. To this I answer that it is notorious **persons of no genius have been** oftentimes great linguists. — 6. No wonder **he** (Cromwell) grew in popularity, or **that** in 1640 **he was elected** by the borough of Cambridge to both the Parliaments which met in that year. (*That* ist hier unentbehrlich.)

Der (formale) Hauptsatz ist eingeschoben:

7. Even at Hampden, there are, it seems, no important papers relative to the most illustrious proprietor of that ancient domain.

B. Der Objektsatz

richtet sich syntaktisch nach der Form und Bedeutung des durch ihn zu ergänzenden Prädikats.

Ist dieses ein einfaches Transitivum oder ein transitiv aufzufassender Ausdruck, so erfolgt der Anschluß (falls er nicht entbehrlich ist) durch **that** oder in Form eines Relativ- bzw. Interrogativsatzes.

Entspricht der Objektsatz einem präpositionalen Wortobjekt, so sind der Verwendung des **that**-Satzes bestimmte Schranken gesetzt.

a) Der direkte Objektsatz.

α) Mit Anschluß.

αα) Durch **that**:

1. **That a thing is an anomaly**, I consider to be no objection to it whatever. — 2. His thinking **that a crisis was near** led him to act impulsively. — 3. But **this** we know, **that language** in its mature state is fed and fattened on metaphor. — 4. On the 30th of January, 1621, Hampden took

his seat in the House of Commons. His mother **was** exceedingly **desirous** **that** her son **should** **obtain** a peerage. — 5. The contributors to this symposium, with one or two brilliant exceptions, **give** **no** **evidence** **whatever** **that** they know what fine poetry is.

ββ) Durch Relativa oder Interrogativa

vermittelst einer „Verschlingung“: das formale Objekt ist durch das Fürwort aufgesaugt, der Objektsatz ist zugleich attributivisch:

1. **What** I spent, I had; **what** I saved, I lost; **what** I gave, I have.
 — 2. **What** any of the Queen's subjects **may** do the Queen may do. —
 3. **What** the head learns the head may forget, or later argument destroy; but **what** is learnt by heart none can take away, neither can the years dim.
 — 4. **Whatever** crime they (the agitators in India) **can** imagine a government committing they say that the Government has committed. — 5. I don't guarantee the exact truth of everything I am going to tell. **What** I say I have seen, I have seen. **What** I say I have heard, I have heard. — 6. **What** was the opinion entertained respecting him (Hampden) by the best men of his time, we learn from Baxter. — 7. I have never been able to see **what** should attract men to the profession of criticism but the noble pleasure of praising. — 8. We question **whether** since Burke delivered his celebrated speech at Bristol, **any** one has ever more unflinchingly and thoroughly carried out its maxims. — 9. The advantage of studying French and German in their native countries is obvious, and we all know **how** history becomes a matter of immediate interest in the presence of historic scenes. — 10. **How** beneficial has been the influence of this speech and of the policy which it emphasized, every one who has visited India during the Vice-royalty of Lord Curzon will bear witness. Vgl. aa, 4 u. 5. — 11. **Whence** they (the weapons) last came, **where** they began, **through** **what** agency they crookedly quivered and jerked, scores at a time over the heads of the crowd, no eye in the throng could have told.

β) Ohne Anschluß,

besonders nach den Verben des Sagens und Denkens:

1. We have no scruple in saying they will in that respect sustain comparison with any speeches with which the whole range of British oratory has supplied us. — 2. We can only say that we hope his successors in this series will follow the example which he has set. — 3. While the style of those speeches which Mr. Macaulay has here corrected for the first time, is infinitely more his own than that of the reported speeches, he assures us the substance is faithfully given. — 4. The moment you quit this vice, you will be a truly great man; and still there will imperfections enough remain to convince us you are not a god. — 5. Foolhardy man, to suppose, because we have constables in the streets of big cities, we have dismissed the highwayman to limbo.

Der formale Hauptsatz kann in den logischen Hauptsatz eingeschoben werden:

6. God himself, they devoutly trusted, would shelter His servants in the day of battle against the impious men who were less their enemies than His. — 7. The volume herewith issued (Facts and Comments) I can say with certainty will be my last. — 8. For myself I am, I hope and believe, an optimist; I think that every grief has its compensating pleasure. — 9. We love, we own, to read the great productions of the human mind as they were written.

b) Der präpositionale Objektsatz

umfaßt die Sätze, welche als Objekt andere als einfache transitive Verba ergänzen. Er tritt auf mit *that* oder in der Form von relativen bzw. Fragesätzen.

α) Der *that*-Satz

ergänzt gewisse mit Präpositionen gebildete Transitiva, verlangt aber die Ankündigung durch *it*:

1. The mind and conscience of the whole nation is definitely resolved upon **it that the land shall be delivered** from the opium curse. — 2. Fire has burned in the Balkans; it is for diplomacy to **see to it lest all Europe become** a seven-times heated furnace of devouring flame. — 3. Zealous as Mr. Macaulay was for Reform, the whole series of splendid speeches on that subject everywhere show that he was chiefly **anxious for it that it might avert** (as it *did* avert) Revolution. — 4. The noble lord the member for Tiverton is one of the very few men in this House, or out of it, who are bold enough to **insist upon it that there is a growing strength** in the Turkish empire.

β) Der Relativ- oder Fragesatz,

wie bei α, α, ββ), durch „Verschlingung“ mit dem Hauptsatz, ist die häufigste Anschlußform. Er dient

αα) zur Ergänzung mit Substantiven zusammengesetzter Transitiva:

I make no note of **to whom my book has been lent**.

ββ) zur Ergänzung transitiver Verbalsubstantiva:

1. An interesting **illustration of how**, by the law of suggestion, a crook **may be made** to catch himself, is found in the Marie Smith murder case. — 2. To Gulliver's own **explanation of where he came from**, they scarcely listened.

γγ) zur Einfügung des indirekten Personenobjektes:

1. Honour **to whom honour is due**. — 2. I venture to beg you to grant me space in your pages to make known **to whom it may concern** the above fact. — 3. What we call Blue Books, and charge for by *avoidupois weight*, are in the United States distributed freely **to whosoever asks for them**.

δδ) In erstarrten, unvollständigen Sätzen, wie:

1. All self-expression is a challenge thrown down to the world, to be taken up **by whoso will**. — 2. Restoration, **by whomever effected**, was the natural and inevitable end.

C. Der Attributsatz.

Wir unterscheiden ergänzende (bestimmende, einschränkende) und erweiternde (erklärende, berichtende) Attributsätze.

Die ergänzenden Attributsätze sind unselbständig und können unangeschlossen bleiben, die erweiternden sind selbständig ihrer Bedeutung nach und verlangen einen (formalen) Anschluß.

Die Unterscheidung — oft belanglos — wird erschwert durch die schwache Differenzierung von **that** und **who**, **which**, sowie durch deren unabänderliche Spitzenstellung.

In dem Satz: "There were very few passengers, who escaped without serious injury" sind zwei selbständige Sätze verknüpft. Fehlt das Pausenzeichen, so schränkt der Relativsatz ein, ist unselbständig, *few* hat den Hauptton.

I. Allgemeine Formen.

a) Der ergänzende Attributsatz.

α) Mit Anschluß

durch Relativa.

Der Attributsatz kann äußerlich etwas Tatsächliches einfach „attribuieren“, aber auch eine innere Beziehung zum Hauptsatz enthalten.

αα) Rein attributivisch:

1. The conduct of the extraordinary woman who then governed England, is an admirable study for **politicians who live in unquiet times**. — 2. So much for any **successes which** it may be alleged the Government have achieved. — 3. There is one **supreme interest which I will not sit down without adverting to**, and that is the interest of the Empire at large. — 4. **Political life that is uniform** has no interest, however prosperous it may be. — 5. Dr. Johnson's Dictionary was hailed with an enthusiasm **such as no similar work has ever excited**. — 6. Even the educated classes spend their money in supporting charlatans, who work on practically **the same lines as did such arch humbugs as Cagliostro**. — 7. There is **no freak so ridiculous but some Englishman has attempted** to immortalize by money and law. — 8. Schoolmasters are apt to forget that our teaching of Latin comes from a **time when Latin was used** as a real substitute for the mother tongue—when it was a living language. — 9. In a day when **biography**, when it remains history, **has parted company with literature**, veering between a slovenly bead-chain of letters and plodding accuracy, it is good to hail a work which, to minute research, adds the aim, and the honours, of literature.

Bem. Das erste *'when'* ist attributivisch, das zweite ist Konjunktion.

Appositionell in:

10. Mr. Shaw's tacit **assumption, that there is only one wise man in the world and his name begins with S**, is apt to irritate. — 11. The ennobling difference between one man and another, — between one animal and another. — is precisely in **this, that one feels more than another**.

ββ) Attributivisch — adverbiall:

1. The difficulty is that, except with a few giants of intellect, the greatest authors are seldom the favourite authors. **The reader who should claim**

the Lubbock library as his pet collection of tame books would be a hundred times a giant. — 2. You start, therefore, with a territorial limitation. In the next place we have excluded, and here we follow the precedent of the Bill of 1893, certain **matters which**, although they might fall within the territorial limit, everybody agrees it is desirable **should not be delegated**.

β) Ohne Anschluß.

Das leitende Substantiv gehört zugleich dem Attributsatz an, welcher, schwächer betont, die (erwartete) Ergänzung des Substantivs enthält.

Das Substantiv kann im Hauptsatz wie im Nebensatz die verschiedensten syntaktischen Funktionen übernehmen, doch beschränkt sich der Gebrauch in der literarischen Sprache auf die „Auslassung“ des direkten Objektes. Für den leichteren Stil und die Rede bietet das Lockere dieser Satzverknüpfung große Vorteile.

Das substantivische Beziehungswort bildet zugleich für den Attributsatz

αα) das Objekt:

1. „Lawyers,” once said Disraeli, “always tell you **the things you don’t want to know**.” — 2. If the country shares the view of the right hon. gentleman, it is not **they we have to fear**, but he. — 3. It is as the poet of the native-born that he (R. Kipling) has done most for the Empire. He has not only brought the colonies to a perfect passion of devotedness; he has also expressed **the thoughts they themselves did not know they cherished**. — 4. It’s the **only thing I’ve ever known him really wish for**, almost keen about. — 5. Do you think that **the things people make fools of themselves about** are any less real and true than **the things they behave sensibly about**?

ββ) Das Subjekt:

1. I wonder **who it was** defined man as a rational animal! — 2. Till I met you I had no conception of **the happiness there is in the world for a man and woman who love each other**. — 3. I have **a name will brook** a master before it as well as another. — 4. The ship was built to carry explosives, and **there’s not a man in London will insure her**. — 5. It has been said that there are fifty houses in England to-day for **every one there was** fifty years ago. — 6. Here was **a riot might have equalled the Gordon riots**, had the dreaded army not been at hand to strike promptly. — 7. They were nearly all works dealing with the ancient practice of medicine, but **one there was dealt with secret poisons**.

γγ) Das Prädikatsnomen:

1. English privileges have made it (the Empire) **all that it is**; English privileges alone will make it **all it can be**. — 2. It seems probable that the whole body of womenkind retired within their inner consciousness, and became **the mysteries they have since remained**.

δδ) Das Adverbiale:

1. If anything on earth is uncertain **at the time these words are written** it is the final settlement of the enormous disturbances of the map of

Europe due to the Balkan War. — 2. The reason villages are sleepy, we repeat, is because the farm labourers are wretchedly paid, miserably housed, and insufficiently fed. — 3. I want to speak to you about the treasures hidden in books; and about the way we find them and the way we lose them.

b) Der erweiternde Attributsatz.

Meistens ist das Substantiv schon in irgendeiner Weise — durch Pronomen, Adjektiv — „bestimmt“, sodaß die im Attributsatz enthaltene Bestimmung ohne weiteres als etwas Neues oder auch Entbehrliches empfunden wird, nicht als Ergänzung.

Diese Attributsätze bedürfen stets eines formalen Anschlusses, und zwar durch **who**, **which** oder **what**, bzw. relativische Adverbia — mit vorhergehendem Pausezeichen.

Häufiger als die bestimmenden Attributsätze drücken die erweiternden zugleich eine logische Beziehung zum Hauptsatz aus.

a) Rein zusätzlich:

1. The followers of Darwin's great predecessor, Lamarck—among whom Mr. Herbert Spencer is perhaps the chief—will have it that changes in the structure of an animal are brought about principally, though not entirely, by the action upon it of its surroundings. — 2. In studying words, that is to say, one is at the same time studying man, who is more interesting to himself than any other subject. — 3. Gustav Frenssen, who thus awoke one morning and found himself famous, is the son of a village carpenter, and was born at Barlt in Schleswig-Holstein. — 4. Mr. Fox was a man of genius, and (what in the present day is almost as rare) a gentleman.

β) Adverbiell.

Die logische (innere) Beziehung zum Hauptsatz ist meistens konzessiv oder kausal:

1. With many charming painters, who hardly seem to have a fault, we have no great artist. — 2. Johnson, all whose studies were desultory, and who hated, as he said, to read books through, made an exception in favour of the Pilgrim's Progress. — 3. Gay, who commenced life as apprentice to a silk-mercator, became a secretary of legation at five-and-twenty. — 4. Alcohol, which stupefies most brains, has on his a stimulating and clarifying power. — 5. The classical game of whist which to be a master of, was an intellectual distinction, is now only indulged in by a few antiquated fossils. — 6. But we have a perfect specimen of a nation in the strictest sense when we speak of the Jews, who were distinct in race, strong in their national sentiment, persistent in their attachment to a geographical area.

II. Besondere Formen des Attributsatzes,

des ergänzenden und erweiternden.

Die Verwendung der satzverknüpfenden Relativa führt (oder zwingt) zu Konstruktionen, welche nicht durchweg der edleren Prosa angehören — zu Einschiebungen, Verschlingungen oder Einschachtelungen:

1. The reason is that Germany is the great malcontent of the world, of **whom** we know that her need of expansion is so urgent that she cannot possibly suffer her chances to be impaired. — 2. This must necessarily be of great use to all those poets who confess they never learn, and of **whom** the world is convinced they never read. — 3. William's policy and that of his successors, **which** we owe them a debt for being bold enough to construct and strong enough to carry out, was to ceaselessly attack the principle that etc. — 4. Law-making is only necessary where there is law-breaking, and the old laws must be broken to prepare the ground for the new ones **which** nature demands must be made. — 5. The Dictator may bring about the defeat of the Government over a measure **which** he is anxious should become law. — 6. This is one of those openings for the expatiation of fancy, in **which** **whosoever** indulges his whim should first make a due estimate of his credit and reputation. — 7. Shakespeare's mind may be likened to that modern machine, into **which** if a thousand voices speak it will treasure up and redeliver the words. — 8. We have found that the offer from the Colonies, **which** if we neglected we should lose those Colonies, was a delusion unfounded on any substratum of fact. — 9. He was like a torrent, to **whose** progress if you oppose a great stone, it brawls and struggles past it and round it and over it with more vigour than before. (Ch. Reade!) — 10. The more one studies Shakespeare, the more clearly one perceives in him a latent but quite individual prose-style, **which**, had he worked it out, would have been a treasurable addition to the great lineage of English prose.

who — whom.

Das Subjekt **who** gerät unter den Einfluß eines ihm unmittelbar folgenden Transitivums:

1. Men of note **whom** he thinks are likely to appreciate . . . — 2. Quietly in a corner . . . sits a girl **whom** we know is the heroine of the chattering crowd. — 3. Mr. Whibley selected that poem (one of Byron's early poems) as an example of the work of the man **whom** he says is greater than Keats, Shelley and Wordsworth. — 4. Hoover, **whom** everybody knows has been chief of the White House staff for several administrations, is very frank in his admiration of Harding.

than whom . . .

hat einen archaischen Klang:

1. It is a Doctor Johnson phrase: "Pope **than** **whom** few men had more vanity." — 2. G. Saintsbury, **than** **whom** no man has read more or profited less by it, tells us that the fame of G. Eliot . . . has now almost utterly vanished away. — 3. Even headmasters, **than** **whom** within their own sphere no autocrat wields more despotic power, are apt to be disrespectfully spoken of as flogging machines.

who — and his . . .

Archaisch ist auch bei nebengeordneten Attributsätzen der Übergang vom Relativum zum Possessivum. Vgl. S. 116.

1. The style of the painter would be detected by experts, **whose** eyes are trained **and** their judgment to be trusted. — 2. The double process of dissolution and ossification was at work—both going on simultaneously as they go on in the body of an ageing man **whose** joints get stiff **and** **his** veins grow

hard. — 3. He had many questions to ask me . . . of the various professors, with **whom and their proficiency** he seemed well acquainted.

Der Prädikatsatz

ist nur eine besondere Art des Attributsatzes; er dient zur Ergänzung von Kopula und kopulativen Verben, an die er durch Relativa und die Konjunktion **that** angeschlossen wird.

Er kann, wie das nominale Prädikat, dem Subjekt vorangehen oder folgen.

1. **What the English has been most taxed with**, is its deficiency in harmony of sound. — 2. This seems **what he meant**. — 3. That is **where he stood**. — 4. The present constitution of our country **is**, to the constitution under which she lived five hundred years ago, **what the tree is to the sapling, what the man is to the boy**.

Für den Sinn kann es oft gleichgültig sein, ob der Hauptsatz oder der Nebensatz als Prädikat aufgefaßt wird; aus der Stellung ist es nicht zu schließen:

5. **What the Kaiser desires is that** the German naval flag should be shown everywhere, for the German naval flag represents to the Kaiser the Teutonic spirit making its influence felt the world over. — 6. The characteristic peculiarity of the Pilgrim's Progress is, **that it is** the only work of its kind which possesses a strong human interest. — 7. What is really dreadful is **that to you living things have no souls**.

D. Der Adverbsatz.

Übersicht.

Die Erörterung wird sich an die Bedeutung der in Satzform auftretenden adverbialen Bestimmungen anschließen: ob sie lokaler, temporaler, modaler oder kausaler Art sind.

Die Modalsätze werden weiterhin als Modalsätze im engeren und erweiterten Sinn unterschieden, während unter Kausalsätzen alle diejenigen verstanden werden, welche ein Kausalitätsverhältnis, d. h. ein inneres Abhängigkeitsverhältnis ausdrücken.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| I. Der Lokalsatz. | IV. Der Kausalsatz |
| II. Der Temporalsatz. | a) im engeren Sinn; |
| III. Der Modalsatz | b) Finalsatz; |
| a) im engeren Sinn; | c) Konsekutivsatz; |
| b) im erweiterten Sinn. | d) Konditionalsatz; |
| | e) Konzessivsatz. |

I. Der Lokalsatz

wird durch **where** angeschlossen, welches in diesem Falle Konjunktion und unentbehrlich ist.

Where antwortet auf die Frage **wo?** und **wohin?** In der letzteren Bedeutung kann es durch to verdeutlicht werden. — **Whither** ist veraltet. — Auf **woher?** antwortet **from where** und *where . . . from*, auch **whence**.

1. Stands Scotland **where she stood**? — A landlord is entitled to spend his income **where he pleases**, and how he pleases. — It is little to say of a woman, that she only does not destroy **where she passes**. She should revive. — He gave her no time, coming straight to **where she stood**. — President Wilson means to live as simple a life as possible, and to abolish formalities **wherever it can be done**. — 2. The wind bloweth **where it listeth**, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell **whence it cometh**, and **whither it goeth**. (Bible.) — 3. **Whither commerce goes the flag must follow**, and behind the flag the guns. — She could go **whithersoever her reason directed her**.

II. Der Temporalsatz

wird durch Konjunktionen kenntlich gemacht, eigentliche und uneigentliche.

a) Eigentliche Konjunktionen.

Die Bedeutung im einzelnen s. Wortlehre.

after,	(against),	before,	ere
since,	till, until,	when(ever)	while (whilst).

1. The true laurel in America is the almighty dollar, and **after it has been bound round his brows** by the publishers it is most arrogant of these paltry anthologists to omit him from their roll of fame. — 2. I saved so many of them **against you would come**, moss roses and wild white roses. (Nicht literarisch!) — 3. More than a month passed **after the King's execution before the Monarchy was formally abolished**, and the government of the nation provided for by the creation of a Council of State. — 4. He was an old man **ere he came into his own**. — 5. Only twenty-two years have passed **since Bismarck retired** and it is generally admitted that were his methods revived they would not suffice to grapple with Germany's inner problems. — 6. **Till he was found out** Bismarck was accustomed to get the better of his adversary by, upon occasion, telling the simple truth. (Punch.) — 7. **When Knights were bold**. (Theaterstück.) — **Whenever I meet** dignity and self-possession without any discoverable basis, I diagnose good family. — **Scarcely** had James the First mounted the English throne **when the last O'Donnel and O'Neill who have held the rank of independent princes kissed his hand at Whitehall**. — He (Prince Ludwig of Bavaria) came to Lenbach's *atelier* one day in 1892 with two of his daughters **whilst I happened to be there**. — **When once the waters of Lethe have swallowed them up**, statue and tablet are alike in vain. — 8. **While the grass grows the steed starves**.

as verlangt, um rein temporal zu sein, besondere Zeitadverbia, wie **soon, long, early, late**; s. Modalsatz.

1. As soon as Charles had dismissed the Parliament, he threw several members of the House of Commons into prison.

Modal-temporal:

2. As the seventeenth century waned, Slang turned to a vulgar flippancy. — 3. How curious is the change which comes over a train as it **nears London from the North**!

b) Uneigentliche Konjunktionen,

die ihre Funktion durch Spitzenstellung verraten.

α) Adverbia:

1. **Immediately** the offending County Councils or other educational bodies **drop** this unworthy coercion, and are prepared fairly to administer the Act, matters will resume their normal course. — 2. Our real motive (to build another Empire) was the fear that, **once** a foreign rival occupied a given territory, our trade would be hampered, our traders handicapped, and the demand for our goods limited. — 3. But so far as the Second Chamber is concerned, its powers of resistance will have vanished **once** the **Parliament Bill** is on the Statute-book. — 4. **Directly** the effort is visible the spell is broken. — 5. I've played the game. I've fought the good fight. And **now it's all over**, theres an undescribable peace. (B. Shaw.)

Bem. **Now** steht meist mit **that**; der **that**-Satz wird dann zum Attributsatz, z. B.: But **now that** the fate of the struggle is decided the victors are beginning to quarrel over the spoils.

β) Zeitsubstantiva.

Bem. Auch hier könnte man von einem (unangeschlossenen) Attributsatz reden.

1. Trains have a knack of starting **the moment** you reach the platform. That is a certain cause of the universal spreading of nervous prostration. — 2. Here is Master William Shakespeare together with lives of him, studies of him and various works upon his London, **the while** **my other London books** are in another room. — 3. For ourselves, we have no wish to promote the interests of international peace **what time** Germany prepares to sink our navy and capture our trade. — 4. Mr. M. **what time** he has been out of the King's uniform, has made for himself a notable record as a climber.

Kürzung des Temporalersatzes

kann eintreten durch Ersparungen, in beschränktem Umfange durch Partizipien.

α) Ersparungen.

Durch Fortfall der Kopula werden die Konjunktionen (wieder) zu Adverbien:

1. It is precisely the same with the reading of a book by the same person **when** boy, **when** youth, **when** man. — 2. He was never so happy as **when** with the children; he seldom shone brightly in the company of his contemporaries. — 3. His (Steele's) interest in men and women had caused him to write a comedy **when** at college. — 4. Does a bird need to theorize about building its nest, or boast of it **when** built?

β) Partizipien.

Die einfachen Formen der Partizipien reichen im allgemeinen zur Bezeichnung rein temporaler Beziehungen nicht aus und bedürfen eines besonderen Zeitbegriffs.

Selbst dann aber spielt fast immer eine modale oder logische Beziehung hinein.

1. **While** waiting for a war a nation can do worse things than play cricket and football. — 2. **After** using his glass again, he steps back to get a more distant view of one of the larger pictures. — 3. **Soaring** past, the

bird quietly scratched the back of its head with one of its feet, **the while maintaining** a perfect balance and progressing evenly in its flight. — 4. It is a more remarkable fact that the dog, **since being domesticated**, has learnt to bark in at least four or five distinct tones. — 5. **Proceeding** with his survey, he disappears behind the screen. . . . He reappears, face to the wall, **scrutinizing** the drawings. — 6. **His word once given**, of course, there was an end of it. — 7. The features of the country, once clearly grasped, will explain the nature of its colonisation. — 8. **The revolution completed**, the double government dissolved, the Company installed in the full sovereignty of Bengal, Hastings had no motive to treat the late minority with rigour. — 9. **The landing effected**, the triumphal progress finished, the vacant throne supplied, the new king (William III.) saw a threefold sphere of duty and difficulty stretched before him.

Nur die mit **having** gebildeten Formen können Vergangenheit und Vorvergangenheit ohne Zusatz ausdrücken:

10. **This proclamation having been made**, the heralds withdrew to their station. — 11. **Having traced** his (Palmerston's) representative, we now turn to his official career.

III. Der Modalsatz

enthält eine Bestimmung der Art und Weise in Satzform. Er tritt auf entweder in Form des (einfachen oder) reinen oder des erweiterten Modalsatzes. Die Erweiterung erfolgt durch Vergleichen, durch Einschränken oder durch Gegenüberstellung von Haupt- und Nebensatz.

a) Der reine Modalsatz

oder Modalsatz i. e. S. wird durch die Modaladverbia **as**, **like** und **how** angeschlossen:

1. Frederick II. **governed** his kingdom **as he would have governed** a besieged town. — 2. The path was so narrow that only one could go at a time. But every man was full of courage and hope. They **struggled up as best they could**. — 3. Political and religious prejudice **perverted** the judgment of Johnson against the illustrious Puritan singer **as it did long afterwards** the mind of the gentle Keble, who rated Milton lower than Spenser. — 4. God is usually with great fleets, **as He is with great battalions**.

Als Form der Beteuerung:

5. They were solemnly warned from thousands of pulpits not to vote for any Whig candidate, **as they should answer** it to Him who had ordained the powers that be. — 6. When the dying slaveholder asked for the last sacraments, his spiritual attendants regularly adjured him, **as he loved his soul**, to emancipate his brethren for whom Christ had died. — 7. As I live! (So wahr ich lebe!).

Die Auslassung des Verbums oder Proverbiums ist gestattet, solange die syntaktische Beziehung klar bleibt:

8. All his life L. Hunt was a prodigious reader, and he dipped into books **as the bee into flowers**. — 9. A nation in its youth may be helped by laws, **as a weak child by backboards**, but when it is old it cannot that way straighten its crooked spine.

Zur Einführung eines abgeschwächten Vergleichs in Verbindung mit der Kopula — „etwa wie“, „so gut als“, „beinahe“:

10. These difficulties **are** literally **as nothing** compared with the external obstacles to Pan-Germanism raised by democracy. — 11. Universalise that (industrial) system, and the result must be a crisis compared with which the worst in the past **is as nothing**. — 12. Turgeniev and Tolstoi were reconciled and **became as brothers**.

like leitet nur im leichteren Stil einen Modalsatz ein:

1. I thought of a sturdy, beautiful, laughing boy **like Louis used to be**. — 2. Indeed, he may occasionally stop and wipe his brow and reflect—if the reflection be not too long. He is not hurried up and driven **like the hay-makers are** in a country that politeness forbids me to name.

Gekürzt:

3. And they (the Danes) were gathering round it (Wessex) on all sides, **like wolves to the feast**. — 4. The restlessness of the workers is not the peevishness of childish envy. They are not clamouring for motor-cars **like children for new toys**. — 5. And in the future, there will be the *improvisatori* again, who will lavish us their poems carelessly, **like a plant its flowers**.

how steht nur in festen Verbindungen wie:

1. He got up **how he could**. — 2. Men we must have **how we can**, and where we can, and when we can. — 3. Explain it **how you will**, my blood got oxygenated.

b) Der erweiterte Modalsatz.

a) Der vergleichende Modalsatz,

bei dem ganze Sätze oder Satzteile in Vergleich gesetzt werden.

Der Vergleich kann positiv oder negativ sein, d. h. Gleichheit oder Ungleichheit ausdrücken. Bei dem der Gleichheit kann außerdem das Verhältnis der gleichmäßigen Zunahme oder Abnahme, das Proportionale in Frage kommen.

Die Stellung innerhalb der Vergleichsätze folgt den beim Adverb (in Spitzenstellung) gefundenen Gesetzen, wird außerdem aber durch die Rücksicht auf den Parallelismus der Sätze bestimmt und bevorzugt Chiasmen.

aa) Vergleich der Gleichheit.

Er wird erkannt an **as, so, thus, such**.

Ganze Sätze.

Der **as**-Satz steht voran, der Hauptsatz folgt mit oder ohne **so (thus)**:

1. **As** every climate has its peculiar diseases, **so** every walk of life has its peculiar temptations. — 2. **Just as** we in our day **annexed** East Africa against Germany and West Africa against France, **even so**, with equal deliberation and for a similar motive, **did Cecil's contemporaries annex** America, and Cromwell also a portion of the West Indies, against the power of Spain.

— 3. **By as much as** the personality of the author is obtruded, **by so much** will the illusion be destroyed and the interest diminished. — 4. **As** do the climate and physical features differ, **so** do the religion and system of land tenure differ too. — 5. **As your hair will blow** about your ears, **so your temper will get ruffled** with the day's work. — 6. **As** the night keeps hidden in its gloom the petition for life, even **thus** in the depth of my unconsciousness rings the cry—I want thee, only thee. (Tagore.) — 7. Fire he (Heraclitus) conceived to be the principle of all things, and **as** everything came from fire, **so** to fire must all things return.

as und so sind Prädikatsnomen:

8. In a word, **as** the flag **is** to the nation, **so is** the shield-of-arms, the crest, and the motto to the family and the individual. — 9. **As were** the ministers, **so were** the nations.

Ohne so:

10. **As Catholics had become Protestants**, Protestants became Puritans; and the Tudors and Stuarts were as unable to avert the latter change, as the Popes had been to avert the former. — 11. **As** the old birds sing, the young ones twitter. — 12. **As** they pipe to me, I will dance.

as — no more:

13. **Just as** the German Emperor could not be arrested for debt in London, **no more** could one of the great native chiefs.

so — so, such — such:

1. **So long as** the conditions of service were performed by these vassals, **so long** were they left in undisputed possession of the territory awarded. — 2. **So long as** English is a living language, **just so long** will it continue to grow, and to develop, and to add to its resources; and the most that the scholar can do is to put a drag upon the wheels of its progress. — 3. **Such as** the reign was, **such** was Charles II. himself.

Die Umstellung zu **so — as** ist archaisch:

4. **So** with places **as** with books.

Kürzung bei **so — so und like — like:**

5. **So** many poets, **so** little demand for poetry; **so** much good verse, **so** few to read it! — 6. **Like** master, **like** man (**As** the master, **so** the man). — **Like** pot, **like** cover.

Satzteile.

Hier treten naturgemäß Kürzungen im weitesten Umfange ein. Die üblichen Korrelate für tatsächliche Gleichheit sind **as — as**; **so — as** steht nur dann, wenn der Vergleich als solcher zurücktritt, sodaß **so** lediglich steigernd ist.

Bei Verneinung der Gleichheit ist **so — as** das Übliche; doch steht auch hier **as — as** überall da, wo das Objekt des Vergleiches noch als Hauptgesichtspunkt vorschwebt.

as — as.

Der Hauptsatz ist positiv:

1. And I would advocate the utter extermination of the unreadable compendiums and summaries of history, which are a torture of disgust and dreariness, and should be replaced by the full narratives, whether originals or translations, which are **as naturally attractive as** the others are repelling. — 2. But John Eliot's intellect was **as** clear and cool **as** his temper was ardent. — 3. Men knew that Nelson's heart was **as** humane **as** it was fearless. — 4. For fully **as** long **as** you could count twenty there was a dead silence.

Der Hauptsatz ist negativ:

5. Mr. Asquith's audience, however, was **nothing** like **as** large **as** that secured by Mr. Gladstone both in 1886 and 1893. — 6. The immediate relief was **not as great as** had been expected. — 7. Cromwell's power could **not** be overthrown **as long as** the army supported him. — 8. You put the matter in a nutshell; but it is **not half as easy as** it sounds.

so — as.

Der Hauptsatz ist negativ:

1. No English parallel occurs to us at the moment, but there is at least one case which might very well be taken up. Few English historical characters have been **so much aspersed as** Oliver Cromwell. — 2. Max Müller was probably **never quite so innocent as** Blucher, who, when he was made a Doctor at Oxford, asked that General Gneisenau, his right-hand man, might at least be made a chemist. — 3. Foreign ministers are **never so clever as** they seem. — 4. We in Ireland regard **no insult as so grievous as** the insult that we as a nation are intolerant in matters of religion.

Der Hauptsatz ist positiv:

5. I should tremble to have to offer an explanation to critics of Milton **so acute as** these two. — 6. A mind **so fertile as** his (W. Hastings') and **so little restrained** by conscientious scruples, speedily discovered several modes of relieving the financial embarrassments of the government. — 7. It behoves us, no doubt, to ponder reverently, ere we attempt to cast any censure on a man **so virtuous as** Washington.

Gemischte Beispiele:

1. I cannot help classing Froude in my own mind with Macaulay: he was almost **as shallow as** Macaulay, but he had learnt something from Carlyle, and his shallowness, therefore, is **not so offensive as** Macaulay's blatant Whig prejudices. — 2. Meer Jaffier could be upheld on the throne only by the hand which had placed him on it. He was not, indeed, a mere boy: nor had he been so unfortunate **as** to be born in the purple. He was **not therefore quite so imbecile or quite as depraved as** his predecessor had been. — 3. We may not know the Elizabethans **as well as** Mr. Swinburne—no one probably ever has known them **so well**. — 4. The Elite Gardens are **as pretty, if not quite so stately, as** the Court of Honour. — 5. **As versatile as** Mr. Lloyd George is, he should be supplemented by men like Snuts, Meighen and Hughes.

Der Proportionalsatz

ist nur eine besondere Art des positiven Vergleichsatzes; erkannt wird er an

the . . . the . . . ,

die zum Komparativ treten. Doch sind andere Formen nicht selten.

Bem. Der unselbständige Satz steht meistens voran und verlangt die gerade Wortstellung. Im Hauptsatz ordnen sich die Satzteile so, wie für das Prädikat und die Adverbia (in Spitzenstellung s. S. 246) festgestellt ist, auch wenn beide Sätze selbst abhängig sind.

1. The older the Londoner becomes the more does he sigh for that holiday of sightseeing in his own big City, the idea of which he has nursed within him since his early days. — 2. Our population is divided by itself into an infinite number of classes, and the lower you go the more precise and rigid are the distinctions you find. — 3. The more he (Bismarck) succeeds, the less can he tolerate rivals, or respect the small fry round him. — 4. Census-making, it will begin to be perceived, is not by any means a simple matter, and the more it is examined the less simple does it appear. — 5. We fancy that the more the reader knows of the period and the men dealt with the more highly he will appreciate the writer's sound scholarship and sane judgments. — 6. History can furnish few events so startling and remarkable as the trial and death of Lord Strafford—events which, the more they are studied the more wonderful they appear. (Relativische Anknüpfung!) — 7. It had been impossible for him to resist a growing impression that the nearer he approached the Papal capital the more wretched and worse governed did the country appear on every side.

Andere Formen:

Mit **that**:

8. The higher that these desperate gamblers raise their bids for votes, the colder is the response of the voters.

Mit (modalem) **as** im Nebensatz:

9. To-morrow you shall tell me your stories; and as you answer more frankly, I shall be the more able to remedy your misfortunes. — 10. In proportion as men know more and think more, they look less at individuals and more at classes. — 11. As we advance, the valley becomes deeper and deeper. — 12. He presents to us Captain Marryat, in the midst of his family circle, spinning with an imperturbable sedateness impossible yarns which grow more and more preposterous as he notes his listener's credulity.

more — the more:

13. As for my late Lord Durrishdeer, I served him and loved him near twenty years; and thought more of him the more I knew of him. — 14. Let them (unoriginal minds) assure themselves that they are more in need of originality, the less they are conscious of the want.

Der Komparativbegriff steckt im Verbum:

15. French kickshaws are sweet to the palate after a surfeit of your funeral baked meats, and it is probably true that the demand for light fiction increases as our novelists grow more serious. — 16. As the power of the towns waned, that of the soldier nobles waxed.

Gekürzt:

17. Differing from the Duke of Devonshire, he was at his best in impromptu speech; **the briefer, the brighter and the more effective.** — 18. **The greater the delinquent, the greater the delict.**

Vergleich der Ungleichheit.

Erkennungswort ist **than**, das den Komparativ ergänzt, ohne ihm unmittelbar folgen zu müssen.

Kürzungen finden auch hier statt, mag es sich um ganze Sätze oder Satzteile handeln; bei Satzteilen ist Kürzung fast die Regel.

1. Sir W. Besant was the very type of a scholar and a gentleman, his knowledge was great and unusual, but he never paraded it in conversation. His tolerance for people **younger or less instructed**, or both, **than** himself was as unailing as his courtesy to great and small. — 2. **No sooner** are evils laid to-day **than** new terrors arise to-morrow. — 3. We think it **better** that we should bring forth out of our treasuries new things and old, **than** develop on a fixed and contracting line, however perfect the results secured by such narrowing. — 4. No leader of a party in recent modern days . . . has kept himself in **greater** detachment from the thought and the sentiment of his party **than** has the late Prime Minister.

Formal „ungleich“, logisch „gleich“:

5. He produces it no **more than** a mirror produces art. — 6. Life does not cease to be funny when people die **any more than** it ceases to be serious when people laugh. — 7. Mr. Carnegie's young man does not appeal to the imagination **any more than** does the young man of Samuel Smiles or Benjamin Franklin.

Than he . . . in Spitzenstellung s. S. 194, **than** whom s. S. 260.

„Verdichtung“

durch Kürzung oder Ersparung ist bei allen Arten des Vergleichsatzes gestattet, indem der zum Vergleich herangezogene Satz ausgelassen wird oder nur unbestimmt vorschwebt:

1. Pym was the one man who had **clearly foreseen**, and as **clearly resolved** how to meet the difficulties which lay before them. — 2. They could not understand why they were **not as worthy** to wear the purple robe. — 3. The Beloved was not only young and beautiful but gracious: he was **generous as well**. — 4. **As much** can be said of Thackeray, George Eliot, and Charles Dickens. Each of these added a personal note. — 5. To be **the worse** for drink. — All the better!

β) Der einschränkende Modalsatz.

Ist der Modalsatz ein durch **but, only, not** eingeführter **that**-Satz, so dient er zur Einschränkung des Hauptsatzes oder seiner Teile.

but that:

1. We walked away, **not so melancholy but that** a draught of porter would have cheered us. — 2. **No words are so commonplace but that** they can be made to yield inference by a biographer.

Ohne that:

3. It never rains **but it pours**. — 4. There never was a right endeavour, **but it succeeded**. Patience and patience, we shall win at last.

but what:

1. At Albany we had our residence at an inn, where I was **not so blind** and my lord **not so cunning but what** I could see he had some design to hold me prisoner. — 2. I was **not so dull but what** I had my own thoughts.

only that:

1. What nonsense people talk about man and wife being like the oak and the ivy, cup and saucer, and such like! No! Let them stand side by side, like a couple of good trees of the same stock, **only that** the husband has to take the windward side. That's all. (Jörn Uhl transl. by Delmer.) — 2. The Iron Cross of the first class, identical with that of the second in its severe simplicity **only that** it was worn over the heart, was indeed an extraordinary distinction.

not that:

Bem. Daß "not that" stets einen neuen Satz einführt, selbst einen ganz neuen Abschnitt einführen kann, ändert nichts an dem modalen Verhältnis.

1. The love was all for the dead son. **Not that** this was often given breath to; indeed, with me but once. — 2. All general curiosity is, to my mind, righteousness, and I so count it to the American. **Not that** I think that American curiosity is always the highest form of curiosity, or that it is not limited.

Als einen Modal- oder Objektsatz einführend wird auch
in that

gebraucht, je nachdem diese Verbindung als Konjunktion aufgefaßt wird oder der **that**-Satz als Objekt. Vgl. S. 177 u. 256 α.

1. But we admire Alfred (the Great) **in that**, after displaying the valour of a Miltiades and the statecraft of a Themistocles, **he exhibited** the fine wisdom of a Pericles. — 2. I was a fortunate youth **in that** foreign travel formed no small part of my education.

γ) Der adversative Modalsatz wird eingeführt durch
while (whilst) oder whereas.

Vgl. die betreffenden Konjunktionen.

1. It is not so with the Pilgrim's Progress. That wonderful book, **while** it obtains admiration from the most fastidious critics, is loved by those who are too simple to admire it. — 2. But **while** the habit of Slang is universal, it has been practised nowhere with greater assiduity and success than in England. — 3. I had a feeling of embarrassment which strikes me as absurd to-day, that **whereas** I was in the presence of the foremost leader of the greatest political movement of the age (Bebel), I felt I was addressing a man who was almost an outlaw. — 4. **Whereas** in applied physics we hold our own, in applied chemistry we have lost much ground.

IV. Der Kausalsatz.

Der Kausalsatz im engeren Sinn

bezeichnet Grund, Ursache, Veranlassung; er kann den Hauptsatz erweitern und ergänzen.

a) Der erweiternde Kausalsatz

wird meistens durch Konjunktionen eingeführt, deren Bedeutung im einzelnen in der Wortlehre festgestellt ist. Oft genügen die (fragenden) Relativa; außerdem kann der Satz unmittelbar angeschlossen und so formal unabhängig werden.

a) Mit Anschluß

durch Konjunktionen:

as, because, since (when).

1. The average Londoner has been engaged in looking for bombs as if they were Easter-eggs; but **as** none of these dread implements has ever yet exploded, most of them seem to have been laid in mares' nests. — 2. **Because** the Kaiser is a man of action he does not represent that easy-going type of German which has passed away so completely as only to exist in the pages of bygone history. — 3. The great majority of the authorities on modern language teaching—are nearly all agreed that in language teaching *festina lente* is the motto, **since** it is far more difficult to unlearn than to learn. — 4. **When** all these vicissitudes overtake national documents, how many risks have been run by those in family charter-chests in our mansions over the land! — Gekürzt: 5. In a higher, **because** in a sweeter and more loveable form than Colet, More is the representative of the religious tendency of the New Learning.

Durch Relativa:

Vgl. Attributsatz, S. 259.

6. It was one of Lenbach's pet ideas that there is little character in our age, **which is bereft** of colour, costume and symbolism. — 7. Much has been said and written of the excrescences of German beerhouse life, yet within due limits it has its healthy and stimulating aspects—more particularly with regard to the majority of the educated classes, **whose limited means would not allow** of their meeting their friends and acquaintances in their own homes. — 8. Down to the last Mommsen was ready to pay his unstinted tribute of admiration to the broad-minded policy of England, "**which opens** to the stranger every harbour it acquires."

β) Ohne (äußeren) Anschluß.

Nachgestellt und mit kurzer Pause:

1. He (Vortigern) thought that she (Rowena) must be a fairy, **she was so lovely**. — 2. "Speak," it has been said, "that I may know you"—voice-gesture is **more than feature**.

Durch Kürzung vermittelt des (sich anschließenden „konjunkten“ oder zum eigenen Subjekt gehörigen) Partizips erhält der Kausalsatz nominalen Charakter:

1. **Having no true business**, we pour our whole masculine energy into the false business of money-making; and **having no true emotion**, we must have false emotions dressed up for us. — 2. **Such being the programme of *The Britannic Review***, we appeal confidently for support to the leaders of the Britannic peoples. — 3. I am rather surprised that he is allowed to be present here . . . **Being here**, one has no right to insult him openly.

b) Der ergänzende Kausalsatz

wird durch **that**, **if** oder als indirekter Fragesatz eingeführt:

1. Alas, for human nature! **that the wounds of vanity should smart** and bleed so much longer than the wounds of affection! — 2. Mommsen said to himself, "**What a pity that two great nations of kindred race (Germany and England) should remain at loggerheads!**" — 3. The mass of picturesque allusion and illustration which we borrow from a thousand books, our fathers were forced to borrow from one; and the borrowing was **the easier and the more natural that the range of the Hebrew literature fitted it** for the expression of every phase of feeling. — 4. But the crime of Strafford was **none the less a crime that it did not fall** within the scope of the Statute of Treasons. — 5. Human nature being what it is, need we be **surprised if a Jew does not go out of his way to seek martyrdom?** — 6. Our classical writers had already extended through a longer period than those of Greece or of Rome, and Newman did not think we ought to be **disappointed if our own classical period were close upon its termination.** — 7. If in any part of the Empire there should be a rising young lawyer of strong personality and Portia-like learning, one **wonders why the way should not be open** to him to plead in the highest court, and **why the judges of that court should not profit** by a breath of fresh air from the outer world.

Der Finalsatz.

Der Finalsatz wird erkennbar gemacht durch die Konjunktionen **that (in order that)** und **lest**, durch modale Hilfszeitwörter oder durch die Verbalflexion.

Wir unterscheiden den erweiternden vom ergänzenden Finalsatz. Wenn auch die Grenzen sich gelegentlich verwischen, so bleiben doch für die meisten Fälle wesentliche Unterschiede in der Form der Bezeichnung erkennbar.

a) Der erweiternde (reine) Finalsatz

wird erkannt an

that — may, might;
lest — should (might).

that schließt den flexivischen Konjunktiv aus, **lest** gestattet ihn. — Der Finalsatz kann dem Hauptsatz vorangehen und folgen.

α) **that — may, might:**

1. We want to get into good society not **that we may have it**, but **that we may be seen in it**; and our notion of its goodness depends primarily on its conspicuousness. — 2. Out of her fertile womb Nature produces with endless fecundity, casting away a million lives **that one may live.** — 3. **That he may soar**, it is only necessary that he should not struggle to fall.

— 4. One is reminded of the aged clergyman who was discovered at length on the hearth rug, wrestling with the intricacies of the Italian subjunctive in order that he might the better understand Macaulay's comparison of Milton to Dante in the pages of the *Edinburgh Review*. — 5. I have indulged in these general reflexions upon the nature of modern colonisation in order that we may understand what our Empire is, and how it necessarily came into existence.

β) lest

führt einen verneinten Finalsatz ein, meistens mit **should**, selten mit **might**; doch reicht das einfache Verbum aus:

1. In the grounds (of Avignon) were a number of tall trees, where the nightingales sang, and the philosopher (J. St. Mill) always refused to have any of them cut down lest the birds should be frightened away. — 2. Mind yourself; lest, when the roof falls, you, too, should be crushed under the ruins. — 3. I throw myself flat on the slanting leaden roof . . . , lest the rush of air, as of a hurricane, might hurl me over the ledge on the bayonets of the soldiers below. — 4. Music is not less national because it is an international art, but in music our nationalism needs to be both wise and wary lest it cut us off from what is essential to us and to our place in the world of art. — 5. We have become Laodiceans; we are fearful of exposing imposture in current literature lest we get into hot water with a publisher.

b) Der ergänzende Finalsatz

zeigt freiere Formen, läßt aber nicht immer erkennen, ob es sich um das Objekt oder die Absicht des regierenden Verbums handelt.

Die flexivischen Formen werden noch weniger gebraucht als beim reinen Finalsatz, **was** und **were** kaum unterschieden.

α) Subjekt-Objektsatz.

In Frage kommen die Ergänzungen zu den Begriffen des Wünschens, Fürchtens, Forderns, Befehlens.

αα) that:

shall — should:

shall ist rein futurisch und indikativisch aufzufassen; an der Erreichung des Zieles oder Zweckes wird nicht gezweifelt:

1. It is the law of nature that such fits shall be followed by remission. — 2. It is the wish and command of the Japanese Emperor that every effort shall be made to make the Koreans feel there is no humiliation, but rather a relief, in annexation.

should — auch bei Präsens im Hauptsatz — ist das weitaus gebräuchlichste:

3. I desire—I insist—that Mrs. Hoggarty's trunks should be placed this instant in my carriage. — 4. It is as well that the matter should be cleared up. — 5. What remained was that he (Cromwell) should mount the ancient English throne, and reign according to the ancient English polity.

will — would:

6. It is requested **that the visitors will not touch the statues.** — 7. When the King of Prussia was told by his courtiers that Napoleon I. was mad, he expressed a **wish that the madman would bite some of his generals.**

Flexivischer Konjunktiv,

soweit überhaupt erkennbar:

8. The Lord Mayor moved:—"That this meeting . . . is of **opinion** that the proposal that the Shakespeare Memorial should take the form of a National Shakespeare Theatre is a practicable one, and **that it be proceeded with.**" — 9. Mr. Bonar Law, who was received with loud Opposition cheers, **moved that the Bill be read a third time that day three months.** — 10. I desire she **come** back. (Thackeray.) — 11. It is of **the utmost consequence** (in preaching) **that the speaker firmly believe** both the truth, and the importance of those principles which he inculcates on others; and, not only **that he believe** them speculatively, but **have** a lively and serious feeling of them. — 12. In compound sentences, where there is no one main part, unity **demands that there shall be** real coordination, **that the members shall be** coequal parts of one main idea; — und in demselben Zusammenhang: Unity and coherence unite in **demanding that the sentence adhere** throughout to one plan. — 13. Senator Chamberlain . . . introduced a resolution **demanding that the Ambassador furnish** the Senate a complete copy of this highly pro-British outgiving.

Indikativ:

14. But in an author of such unbounded and deserved popularity as our great Dramatist, it is undoubtedly of great consequence **to take care that youth runs** no risk of corruption in the pursuit of innocent amusement or valuable instruction; or rather, **that no offence is offered** to delicacy in the midst of the purest gratification of taste. — 15. I appeal to our countrymen **to see that those who depend on us are properly cared for.**

was — were

sind im Imperfekt Singular die einzigen Formen, welche den Modus erkennen lassen. Was „soll“ die Unwahrscheinlichkeit oder Unmöglichkeit hervorkehren. (Vgl. den Konditionalsatz.)

Eines Anschlusses durch **that** bedarf es nicht.

1. No, Harry, but you are clever. **I wish I was** half as clever. — 2. Most of his friends **would prefer that the former** of these alternatives **were** the true one. — 3. "Ah! Henry, Henry," says he, "you are the best of us still. Rugged and true! Ah! man, **I wish I was** as good." — 4. "I gather, my lord, that Mr. Bally is not a comfort to his family," says the lawyer with a smile. — My lord's face became suddenly knotted. "**I wish he was** in hell!" cried he, and filled himself a glass of wine. — 5. The book is so full of information and of interest that **we wish it were** better written, because it is worth it. — 6. **It is really time** that this matter **was** discussed. — 7. **It is time that** the question of science applied to industry **were** taken seriously.

Die Vorvergangenheit schließt natürlich jeden Zweifel in bezug auf Erfüllbarkeit aus:

8. **We wish** the thing had not been done. — 9. **Would that** the adviser had practised what he preached!

ßß) **lest**

gehört der Schriftsprache an und steht meist mit **should**, selten mit **might**, nach Begriffen des Fürchtens. Der flexivische Konjunktiv ist archaisch:

1. But our fear at the time was **lest he should turn out**, in the person of his son, a second edition of his brother. — 2. He **dreaded lest the woman had a husband**. — 3. The Liberal Party therefore has nothing to gain from the success of either of these sections, and it will have to be **on its guard lest in the end the Protectionist policy takes a more insidious form**. — 4. "And art thou not afraid," said Foster, "**lest the dose be disproportioned?**" (Scott.) — 5. Forget to pity him **lest thy pity prove a serpent**.

ß) **Attributiver Finalsatz** — meist mit **should**:

1. The *Daily Mail* while pointing out the incalculable gravity of the issue inaugurated a **discussion in which all shades of opinion should be frankly and fully expressed**, all interests represented. — 2. We agree with Mr. Elton that it is a pity that the English Universities contain no place for **men like Powell, who should be able to concentrate themselves on some one great task and make it the work of their lifetime**. — 3. It would be possible to make **a volume of selections from Browning's poetry which should give the heart of his work, and much that is best in it, and should yet present no difficulties to the ordinary educated intelligence**.

γ) Der Finalsatz mit **anderen adverbialen Beziehungen**:

1. Frederic determined to overwhelm Brown before Daun **should arrive**. — 2. But **until some new development of the situation should have taken place** I have not thought it necessary to trouble you with these doubts. — 3. **Until that extreme demand** (of the Suffragists) and the extreme measures by which it is supported **are abandoned**, we see little likelihood of any national conversion such as that on which the Constitutionalists must and ought, in deference to their professions, to rely. — 4. Then in Medland Hall, an institution of the Congregational Union, the first 400 odd of them will find shelter and food **until the morning break**. — Biblisch-archaisch! Ebenso: This disability will continue **until our nation's life become an uplifting strength—even unto these last**. — 5. There (in the Jesuit temples) the priest was all things to all men. He showed **so much rigour as might not drive those who knelt at his spiritual tribunal to the Dominican or the Franciscan church**. — 6. **So that evil be done**, they care not who does it.

Der Konsekutivsatz

bezeichnet eine tatsächliche oder eine beabsichtigte Folge. Im ersten Falle ist er frei in der Wahl von Zeit- und Modusform, im zweiten folgt er den Gesetzen des (ihm verwandten) finalen Ergänzungssatzes.

Erkannt wird er an **so (such)**, welches im Hauptsatz auf die Folge als „Ergänzung“ hinweist und welches unmittelbar vor **that** tritt, wenn der Folgesatz den Hauptsatz „erweitert“. Eines Anschlusses durch **that** bedarf es bei der Ergänzung nicht immer.

a) Der ergänzende Konsekutivsatz.

so . . . that:

1. Germany imagined—vainly imagined—as events have happily proved—that so preoccupied should we be with domestic difficulties **that we should stand aloof** from our friends. — 2. Yet, **so** were her words **accented that the entreaty** sounded like command and the command like entreaty. — 3. His (Gorki's) sympathy with the poor is **so strong that he has no justice** for the rest of mankind. — 4. **So great** is their (Bradlaugh's enemies') zeal for religion, **they have** never time to say their prayers. — 5. She has **so much heart she doesn't know** what to do with it.

Attributivisch — as:

6. "I can well understand," he (Mommsen) said, "that the English could not afford to allow the power of the Boers to develop **to such an extent as might eventually have threatened** British supremacy in South Africa."

b) Der erweiternde Konsekutivsatz.

so that:

1. The Kaiser hoped in time to make Berlin the centre of the dramatic art of the world, **so that men should speak** of the Kaiser-period of theatrical art as they speak of the Victorian era of literature. — 2. Age counts for much, **so that the man of thirty-five** ought to have a larger voting-power than the man of twenty-one. — 3. I have observed there are no persons so far away as those who are both married and estranged, **so that they seem** out of ear-shot or to have no common tongue.

c) Andere Formen:

1. What has this man done, he asks, **that he should have** all these things; and I, what have I done **that I should have** no more than my hard daily round through the year, my pittance on Friday nights, and my lodging up a back street? — 2. Landseer once asked Sydney Smith to sit to him for his portrait. As quick as a flash came the witty reply, "Is thy servant a dog **that he should do this thing?**"

Nebengeordnet mit and:

3. He spoke **and** all was still. (Bible.) — 4. But it (the notice) has been delayed till I am indifferent, **and** cannot enjoy it; till I am solitary, **and** cannot impart it; till I am known, **and** do not want it. (S. Johnson; Pref. to Dictionary.)

Der Konditionalsatz.

Je nach der Auffassung, welche der Redende von dem Verhältnis des angenommenen Falles zur Wirklichkeit hat, kommen drei Möglichkeiten in Frage:

Der Redende setzt lediglich den Fall, enthält sich jedes Urteils über seine Möglichkeit bzw. Wahrscheinlichkeit: **Realsatz** (1).

Der Redende nimmt subjektiv Stellung zur Möglichkeit des Falles: **Potentialsatz** (2).

Der Redende „fingiert“ den Fall, der in Wirklichkeit gar nicht bzw. nicht mehr eintreten kann: **Irrealsatz** (3).

Form.

Innerhalb dieser drei Hauptarten, wie auch an den Grenzen derselben treten Schattierungen ein, denen feste Formen nicht immer entsprechen, wo sich also die individuelle Ausdrucksweise geltend macht oder stilistische Rücksichten.

Bem. Infolge der gegenseitigen Abhängigkeit von bedingendem und bedingtem Satz steht hier „Konditionalsatz“ kurz für konditionales Satzgefüge. Der bedingende oder Nebensatz, seiner Stellung nach meist Vordersatz, wird der Kürze halber **if-Satz**, der bedingte oder selbständige wird **Hauptsatz** genannt.

1. Der Realsatz

hat im Hauptsatz und im if-Satz den Indikativ in allen Zeiten. Er steht

a) mit Konjunktionen.

Verwendet werden die eigentlichen Konjunktionen

if, unless, when, whether — or.

a) if.

If kann, betont wie unbetont, sowohl das konditionale Verhältnis überhaupt anzeigen, wie das Tatsächliche, Notorische besonders hervorheben; in letzterem Falle bedeutet es soviel wie *“if it is true that,” “if there is no doubt that.”*

Präsens:

1. *“If I rest, I rust,”* says the key. — 2. A precious thing is all the more precious to us **if it has** been won by work or economy. — 3. **If Fifth Avenue is** metropolitan and exclusive, Broadway is not. — 4. Words, **if they are** not watched, will do deadly work sometimes. — 5. **If that is** the grand object, do our modern ways and discoveries conduce to happiness?

Das Futurum im if-Satz kann in feierlicher Rede durch **shall** bezeichnet werden:

6. **If ever there shall rise up** a Bengalee Hindu who shall be able to sustain the style of Milton's *“Areopagitica,”* **we will confess** that England has reproduced the miracle that Hellas produced in Lucian. — 7. The history of our nineteenth-century dramatic literature, **if it shall ever find** an historian, **will be** a history of the books that have been written by students and admirers of older dramatists.

Präteritum:

8. **If the English brought** home the game, it **was** the Germans who cooked it. — 9. **If I was** wrong, I beg pardon, **I will retract**. — 10. **If he (Disraeli) had** any faiths, any deep convictions, any rooted principles, he **held** his tongue about them. — (*“Any”* läßt erkennen, daß der Verf. ihm die genannten Eigenschaften überhaupt nicht zuerkennen möchte.) — 11. **If ever anyone on this earth was** simple and unaffected, Moltke **was**. — 12. **If it was true,** it **was** a horrid fact in one so young; and if false, it **was** a

horrid calumny. — 13. The happiest time in any country was when every man could feel that if he had the wit and grit the road lay open, and no man grudged success or blamed any failure but his own.

Die Vertauschung von **were** und **was** in zweifellos „realen“ if-Sätzen findet sich bei den meisten Schriftstellern:

14. He (Huxley) **was** always ready for attack or defence: the readier if his opponent **were** a prince of the Church. — 15. Of course, if the King **were** in the right, Fox **was** in the wrong. — 16. Nobody **was** to travel without the royal permission. If the permission **were** granted, the pocket-money of the tourist **was** fixed by royal ordinance. — 17. If it **were** theatre night, perhaps they **met** at the theatre; if it **were** assembly night, they **met** at the rooms. — Vgl. dagegen: It **was** a long night, if it **were** only a night, but Scrooge had his doubts of this.

Perfekt:

18. If European war clouds **have been** dispelled, and if the sound of battle no longer **rings** in the Balkans, the war of the women still **continues** throughout the United Kingdom.

Plusquamperfekt:

19. If Laud **had gone** zealously to work in emptying Puritan pulpits, his zeal **had been** to a great extent foiled by the restrictions of the law.

Bem. Erst der Hauptsatz läßt erkennen, daß „*had gone*“ real gedacht ist, da sonst „*would have been*“ stehen würde; s. Irrealsatz.

β) **unless**.

Unless führt eine Bedingung meistens als Vorbehalt ein; die Verwirklichung des Vorbehaltes hat zur Folge, daß das Gegenteil des Obersatzes eintritt. Es entspricht mithin einem **except when (if)** oder einem **but not if**, selten dem einfachen **if . . . not**:

1. **Unless you are** deliberately kind to every creature, you will often be cruel to many. — 2. But in modern languages, **unless one is** completely isolated from one's countrymen in a foreign land, one picks up their mistakes. — 3. The writer is evidently a woman, and, **unless we are** deceived, new to the world of literature. But, man or woman, young or old, be that as it may, no such book (Jane Eyre) has gladdened our eyes for a long while. — 4. I know there are people in the world who cannot feel grateful **unless the favour (of a service) has been done** them at the cost of pain and difficulty.

γ) **when**:

1. **When men** are rightly occupied, their amusement **grows** out of their work. — 2. **When you win** you lose. (Beim Prozessieren.) — 3. The good guide walks on quietly, without a word, only with his eyes on you **when need is**, and his arm like an iron bar, if **need be**.

δ) **whether — or** (= either if — or if).

Die Bedingung beschränkt sich „disjunktiv“ auf zwei (oder mehrere) Fälle, von denen einer eintreten kann oder muß:

1. The Prussian office-holder is like an individual in an orchestra. **Whether he plays** first violin or triangle, he must, without oversight or influence upon the whole, play off his fragment as it is assigned to him, **whether he considers** it good or bad. But I wish to make music such as I discern to be good, or none at all. — 2. **Whether or not** a conjunction is used depends upon the speaker's conception of what emphasis or rhetorical effect demands. — 3. Let me at least clearly assert this, that **whether novels, or poetry, or history be read**, they should be chosen, not for their freedom from evil, but for their possession of good.

b) Der if-Satz in anderer Form.

α) Als Hauptsatz.

Es entsteht formal eine Satzreihe; logisch nähert sich der Nachsatz dem Konsekutivsatz.

Aufforderungssatz.

Der Nachsatz wird durch **and, then** oder asyndetisch eingeführt:

1. **Spoil the rhythm and you spoil the sense; misunderstand the sense and you will mar the rhythm.** — **Spare the rod and spoil the child.** — 2. Once **grant** the right of Italy to remain in Tripoli . . . **and** one must not be too squeamish about the horrors of warfare. — 3. **Let any one speak** long enough, **he will get** believers. — Once begin upon this downward path, **you never know** where you are to stop. — 4. So long as the Church pronounces labour to be in the right the labour leaders will bless the Church, but **let the Church pronounce** labour to be in the wrong, **then** the ban of the labour leaders will fall upon her head.

Aussagesatz. — Der Nachsatz folgt mit **or**:

5. There are questions in this life with which we must grapple, **or be lost.** — (If we do not grapple we are lost.) — 6. The wisdom of our ancestors is in the simile; and **my unhallowed hands shall not disturb it, or** the Country's done for.

Fragesatz (Inversion).

Diese Form ist beim Realsatz selten:

7. **Did she play** the woman, was it not the more reason for you to play the man? — 8. People will gather by hundreds outside a police-court on the chance of catching a glimpse of a criminal; **do they but see** a corner of the hat, they go away happy. — 9. **Is the same word** wanted again, he will examine carefully whether the altered incidence does not justify and require an altered term, which the world is quick to term a synonym. — 10. Indeed, there never was a parent so fond and doting as he showed himself. He was continually uneasy in his son's absence. **Was the child abroad?** the father would be watching the clouds in case it rained.

β) Als Attributsatz:

1. No book is worth any thing **which is not** worth much. — 2. The greatest of all the mysteries of life, and the most terrible, is the corruption of even the sincerest religion, **which is not** daily founded on rational, effective, humble, and helpful action.

γ) Mit so:

1. Darwin could sincerely say that it mattered not who found the Truth, **so only the Truth was found**. — 2. It mattered not to him (Lincoln) who saved the Union, nor who received the credit for it, **so only the Union was saved**. — 3. So many of us have said at one time or another that if only we could keep our books we would become second-hand booksellers—on the principle of the Irishman who did not object to vivisection **so long as the animal was dead**. — 4. No matter **so you both turn up here for a good long stay**.

δ) Gekürzt:

1. If rich, they go to Italy to enjoy; if poor, to retrench; if sick, to recover; if studious, to learn; if learned, to relax from their studies. — 2. "Lays of Ancient Rome" are the most lofty heights to which the immature mind, **unless of very exceptional quality**, can scale. — 3. Well read, indeed, these books **have serious use**.

2. Der Potentialsatz.

Ob das Angenommene potential ist, d. h. eintreten kann, hängt von der Auffassung des Redenden ab; es kann real gedacht sein oder unreal.

a) Der reale Potentialsatz.

Der Hauptsatz steht im Indikativ, der if-Satz mit **be**, selten mit der flexivischen Form der Vollverba.

Die Konjunktionen sind

if, unless, whether — or.

if:

1. Now **if that be so**—and I think it is so—what are we to say from that point of view? (A. Balfour, Speech.) — **If that be true**—and we all know it is true—what possible advantage can you get if your coercion has been successful? What will be the position of Ireland? — But **if this be so**, or **may be so** . . . — 2. **If these reasonings be just**, no poet has ever triumphed over greater difficulties than Milton. — 3. **If the person** who wrote the book is not wiser than you, you need not read it; **if he be**, he will think differently from you in many respects. — 4. **If the root** of the matter be in him, and **if he has** the requisite chords to set in vibration, a young man may occasionally enter into that land. — 5. The catastrophe of every play (of Shakespeare's) is caused always by the folly or fault of a man; the redemption, **if there be any**, by the wisdom and virtue of a woman, and failing that, there is none. — 6. **If the pilot fly** his machine too high, then the observer who accompanies him will see little or nothing. — 7. But **even if the Budget stand**, even supposing your land is all reckoned as agricultural land, landowners are subject to very heavy burdens under those provisions.

unless:

1. Freedom is but an empty word, **unless the man** who claims it be prepared to defend those laws and those traditions upon which that Freedom depends. (Lord Roberts in Per.) — 2. The size of the aeroplane is limited; it is extremely doubtful if this machine will ever exceed some few tons in weight **unless a great advance be made** in engine construction. — 3. The

works of Milton cannot be comprehended **unless the mind** of the reader cooperate with that of the writer. — 4. What is dead, should be allowed to remain buried, **unless it happen** to have some historical significance.

whether — or:

1. The effect is continually vocal, **whether the language rise** to the exaltation of poetry or fall into such a familiar note. — 2. Marriage is of so much use to a woman, opens out to her so much more of life, and puts her in the way of so much more freedom and usefulness, that, **whether she marry ill or well**, she can hardly miss some benefit. — 3. Fortunately for the book-lover, who reads all the year round, **whether it snow or shine**, he can take his beloved book with him.

b) Der irreale Potentialsatz.

Der if-Satz steht im Präteritum, der Hauptsatz mit Ausnahme des (seltenen) **were** nur im Konditionalis (*should, would, could, might, must*).

Dies ist der normale Potentialis, dessen Unterscheidung vom Irrealis nur in der Vorvergangenheit möglich ist.

α) Mit Konjunktionen:

1. If he lost his money, he **would never be** happy again. — 2. He could do that **if he tried**. — 3. If we confined ourselves to commemorating the mighty dead there **would be** no room for argument. — 4. If it were possible to solidify the English-speaking people for common purposes the gain to them and to mankind **would be** splendid. The blessings of federation were a hundredfold. — 5. **When = if:** Doubtless **when the necessity arose** volunteers in plenty **would flock** to the standard, but during peace-times the army is far from popular, and individual pride in it is more abstract than real or practical. — 6. "**If we are not here** to try to do the best, in my humble opinion the sooner we are away the better for all parties." — "Ay, but **if you were** in my shoes, would you forgive him?" asks my lord.

Soll das Eintreten der Bedingung als unwahrscheinlich betont werden, so wird das Präteritum durch **should** oder **were** to . . . umschrieben — ohne wesentlichen Unterschied:

1. But **nobody would be** accused of over-confidence **if he should say** that after reading twenty pages of Lamb's letters he could only be faintly surprised and continually delighted by the essays. — 2. Things have been borne so long, things of which you know nothing, which **you would not believe if I should tell**. — 3. One is tempted to wonder what **the world would think if the royal family should throw up** a generation of genius. — 4. **If there were to be** any difference between a girl's education and a boy's, I should say that of the two the girl should be earlier led, as her intellect ripens faster, into deep and serious subjects. — 5. The amazing policy which our rulers adopt in this respect is defended on the ground that **if our Navy were to lose its supremacy at sea our case would be hopeless**, while so long as we retain that supremacy invasion must remain impossible. — 6. **If I were to go by what I saw daily, hourly, in London in the course of my work I should commit suicide within a week.**

β) Der if-Satz in anderer Form.

αα) Als Attributsatz:

1. He who should pretend to learn a language by theory and rules, would resemble a person who would learn to walk by the theory of equilibrium. — 2. What would be thought of a painter who should mix August and January in one landscape, who should introduce a frozen river into a harvest scene? — 3. "The Letters of William Shakespeare"—what might not the man deserve of us who should discover those? Ten thousand Bacons with ten thousand ciphers would give us never a thrill like to that! — 4. But he would be a daring man who asserted that Mr. Lloyd George has forgotten his first faith or will not in the appointed time reassert it. — 5. A humanity that did not suffer is a humanity that could inspire no lasting interest. — 6. No one who was not conscious of a mission could write such sentences.

ββ) Mit Inversion:

1. What poetry would be left to the world did we delete all that disagreed with the Puritan? — 2. Were such a scheme as ours (compulsory service) to be forced upon a vanquished nation by her conquerors, or upon a servile nation by her tyrants, then indeed it would be a degradation. — 3. If no system of moral training can forthwith make children what they should be; if even were there a system that would do this, existing parents are too imperfect to carry it out; and if even could such a system be successfully carried out, its results would be disastrously incongruous with the present state of society. — 4. And would men habitually obey these and all like these promptings when less strong, comparatively few evils would arise. — 5. As an author I endeavour to employ plain words and popular modes of construction, as, were I a chapman and dealer, I should common weights and measures.

γγ) Als Hauptsatz:

Weed out the Irish soldiers from her (England's) Armies for a hundred years and history would have to be rewritten.

Kürzung und Selbstergänzung. (S. Irrealsatz.)

3. Der Irrealsatz.

Der Irrealsatz tritt grundsätzlich nur in der Vorvergangenheit auf. Ein Irrealsatz der Gegenwart ist nur denkbar, wenn das Eintreten der Bedingung notorisch unmöglich ist.

a) Die normale Form des Irrealsatzes.

α) In der Vorvergangenheit.

Der if-Satz steht im Plusquamperfekt, der Hauptsatz im Konditionalis:

1. If Boswell had not been a great fool, he would never have been a great writer. — 2. I should have written to you yesterday or the day before, if I had been quite up to writing. — 3. I wonder how few quotations there would be in common English use if Shakespeare had never written and the Bible had never been translated? — 4. If it had not been for one very capable sailor we had on board, and for the lightness of the airs

that blew all day, **we must certainly have gone** to the yard-arm. — 5. If **Ruskin had not been** primarily a preacher **he could never have wielded** his vast influence. — 6. Just imagine if the **Tory party had attempted** to revive for their immediate ends some abeyant prerogative of the Crown, what an infinity of clamour **would have assailed** their ears.

β) In der Gegenwart.

Die Formen des Präteritums dienen lediglich zur Bezeichnung des Bedingteins. Der Hauptsatz steht auch hier im Konditionalis:

1. If **we were to live** again, all men **would be** wise. — 2. I wonder you can bear to deceive him. If **I were you**, I could never sleep at night. — 3. "**I would not talk** wicked nonsense if **I were you**," said I. — 4. If **a man's fate were** as a forbidden fruit, detached from him, and in front of him, **he might hesitate** fortunately before plucking it. — 5. If . . . it **were** necessary that England should be sacrificed to the general good of mankind. **I would see** the general good of mankind damned first.

b) Andere Formen

α) des if-Satzes.

αα) Mit Inversion in Frageform:

1. Men will go on surmising what **might have been**, what full treasures of poetry Coleridge **might have left**, **had he never drunk** opium, **had he eschewed** metaphysics, **had he married** Dorothy Wordsworth, **had he taken** a deal of advice his friends gave him in good intent to rescue the Coleridge which God made and the creature marred. — 2. We could not imagine him (Fielding) creating a Hamlet, or a Macbeth, and **he would have spoiled** his novels if **he had introduced** into them any characters of those types. **Had he met** them in real life, we can fancy with what kindly mockery his eyes **would have gleamed**. — 3. As for me I did not much mind for once, **although had I been alone I should probably have faltered** at the theatre portico.

Mit **but** oder **only** vor dem Verbum,
um einen unerfüllten oder unerfüllbaren Wunsch auszudrücken:

4. **Had the old Catholic gentry but preserved** their old-time abilities as they preserved their Faith, and **could they now find** themselves possessed of them at the end of their long eclipse, what a part **they could play** in modern Ireland! But where are they, and what are they? — 5. Many people **would miss** their chief pleasure **were their neighbours and dependants void of blame**. — 6. **Could Ireland but be pushed** a thousand miles away into the Atlantic—and **were England self-supporting** as to the recruitment of army and navy—what a sigh of relief **would go up** from the Anglo-Saxon race! — 7. **Did theft give** pleasure both to taker and loser, **we should not find** it in our catalogue of sins.

ββ) Mit **but that**

und Indikativ, wenn die Voraussetzung als tatsächlich nicht vorhanden hervorgehoben werden soll:

1. We knew the whole society of the little city, and **but that the young ladies, one and all, spoke** admirable English, we surely **might have learned** the very best German. — 2. **But that his theme was** practical and personal religion, William Law **would have been accounted** among the masters of the Eighteenth Century style.

γγ) Als Attributsatz

mit **who** und **which**:

1. I am persuaded that **anybody who had expressed** the same opinion at the same moment, **would have produced** the same effect. — 2. Mommsen **would have laughed anybody to scorn who had doubted** his patriotism because he opposed Prince Bismarck when he happened to disagree with his policy.

δδ) In (gekürzter) nominaler Form:

1. The tradition of a truly vernacular style had never failed from the time of Elizabeth; and it **could have been developed** into an excellent common style **but for the irruption** of French influences. — 2. **With a little less Hebraism and a little more Hellenism**, Miss Yonge **would**, perhaps, **have exercised** a yet more salutary influence, even if her works had been less popular. — 3. There are staminate plants in literature, that make no fine show of fruit, but **without whose pollen**, quintessence of fructifying gold, **the garden had been barren**. — 4. John Bright **would not have cared to have been made** a baronet. — 5. With new claims of power such as these before them, **to have stood still would have been ruin**. Vgl. Inf. Perf. S. 23. — 6. **Born** into the nineteenth century with such a temperament, a life so troublous and largely *manqué*, Goldsmith **would have had** the *welt-schmerz* pretty badly. **He would have wailed** the impossibility of things; **he would have taken** the bandage from his sores; **his gaiety would have been dashed** with some eclipse. **Born** into the eighteenth century, he had no encouragement to the indulgence of world-smart. (Das 1. "born" ist konditional, das 2. kausal.) — 7. I will wager that, **left to herself, she would have been drawn** into an answer.

β) des Hauptsatzes.

Die indikativischen Formen werden gemieden, wenn eine falsche Auffassung möglich ist; die Klarstellung kann auf verschiedene Art erfolgen:

1. **Had he been permitted** to speak then, he **had spoken**, and she, perhaps, **had listened** differently. — 2. **Had Charles held** to Scotland, the south and the east **had probably been grappled** to him by hooks of steel. — 3. You have done your duty something more than boldly; but **we were no woman had we not** compassion for the wounds which true love deals. — 4. Scores of names live in literature, which **else had been forgotten** by an unseeing or misunderstanding world. — 5. The notice which you have been pleased to take of my labours, **had it been early, had been kind**.

Relativisch angeknüpft:

6. One fact, it is to observe, appears here very clearly, **which if we had known** some twenty years ago, **how many calamities and sorrows had been spared!**

Die willkürliche Annahme dient nur zur stärkeren Hervorhebung des „realen“ Hauptsatzes; vgl. S. 277.

7. **Had Henry VIII. been a weak ruler**, however, there was still sufficient power left in the old aristocracy to have effected at least a temporary reaction, and to have revived the disasters of the late civil wars. — 8. **This was a strong lesson, had I required one**, to avoid ill company. — 9. **Had he (Lenbach) lived**, it had been his intention, as he told one, to devote him-

self to landscape painting. — „Es war seine Absicht gewesen.“ (*He would have devoted himself.*)

γ) beider Sätze.

Hauptsatz und if-Satz sind Hauptsätze. Vgl. den Realsatz und die Satzreihe.

1. The letter could of course be no other than anonymous, **or** the inquiry would not have been necessary. — 2. The voyage has not lasted long enough, **or** I should have wrote the impression deeper.

δ) Selbstergänzung

des Hauptsatzes:

1. If youth but knew! (sc. *All would be well.*) — 2. Had you only told me! — 3. Oh, Richie, Richie, **if only** I had my boy up and well. — 4. **If it was** only the other way! **If it was** I who **were** to be always young, and the picture to grow old. For this—for this I **would give** everything.

des if-Satzes:

1. We are disposed to ask, in passing, what London journal **would have given** five of its best columns to a copy of verses on a disputed question of orthography? (sc. *if it had not been done here.*) — 2. Who **would have thought** it possible that a poet could stir our heart profoundly with a statement of grammar?

Der Konzessivsatz

ist nur eine besondere Form bzw. begriffliche Schattierung des Konditionalsatzes in dessen drei verschiedenen Arten. Auch hier schwindet der Gebrauch der flexivischen Form des Konjunktivs mehr und mehr zugunsten der umschriebenen. Wo sie indessen auftritt, ist ein Bedeutungsunterschied zwischen den konkurrierenden Formen nicht zu erkennen.

a) Mit Konjunktionen:

though, although, albeit, if.

α) **though, although:**

Indikativ:

1. There is a flash of genius in "Past and Present," and in the "French Revolution," **though it is** a wretched history. — 2. The woman must be talented as a woman, and it will not much matter **although she is** talented in nothing else. — 3. Mr. Alexander, if ever you come by this spot, **though it was** a hundred years hence, **and you came** with the gayest and the highest in the land, I would step aside and remember a bit prayer.

Konjunktiv:

1. **Even though** the claims of Ulster **be** unreasonable, he declares that he is ready to go a long way to give way to them in the interests of Irish unity. — 2. But **even though he be** a philosopher, a man is a man for all that. — 3. There are times when the truth must be spoken, **though it kill**.

4. Now that they (the Socialists) are cognisant of their power, this capacity for collective disciplined action is bound to remain permanently with them and be an efficient weapon in their hands, **even though they should**, as every growing movement has done, **change** their aims and ideals from time to time. — 5. Jenner introduced vaccination; we admire him for it, and we shall continue to admire him for it, **although** some still safer and more agreeable preservative **should be discovered**. — 6. **Though** phonetic spelling **should come**, there must come with it the regret of being comparatively unintelligible to our kinsfolk overland and oversea.

β) albeit:

It may be here mentioned that Mrs. T. passed for being much more the master of the establishment than her somewhat easy-going husband, **albeit** he cultivated a great air of masterful dignity to make up for what he lacked in force of character.

γ) if:

1. Such a book as this, **even if its method be** rather clumsy and out of centre, can scarcely fail to be of service to literature. — 2. **If** the Queen (Elizabeth) **had** no convictions, she had tastes. — 3. **If** Froude's accuracy **was** doubtful his language was perfect.

b) Mit ever

in fester Verbindung mit relativischem Substantiv, Adjektiv oder Adverb.

α) Konjunktiv:

1. On this occasion, **whatever be the exact outcome**, it is pretty clear that Austria has had the best of it. — 2. The British Parliament represents the British constituencies, and to them . . . the minister, **whoever he be** and **to whatever party he belongs** is obliged to look. — 3. It is a sentiment* that has been widely disputed, as some people are of opinion that when genius is sent into the world it is bound to make its way, **whatever be the barriers** opposed to its progress. (* In Gray's "Elegy": "Some village Hampden" etc.) — 4. But **whatever should be our literary fate** during the coming years, the Victorian era, even if its poetry were its only shield and buckler, can as firmly as the age of the Elizabethans confront the threatening frown of envious Time. — 5. There is hardly a town (in France) of the smallest account now—not thinking at all of towns that depend for their trade on their visitors—that has not its *magasin* or *galerie*, or **whatever it may call** its leading store. — 6. A female in Russia, **however beautiful, good and clever she be**, if she have no dowry, has to accept any offer of marriage, **however uncongenial the man may be**.

β) Indikativ:

1. A well-educated gentleman may not know many languages—may not be able to speak any but his own. But **whatever language he knows**, he knows precisely; **whatever word he pronounces**, he pronounces rightly. — 2. **Whoever were** the inventors, might not the invention be good? (Der Zusammenhang zwingt zu der Auffassung, daß *were* "preterit" ist.)

Nicht erkennbar:

1. He swore that, **whatever** came to them both, his son should drink the wine of princes on the day of his majority. — 2. **In whatever age Bunyan had lived**, the history of his feelings would, in all probability, have been very curious. (gelebt hätte.) — 3. But **however** he (Burke) came by an opinion, he had no sooner got it, than he did his best to make out a legitimate title to it.

c) Invertiert:

a) Mit though, as, that,

welche hinter das der Betonung wegen an die Spitze gestellte Prädikatsnomen oder den Prädikatskern treten:

1. In authorship, editorship, print and binding, the little book before us is entirely American, but, **English though the subject is**, England, except in one particular, could hardly have produced anything more satisfactory. — 2. **Constructive and progressive creatures, that we are**, with ruling brains, and forming hands, capable of fellowship, and thirsting for fame, can we not contend, in comfort, with the insects of the forest, or, in achievement, with the worm of the sea. — 3. After being kept in prison for nearly a year, Joan, **young, beautiful and good though she was**, was burned as a witch because she had freed her country. — 4. **Absurd as is the machinery, insipid as are the human actors**, no reader probably ever thought him (H. Walpole) dull. — 5. **Widely as the taint of corruption had spread**, his (Pitt's) hands were clean. — 6. **Whig as he was**, and rather a rancorous one at that, Creevey was a welcome person even to the Duke of Wellington. — 7. **Distribute the earth as you will**, the principal question remains inexorable. — Who is to dig it? — 8. But **hate Walpole as he might**, the King was absolutely guided by the adroitness of his wife, Caroline of Anspach. — 9. **Strong man that he is**, General Botha has been severely put to the test during the last few weeks.

Vergleichsatz mit as (so) — as:

10. They spoke in tones so low, that Francis could catch no more than a word or two on an occasion. **For as little as he heard**, he was convinced that the conversation turned upon himself and his own career. — 11. **So sensitive to it (silence) as I was**, in its turn it held me firmly, like the tabled spells of old time.

β) Mit ever so

und (unumschriebenem) Konjunktiv:

1. Style does not come out of the blue, **be it ever so native** to the man, and however authentic his genius. — 2. I had done all that I could; and no man is well pleased to have his all neglected, **be it ever so little**. — 3. My mental vision is limited as is every man's to a greater or less degree, therefore there are certain great books that have for me no charm, **charm they ever so many others** whose opinions I respect and accept.

never so, obwohl unlogisch, ist häufig:

4. Men whose lives are serviceable, **be they never so short**, and worthy of honour, **be they never so humble**;—from these, surely at least, we may receive some clear message of teaching.

d) Gemischte Satzformen:

1. No person who knows the state trials can be at a loss for parallel cases. Indeed, **write what Bunyan would**, the baseness and cruelty of the lawyers of those times "sinned up to it still," and even went beyond it. — 2. **Be reliable how bad soever**, it would be hard to prove that Americans employ it more than Englishmen. — 3. It is in no burst of enthusiasm, **be it aroused how you like**, that you ought to adopt this change. — 4. Jeanne was too obviously a nobody, too rustic in appearance and manner, to make her a possible acquaintance for Mrs. Wheeler, **let her be related to whom she would**. — 5. Now, does any man suppose that Mr. Coleridge,—who, **for all he is too fat** to be a person of active virtue, is undoubtedly a worthy Christian,—was an incendiary . . . ? — 6. The situation of the Royal family resembled the situation of those Scotch families in which father and son took opposite sides during the rebellion, in order that, **come what might**, the estate might no be forfeited. — 7. England **with all thy faults** I love thee still.

e) Kürzung — Ersparung:

1. The study of Grammar is distasteful to the beginner, **however apt**, though to the advanced student it is full of interest and affords a discipline of the reasoning faculties at least as good as that supplied by Euclid or logic. — 2. We have read this book with great pleasure, **though not exactly with that kind of pleasure** which we had expected. — 3. As for the Church, **although holding** the platform of the nation and **having** a splendid organisation, it is almost silent on matters social. — 4. Contributions to Secret Party Funds are given by rich men for many purposes. They purchase honours and titles, **if never** honour nor title to honour. They make available obedient men and votes. — 5. No nation can last, which has made a mob of itself, **however generous** at heart. — 6. That thirst (for applause), **if the last infirmity** of noble minds, is also the first infirmity of weak ones.

Die Satzreihe.

Die Satzreihe als syntaktisches Gebilde entsteht, wenn mehrere Sätze, unabhängige wie abhängige, nebeneinander treten und weniger in der Form als im Gedanken eine Einheit bilden. Die Aneinanderreihung ist gegenüber der Unterordnung im Satzgefüge lockerer, weiter und offener; sie kann unmittelbar (asyndetisch) sein oder mittelbar, eine Reihe oder eine Kette. In beiden Fällen handelt es sich um eine Verbindung entweder kopulativer, adversativer, appositiver oder kausaler Natur. Doch sind scharfe Grenzen nicht zu ziehen.

Zum Zweck der Ersparung können wesentliche Satzteile, die den Reihesätzen gemeinsam sind, nur Ein Mal genannt oder der Selbstergänzung überlassen werden. Diese Zusammenziehung ist gestattet und üblich, solange keine Unklarheit entsteht.

a) Unmittelbare Anreihung.

Sie verzichtet darauf, den inneren Zusammenhang durch äußere Mittel (Partikeln) anzuzeigen, läßt das gegenseitige Verhältnis der Reihensätze mehr fühlen als verstandesmäßig erfassen; sie verfügt statt dessen über verschiedene Mittel konstruktivischer Natur, die als Ersatz für begriffliche Erkennungsmittel angesehen werden, aber auch stilistisch-rhetorischen Zwecken dienen können. Auch die Tonführung ist von Bedeutung, wird aber graphisch weder ausreichend noch gleichmäßig bezeichnet.

α) Kopulativ:

1. Two men and a girl were in the boat. The men fought, the girl shrieked, the boat was upset, the three were drowned. — 2. Dragoons were quartered on Protestant families, women were flung from their sick-beds into the streets, children were torn from their mothers' arms to be brought up in Catholicism, ministers were sent to the galleys. — 3. Charles had fled, peace was restored, the Long Parliament was dissolved, Cromwell was Lord Protector.

In abhängiger Reihe:

4. There have been myriads upon myriads of human creatures **who** have obeyed this law — **who** have put every breath and nerve of their being into its toil — **who** have devoted every hour, and exhausted every faculty — **who** have bequeathed their unaccomplished thoughts at death — **who** being dead, have yet spoken, by majesty of memory, and strength of example.

Gekürzt:

5. We were all in a crimson mist, boys smoking, girls laughing and staring, men hallooing, hats and caps flying about, fights going on, people throwing their furniture out of the windows.

β) Adversativ:

1. Lytton, in spite of his Byronism, was the cultured and dignified eighteenth-century gentleman; Disraeli was the nineteenth-century young man in a hurry. — 2. False or malicious criticism may do much injury to the minds of others, a stupid invention, either in prose or verse, is quite harmless. — 3. The mountain labours, the mouse emerges. — 4. The Spaniards were invited into France by the League; the English were invited into France by the Huguenots.

γ) Appositiv.

Die Reihensätze bringen die weitere Erklärung oder Ausführung des (logischen) Hauptsatzes:

1. Like all Anarchists, Knox was stupid. He had no ambition of constructing or improving; he did not even guess at the effect of his exhortations; and by the violence of his language he materially injured his own cause. — 2. Language is the instrument of living men; it cannot be bound by hard and fast rules: it does not stand still; it sometimes leaves grammar in the lurch. — 3. And in the end, as we have said, they succeeded: Ireland was at peace, Ireland was prospering, the fires of race hatred and religious fanaticism were dying on their ashes; there had ceased to be an Irish problem. —

4. At no moment has the tie between the present and the past been wholly rent asunder; at no moment have Englishmen sat down to put together a wholly new constitution in obedience to some dazzling theory.

δ) Kausal.

Kausal i. e. S., final, konsekutiv:

1. But epochs of concentration cannot well endure for ever; epochs of expansion, in the due course of things, follow them. — 2. Agnosticism should have its ritual no less than faith. It has sown its martyrs, it should reap its saints, and praise God daily for having hidden Himself from man. — 3. With the greater men, you cannot fathom their meaning; they do not even wholly measure it themselves, — it is so wide.

Einen **Übergang** vom unmittelbaren zum mittelbaren Anschluß zeigt die beim Attributsatz S. 259 besprochene

relativische Anknüpfung.

Statt der (an und für sich schon anreihenden) persönlichen und hinweisenden Fürwörter können die (fragenden) Relativa eintreten, wenn die Relativsätze dem vorhergehenden Satz gegenüber eine selbständige Bedeutung haben, wenn sie also erweiternd sind.

Bem. Die Verwendung des Punktes ist vor solchen Sätzen das Übliche. Im übrigen ist die Freiheit im Gebrauch der Redezeichen zwischen den Reihensätzen nur ein Beweis dafür, wie sehr die Grenzen der Reihe im Fluß sind.

1. The title of little impostor . . . naturally caused me to have fights with several of the boys. **Whereupon** I was reported: I was prayed at to move my spirit, and flogged to exercise my flesh. — 2. And this was not the worst. In his maturer years he even dared to urge the faithful to a general massacre of their fellow subjects. **After which** the wrecking of St. Andrew's and other seats of learning seems a venial sin. But it was part and parcel of Knox's destructiveness.

b) Mittelbare Anreihung — Verkettung.

Die hier allein in Betracht kommenden, den „Subjunktionen“ des Satzgefüges entsprechenden Konjunktionen sind

and, but, or, for.

Sie stehen ausschließlich an der eigentlichen Bindestelle, bilden wie jene eine Wortart für sich und genügen zur Bezeichnung kopulativer, adversativer, appositiver oder kausaler Beziehungen zwischen den Reihesätzen.

Bem. Sollen diese Beziehungen begrifflich stärker hervortreten, so ist die Auswahl besonderer Adverbia oder Adverbialia unbeschränkt. Diese sind syntaktisch ebenso wenig zu erfassen wie die Möglichkeiten, welche durch die Verwendung pronominaler Hinweise geschaffen werden.

1. and

kann zunächst die Verbindung äußerlich herstellen, rein kopulativ sein, dann aber auch eine adversative und appositive,

endlich eine innere, kausale Beziehung ausdrücken; der **and-Satz** selbst kann eingeschoben werden.

α) Rein kopulativ:

1. The moon was indeed at the full, **and** the northern streamers were shining brilliantly. — 2. The present Home Rule Bill conflicts violently with Unionism, **and** so did both its predecessors. — 3. There are certain types of human beings—**and beware of them**—to whom remorse is a luxury; they will torture their friends that they may torture themselves.

β) Adversativ:

1. They (the Americans) are capable of wonderful friendships in business. They are cemented by one religion—**and** it is not golf. — 2. We call ourselves a rich nation, **and** we are filthy and foolish enough to thumb each other's books out of circulating libraries. — 3. Any one who has passed through the regular gradations of a classical education, **and is not made a fool** by it, may consider himself as having had a very narrow escape. (Ohne zu verdammen.) — 4. The Church authorities cannot sit still **and** be guiltless.

γ) Appositiv.

Der **and-Satz** ergänzt, beschränkt oder bestimmt die allgemeine Aussage durch einen besonderen Fall oder nach einer bestimmten Richtung; er kann auch der inhaltlich bedeutsamere Satz sein:

1. Even in exposing the enormities of John Knox he (Andrew Lang) keeps his literary temper, **and** instead of breaking the Reformer's head with a bludgeon, gently pricks him with the pin-point of his scorn. — 2. We are only human in so far as we are sensitive **and** our honour is precisely in proportion to our passion. — 3. There can, however, be no manner of doubt that Byron strongly influenced Heine in the beginning, **and** youthful impressions last long, if indeed they are not eternal. — 4. We are a money-grubbing race, **and** the arts have no place in our conception of how best to live.

δ) Kausal.

Vgl. die konsekutiven, konditionalen und konzessiven Gefüge.

Konsekutiv:

1. It was Sunday; **and** his followers, who had been brought up after the Puritan fashion, passed a great part of the day in religious exercises. — 2. They (the Puritans) were a sect. The government persecuted them, **and** they became an opposition. — 3. That promised land it will not be ours to enter, **and** we shall die in the wilderness.

Konditional:

4. Come back with the man, **and** I'll give you a shilling. Come back with him in less than five minutes, **and** I'll give you half a crown! — 5. Watch American business men together, **and** if you are a European you will clearly perceive that they are devotees.

Konzessiv:

6. "Harry, Harry," said my aunt. "they must have seen me here; do you grieve, **and** you have me, dear?" — 7. You **might** read all the books in the British Museum **and** remain an utterly "illiterate," uneducated person.

2. but.

Seiner Bedeutung nach ist but

a) rein gegensätzlich:

1. "England has been a long time in labour," exclaimed Frederick of Prussia as he recognized (in Pitt) a greatness like his own. "but she has at last brought forth a man." — 2. One likes Tennyson, respects Wordsworth, listens to Swinburne, **but** I have always found Browning the best poet to live with. — 3. There have been, I know, many good men misled, and many clever men deceived, on this subject; **but** the great majority are of the class of oppressors. — 4. We have not an Othello, **but** jealousy: not an Iago, **but** perfidy; not a Brutus, **but** patriotism.

Mit diesem **but** konkurriert — ohne wesentlichen Bedeutungsunterschied, häufig sogar mit **but** verbunden —

yet,

ohne in dieser Verbindung Inversion herbeizuführen; vgl. S. 194.

1. S. Johnson rejects the Celtic genealogies and poems without the least hesitation; **yet** he declares himself willing to believe the stories of the second sight. ("und doch") — 2. We are living, and can only live, on the glorious traditions of the past; **yet** Trafalgar was fought a hundred and eight long years ago. — 3. We permit, or cause, thousands of deaths daily, **but** we mean no harm; we set fire to houses, and ravage peasants' fields; **yet** we should be sorry to find we had injured any body. We are still kind at heart; still capable of virtue, **but** only as children are. — 4. The Grand-Duke and Duchess received us with the kindest hospitality. The Court was splendid, **but yet** most pleasant and homely. („dabei aber")

β) einschränkend oder einwendend:

1. Children naturally dislike what is artificial, **but** where are natural children to be found to-day? — 2. Consciousness of superiority can be condoned, **but not** a consciousness of superiority based on vulgar claims. — 3. Mr. Andrew Lang, having attained distinction in many other fields, has now won a secure place among the historians; **but** he writes history after his own fashion and in his own style. — 4. The path of a good woman is indeed strewn with flowers; **but** they rise behind her steps, not before them.

Hier konkurriert only:

5. What they mean, **only they don't know** they mean it, is that they find it hopeless to reach more than a few because the listening power is dormant.

γ) steigernd.

Der **but**-Satz ist, wenn Korrelat zu **not only** (**not merely**), der bedeutsamere. Wird die Anreihung durch Fortfall von **but** und durch entsprechende Pause ansyndetisch, so wird die Steigerung noch verstärkt:

1. Charles II., as we know, displayed a considerable interest in the drama. **But** his interest in literature extended far beyond the drama, and one associates his name with the origin of the Royal Society. — 2. **Not only** do these anecdotes disfigure Boswell's book; they are themselves disfigured

by being inserted in his book. — 3. We come then to the great concourse of the Dead, **not merely** to know from them what is True, **but** chiefly to feel with them what is just.

δ) überleitend,

um die Erörterung fortzusetzen:

1. . . . But the Englishman in general is like my friend the Member of Parliament, and believes, point-blank, that for a thing to be an anomaly is absolutely no objection to it whatever. — 2. . . . But I return to my object . . .

3. or

zeigt zunächst nur an, daß zwei oder mehr Möglichkeiten vorliegen, zwischen denen zu wählen ist.

Die Wahl der einen Möglichkeit kann die der andern ausschließen — **disjunktiv**; die Wahl kann gleichgültig sein — **alternativ**.

α) Disjunktiv.

or:

1. The body may be brought on to the church, **or** it may be left here at the farm. — 2. I've never seen a woman so beautiful as you. Take it **or** leave it—be offended **or** like it—I don't care. — 3. That which may happen, **or** not happen within thirty months, may **or** may not happen within twelve.

either — or:

1. Society is face to face with **one of two alternatives**. Either it must deal with the militants so severely as to stamp militancy out, **or** else it must confess itself beaten, and grant the militants their demands. — 2. I would **either** have allowed **or** compelled Turkey to yield, **or** would have insisted on her carrying on the war alone. (Das erste **or** ist alternativ, das zweite disjunktiv.) — 3. For thirty-five years since its foundation the American Government has been carried on without the co-operation of the Vice-President. **Either** he has resigned through ill-health, **or** has died while in office, **or** has succeeded to the Presidency.

whether — or

zeigt die abhängige Reihe als indirekte Frage an:

1. "It is difficult to determine," said the witty playwright (Gay), "**whether** the fine gentlemen imitate the gentlemen of the road, **or** the gentlemen of the road the fine gentlemen." — 2. **Whether** these creatures faded into mist, **or** mist enshrouded them, he could not tell.

Formal Reihe, logisch Gefüge:

Konditionalsatz! Vgl. S. 279.

1. Fun is all very well, but don't go too far, **or** you may have cause to regret something. — 2. Make haste **or** you'll be late. — 3. Now—the first man in the parish that I hear prophesying bad of our mistress, why there the list was raised and let fall—he'll smell and taste that—**or** I'm a Dutchman.

Kopulativ — ausschließend ist

neither — nor:

Vgl. *Concord*, S. 204.

1. **Neither** Livy, **nor** Tacitus, **nor** Terence, **nor** Seneca, **nor** Pliny, **nor** Quintilian is an adequate spokesman for the Imperial City. They write Latin; Cicero writes Roman. — 2. **Neither** religion, morality, **nor** reason can help me at all. — 3. Freedom is a privilege which can **neither** be bought with money **nor** received as a gift.

In anderer Gruppierung:

4. Here is the great difference between us. **Neither** is the German **nor** the Frenchman ashamed of his trade (the publisher's): but the American goes one better, and gets fun out of his job.

Andere Formen negativer Disjunktion:

5. I visited Columbia University. This was my first visit of inspection to **any** university of **any** kind, **either** in the New World **or** in the Old.

β) Alternativ.

αα) Die Wahl ist frei zwischen bedeutungsverwandten Wörtern oder verschiedenen Auffassungen:

1. Literature is the personal use **or** exercise of language. — 2. I said "recognise" not "encourage **or** even accept." — 3. The survival **or** preservation of certain favoured words in the struggle for existence is natural selection. — 4. A word **or** two. — In three **or** four minutes. — 5. "Colonies are like fruits which only cling till they ripen," said Turgot. Colonisation, say others, is like the swarming of bees; **or** it is like the marriage and migration to another house of the grown-up son. — 6. Few convictions have been more widespread **or** deeper-rooted than the conviction that men as a race are in a state of decay. — 7. I say that these accidents and these guerillas mysteriously and grimly proceeding in the skyey fabric of metal-ribbed constructions, do really form part of the poetry of life in America—or should it be the poetry of death?

ββ) Die Auswahl umfaßt die einzelnen Möglichkeiten eines — oft nur vorschwebenden — **Gesamtbegriffs**:

1. No sovereign since Anne's death has appeared at a Cabinet Council, **or** has ventured to refuse his assent to an Act of Parliament. — 2. He tried to say "Humbug!" but stopped at the first syllable; and being, from the emotion he had undergone, **or** the fatigues of the day, **or** his glimpse of the invisible World, **or** the dull conversation of the Ghost, **or** the lateness of the hour, much in need of repose, went straight to bed. — 3. We do not believe **or** profess the belief, that Parliament **or** municipalities **or** any civil authority whatever has any divine authority.

Bei **verneintem** Gesamtbegriff schwankt der Gebrauch zwischen (kopulativem) **nor** und (alternativem) **or**:

1. The "Ballad of Reading Gaol" was **not** composed **nor** even planned until he had regained his liberty. — 2. I do **not** mean that Europe has failed to adopt the telephone, **nor** that in Europe there are no hotels with the dreadful curse of an active telephone in every room. — 3. There is nothing

very new in the story; loosely written, its style is **not** distinguished **nor** its theme original. — 4. The state is **not** a toy **or** an abstraction. — 5. No **amount**, however, of external honours **or** of personal popularity could dissipate the cloud that over-shadowed the closing years of Scott's life. — 6. Understand, I **don't wish** to enter into the questions of right **or** wrong, woman's honour and shame, **or** to express any opinion on your conduct.

γγ) **or** **berichtigt, steigert, schwächt ab** — meist mit entsprechenden Adverbien:

1. Here is something really and honestly and respectably American. And why it should be derided by even the most lofty pillars of American taste, I cannot imagine. (**Or rather**, I can imagine quite well.) — 2. Israel is a nation, **or at any rate** regards itself as a nation, as unmistakably as Ireland does. — 3. Every one, **or nearly** every one, is now ready to admit that war and its consequent desolation and misery is an evil, a terrible calamity to be avoided if possible. — 4. All nations, indeed, **or almost** all nations, consume stimulants or narcotics of one kind or another. — 5. But, granting that we had both the will and the sense to choose our friends well, how few of us have the power! **or, at least**, how limited, for most, is the sphere of choice!

4. for

entspricht zwischen gleichwertigen selbständigen Reihensätzen der Subjunktion **because** und vor erklärenden, daher unwesentlichen oder entbehrlichen Sätzen den Subjunktionen **as** und **since**.

Es gestattet keine Zusammenziehungen, kann erweiternd und ergänzend sein, ist im ersteren Fall betont, im letzteren unbetont:

1. Scarce a month passes without its dim echoes of war reaching us from some distant outpost of our far-flung possessions, **for** what our fathers won by the sword we must perforce hold by the sword. — 2. If we turn to literature it is just the same. Carlyle was Mid-Victorian, **for Frederick**, which many believe to be his greatest work, falls within this period. — 3. Goldsmith committed some strange blunders: **for** he knew nothing with accuracy. — 4. It seems, however . . . that Cromwell sacrificed his own judgment and his own inclinations to the wishes of the army. **For** the power which he had called into existence was a power which even he could not always control. — 5. The employment of this force was to be at home, not abroad, **for** the hope of an English policy in foreign affairs had already faded away. — 6. I have seen much of Irish character, and have watched it closely, **for** I have also much loved it. — 7. Moltke's powers of silence imposed a leaden weight on his entourage, **for** as a rule he felt little or no inclination for talking for talking's sake.

Eingeschoben:

8. During that vast blank (for blank it was, so far as their lives were concerned)—they had never been separated for one day. — 9. Anybody noticing the effect—**for** it was an effect—would have thought it a mere happy accident.

Die übrigen Satzarten.

Mit Rücksicht auf das Verhältnis, in welchem der Inhalt zur Wirklichkeit steht, können Sätze nicht nur Aussagesätze sein, sondern auch

- A) **Fragesätze**
- B) **Ausrufsätze**
- C) **Aufforderungssätze**
- D) **Wunschsätze.**

Diese „Schattierungen“ einer (ursprünglichen) Aussage folgen den allgemeinen Gesetzen der „Übereinstimmung“; die besonderen Formen aber, welche sie in Wortstellung und Betonung zeigen, lassen die syntaktischen Grenzen zwischen ihnen und der Aussageform nicht immer scharf hervortreten.

A. Der Fragesatz.

Die besonderen Formen des Fragesatzes — Betonung, Wortstellung, Fragewörter — können einzeln oder zu mehreren verwendet werden. Außerdem kann die Frage selbständig sein und nachträglich ausgedrückt werden.

Direkte und indirekte Frage werden vielfach vertauscht; der Übergang von der einen Form zur andern kommt in allen Stilarten vor.

a) Die Wortfrage.

a) Die direkte Wortfrage.

Das (meistens den Satz einleitende) hochbetonte Fragepronomen verlangt die **Inversion**, falls es nicht selbst Subjekt bzw. Teil des Subjekts ist oder Prädikatsnomen:

1. **How long shall we** allow these ultramontane scholars to crucify our native tongue on the cross of classical idiom? — 2. **But what sort of society is this** transfer of power likely to produce? **What are likely to be its defects? What should be our line of conduct** in reference to these new developments? — 3. **Why** do not the police move? — 4. **Where, precisely, did the King's Arms tavern stand?** — 5. **Whom have we left** to face, for example, the picked soldiers of the first military power in the world?

Die Frageform greift über auf den (unbetonten) eingeschobenen Satz:

6. **What does the Government think** is the purpose of the 26 per cent levy on German goods? — 7. **How many think you were intimidated** from attending that meeting whose sympathies were with the Home Rule cause?

Die Voranstellung von andern Satzteilen bzw. Sätzen kann (syntaktisch) nötig werden, wenn sie zum Anschluß an Vorhergehendes dienen, (stilistisch) wünschenswert, wenn die Frage schärfer hervortreten soll.

Bem. Der direkte Fragesatz kann wegen der Betonung oder Tonführung nicht über ein gewisses „physisches“ Maß der Länge hinausgehen. Andererseits dient die Vorwegnahme wesentlicher Bestandteile gewissermaßen als „Anlauf“.

1. If this question were proposed—wherein especially does the poetry of our times differ from that of the last century? — 2. It was as if he (an American) had said, “On this great night, when you enter my wondrous and romantic country for the first time **what does it matter** whether you sleep or not?” — 3. It is a glorifiable book; explorations among a scantily-known people, compared with which **what are** the manners and customs of stupid savages? — 4. To the dispassionate **what can seem** more ridiculous than sacrificing the claims of the young to the exigencies of the old?

Präpositionen treten in der literarischen Sprache meist **vor** das von ihnen abhängige Fragewort. In der leichteren Prosa ist die Trennung selbst bei verwickelterem Satzbau das Übliche, falls sie nicht zu unbequem ist:

1. And **for what** is all this money wanted? — 2. Upon **what** then has the money been spent? — 3. To **what** do the later centuries, and our western civilisation, **owe** the recognition of woman as man's equal, and not his inferior or his servant? How has it come about that all the nobler spirits of our race now act on that belief? — 4. **What follies** has she been up to? — 5. “The money is not wanted for racing debts at all,” he said. “**What is it for?**” she asked. — 6. Why, Gabriel, **what are you going to do that for?**

who = whom, s. S. 113. C:

Who (statt whom) ist nur ein „grammatischer“ Fehler, der in der Unterhaltung fast die Regel ist und selbst bei sorgfältigen Schriftstellern vorkommt. — Die erste Stelle im Satz gehört zunächst dem („psychologischen“) Subjekt; die syntaktische Einordnung kommt später!

7. Mr. Dillon—**Who** are they going to attack? Are they going to fire on British soldiers because of the Bradford speech? (H. of Commons.) — 8. The Commissioners had been accused of corruption, and when these charges were refuted, they were accused of incompetence. Mr. Peel—**Who by?** The Secretary to the Treasury—In this House. — 9. **Who on earth** have you been handing over your dramatic criticism **to?** — 10. **Who** should he see coming down the hill but his father?

β) Die indirekte Wortfrage

hat grundsätzlich die gerade Wortstellung, von der nur nach den allgemeinen Stellungsgesetzen abgewichen wird:

1. You see both of us **know who it is we are marrying**, and that neither of us is a saint. And each of us intends to let the other follow his own bent and go his own way. (Jörn Uhl, übers. von Delmer.) — 2. Aeronautes have brought into prominence the question **who, if any one, it is that the air belongs to**. — 3. **What Mr. Kipling might have become had**

his exuberances and extravagances been corrected in time, none can tell. — 4. I should much like to know who is the possessor of this picture. — 5. Into who committed us, and upon what authority, it is, perhaps, not well to go. — 6. To be truly happy is a question of how we begin and not of how we end, of what we want and not of what we have. — 7. Many of our readers will not know who we mean. — 8. It isn't Burke or Debreit who can tell you who to know and who to avoid. There is no Court Circular published which can show you . . . whom you may only know out of England and whom you may safely know in it.

r) Direkte oder indirekte Wortfrage.

Eine Vertauschung bzw. Verbindung beider Frageformen kann sich aus syntaktischen und stilistischen Gründen empfehlen.

αα) Der (formal abhängige) Fragesatz enthält den Hauptgedanken in der invertierten Wortfolge:

1. Now, what I want you to note is what an extraordinary state of affairs does this reveal. — 2. I want to know why did Albu get his baronetcy? — 3. To the question, what should such an Association do, we scarcely suppose that its founders are prepared to answer fully and confidently. — 4. Mr. Wheler asked the Prime Minister whether it was proposed that the member of the Cabinet holding the post of Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster should have a seat in the House of Commons; and, if so, when would this be arranged.

ββ) Die — vorausgesetzte — direkte Frage wird von dem Antwortenden in indirekter Form wiederholt:

1. Why I am not an official Liberal. (Thema einer Rede). — "*Why are you not an off. Lib.?*" lautet die direkte Frage. — 2. Anyone who wishes, however, to understand his qualities could not do better than obtain his small book, *What Gunpowder Plot Was*, published by Messrs. Longmans in 1897. It was a brilliant answer to Father Gerard's *What Was Gunpowder Plot?*

b) Die Satzfrage.

α) Die direkte Satzfrage

kann eine wirkliche, auf Antwort wartende Frage sein oder nur eine Aussage in Frageform — eine Scheinfrage.

Die wirkliche Frage wird erkannt entweder an der Inversion und Betonung oder nur an der Betonung:

I. Have you (not) been to town?

II. You have (not) been to town?

Die Scheinfrage ist gewöhnlich eine Aussage, deren Wirklichkeit vom Fragenden gar nicht bezweifelt wird. Es ist vielmehr eine Satzform, welche dazu dient, die Entschiedenheit der Aussage zu mildern oder das Gespräch lebhafter zu gestalten, oft auch nur es zu dehnen: der Fragekern wird nachträglich „angehängt“.

Diese Art der Frage kann — durch bloße Betonung — Verwunderung, Empörung, Hohn, Warnung ausdrücken, auch Scherz und Neckerei bezwecken; der Schrift fehlen hierfür fast alle Ausdrucksmittel.

IIIa. You have been to town, haven't you?

IIIb. You have not been to town, have you?

IV. (You have) been to town, have you?

I. Have you (not) been to town?

1. Has not King Edward VII. shown that that position (of autocrat) can be made as great and useful as any other? — 2. Have our readers heard the story of the old lady who walked into a shop and asked to buy a "circulating library"? Inquiry revealed that she wanted a revolving book-case.

II. You have (not) been to town?

1. But surely you must have been told by everybody of what everybody notices? and you should take their words for it. — 2. After that you still pose as a man of honour? Answer me, sir! — 3. "Thou didst not refuse him admittance?" exclaimed Tracy.—"Thou wert not surely so mad?" ejaculated Blount.—"I refused him admittance indeed," said Walter. (Scott, Kenilworth.) — (Es handelt sich um die Fernhaltung des königlichen Leibarztes aus dem Krankenzimmer des Earl of Sussex.)

IIIa. You have been to town, haven't you?

1. A recent writer, for instance, urges that the time has now come for the facts of Organic Evolution to be taught in schools. It seems a reasonable proposition, does it not? — 2. We are too apt, are we not, to write down as a jester of less wisdom than wit the man who meets life with a smile and a happy word? — 3. "I was sure to come," said Frank. "You knew I should, did you not?" — 4. Yes, it does sound funny, doesn't it? But wait till you've read this; then we'll see what you say!

IIIb. You have not (haven't) been to town, have you?

1. "You wouldn't have me risk another of those damned strokes, would you?" he asked, the mockery evident now in his voice and look. — 2. She dropped her voice. "The money has not been spent? Has it? — 3. "What does the silly creature mean?" she asked. "There's nothing the matter with Sandro, is there?"

IV. You have been to town, have you?

1. "Shall I see my wife?" "No, you shan't." "You remain faithful to your word, sir, do you?" "I do." — 2. The light footstep came closer, halting occasionally, as if the walker listened for a sound. Troy whistled a double note in a soft, fluty tone.—"Come to that, is it?" murmured Boldwood, uneasily. — 3. I met my grandfather's ridiculous politeness with a man's indifference. "So you're back, sir, are you?" "I am, sir." — 4. My grandfather watched me, step by step, until I had reached the door. "You're going, are you?" he said. "Then I whistle you off my fingers."

Stellung des Subjekts zu I—IV:

1. Some (schools) have, indeed, professional instructors in cricket, but "the hardness of grammar" to which we were accustomed in old days—is

it not gone? — 2. Are **they** learned men, **your** priests? — 3. **Such** lines as . . . (Zitat aus Miltons Allegro) . . . **lines** of simple mystical and poetical beauty and belonging to the domain of poetry alone, are **they** not full of meaning—haunting, suggestive, mysterious?

Not

kann unmittelbar nach der beschränkenden Verbalform oder nach dem Subjekt stehen. Entscheidend ist häufig die Satzrhythmik oder (und) die Bequemlichkeit der Aussprache, zuweilen auch die Tonstärke von *not*.

Bem. Die folgenden Sätze sind teils dem leichteren Stil O. Wildes, teils dem getragenen Ruskins entnommen.

1. **Is not this** a mystery of life? — 2. **Why can't you** women love us, faults and all? (Mit samt unsern Fehlern.) — 3. "Your wife will forgive you. . . . **Why should she not** forgive?" — "If there is no one there **why should I not** look in that room?" — 4. **Why don't you** try to do something useful in life? — 5. I say you have despised Art! "What!" you again answer, "**have we not** Art exhibitions, miles long? and do **we not** pay thousands of pounds for single pictures?" — 6. Do **you not** see how ignoble this is, as well as how unreasonable? **But do not** you see that to fulfil this, she (woman) must . . . be incapable of error?

β) Die indirekte Satzfrage.

Erkennungszeichen sind *whether* und (seltener) *if* — beide im edleren Stil gelegentlich mit dem (flexivischen) Konjunktiv; vgl. be S. 26, *were* — *was* S. 278.

αα) Einfache Frage:

1. We doubt **whether** any country of Europe, our own perhaps excepted, **have** at the present time reached so high a point of wealth and civilization as some parts of Italy had attained four hundred years ago. — 2. **Whether this conventional criticism** (of Miss Yonge's books) **should be** allowed to stand as the final verdict is, perhaps, another question. Indications of a revolt against it are not wanting among the girls themselves. — 3. It may indeed be doubted **if Athens would** have pleased him (Ruskin) as much as Venice. — 4. The Master, after we had signalled for a boat, asked me **if I knew** the captain. — 5. She turned her head to learn **if the wagoner were** coming. — 6. People may wonder sometimes **if there is** any sphere of human interest untouched by present educational methods.

ββ) Doppelfrage:

1. **Whether** it be desirable or undesirable that India should be more closely united with England, is not now the question. — 2. Our system all tends to level character, and I do not feel sure **whether it levels it up or levels it down**. — 3. The question that young writers of genius ought to consider at the present moment is **whether or no it is possible** to invent a new form of novel. — 4. I am not going at this time of day into the question of **whether or not we had** at the last General Election a mandate for passing this Bill.

γ) Direkte oder indirekte Satzfrage.

Der Übergang von der einen Form zur andern ist sehr gebräuchlich; er beruht meistens auf der Ersparung bzw. Nichtwiederholung des (formalen) Hauptsatzes:

1. She had a telegram to say that her mother was ill, **and would she come at once.** (= *“and to ask whether she”*) — 2. She inquired for the Contessa . . . The Contessa, however, was out; Lucy left a little note in French asking for advice. **Could they get a good doctor at Salvapendente, or must she send to Orvieto?** — 3. The maid had come to give me her mistress's kind love, **and had I been able to do the little commission for her?** **And if so, would I be at the library at four o'clock?** — 4. At this point a lady faltered in, saying she felt very faint, **and might she sit down a moment.**

B. Der Ausrufsatz

steht inhaltlich zwischen Aussage- und (Wort-)Fragesatz, schwankt demnach in seiner Wortstellung. Ist er der zweifellose Ausdruck einer Empfindung, so folgt er dem Bau des indirekten Fragesatzes — ohne Inversion.

Dasselbe gilt von der rhetorischen Frage.

1. In early days, of course, the relatively few books which the labours of the mediæval monks produced were in no other form. But **what manuscripts many of them were!** — 2. What an absurd idea it seems, put fairly in words, that the wealth of the capitalists of civilized nations should ever come to support literature instead of war! — 3. What an orderly crowd an English crowd is! — 4. **How little we know of our own language!** — 5. As he (J. H. Newman) spoke, **how the old truths became new! how they came home with a meaning never felt before!** — 6. *“The Times at a penny”* — **how our grandfathers would have gasped at the announcement!**

C. Der Aufforderungssatz

umfaßt Befehl, Verbot, Ermunterung, Warnung. Er kann außer durch die eigene Form des Imperativs (mit oder ohne Umschreibungen) lediglich durch den veränderten Tonfall vom Aussage- und Fragesatz unterschieden werden.

Die angeredete Person kann hinzugefügt und je nach dem Sinn dem Imperativ voran- oder nachgestellt werden; vgl. S. 102.

Bejahend:

1. All our lives, we have seen our sister-women suffer, in themselves and in their children, poverty, nakedness, hunger . . . Judge you! Is it likely that the trouble of one wife and mother would be much to us now? — 2. **“Do you jeer, my Lord (Buckingham)?”** said Sir Dudley Digges. “I can show you when a greater man than your Lordship . . . has been hanged for as small a crime as these articles contain.” (Höhen Sie nur. — 3. Let a girl's education be as serious as a boy's. — 4. Princess Octilia! **you remember your dignity or I defend you and it, think of me what you will.** (Vgl. Konditionalsatz.) — 5. **Be you, like men, strong; and the exercise of your strength to-day will give you more strength to-morrow. Work onwards and**

Die übrigen Satzarten.

work upwards, and may the blessing of the Most High soothe your cares, clear your vision, and crown your labours with reward! — 6. It is a much more serious thing than that, **mind you**, when it comes to a man, as I trust you will find out. — 7. **Leave** your wife in this house until morning, **but do you go** elsewhere.

Verneinend:

8. O please, **don't you** hurry! („Es hat keine Eile.“) — 9. Temptations enough will come to you in life, but **do not you go** to them. Be masters of yourselves. — 10. Lor, Miss Truda, **never you make** a face! You might grow so! — 11. There now, **don't you** be a little fool. Wait till you are told. — 12. Once for all, **do not let yourselves** be deceived by any of the common talk of “indiscriminate charity.”

D. Der Wunschsatz

wird — selbständig und unselbständig — nur in wenigen Fällen durch eine besondere Verbalform bezeichnet; vgl. S. 26.

Die Bezeichnung durch Hilfszeitwörter ist entweder bei diesen erörtert worden oder bei den (ergänzenden) Finalsätzen, S. 273 fg.

Das verbale **would** dient „konjunkional“ zur (begrifflichen) Einführung von Wunschsätzen.

1. A curse be on him, **heaven's lightnings** descend on him, who keeps husband from wife in calamity! — 2. Lord Stair is a noble and genial specimen of the best type of Scottish gentleman. **Long may he occupy** his illustrious chair! — 3. Then you know nothing of what such an experience is like—and **Heaven forbid** that you ever should. — 4. Moreover, the work in which this appears is not intended for the enjoyment of erudite scholars, **whom God preserve**, but for the enlightenment of the ordinary innocent weakling who is only too easily led away from the Faith. — 5. Already there were some of the elements of a reign of terror in Ulster, and **woe betide the men** who did not make their precepts conform to Sir E. Carson's policy. (Speech in H. of C.) — **Woe** to the man who played tricks with *that* Army (of the French Republic)! — 6. **Would** that the adviser **had practised** what he preached!

Die indirekte Rede. (Berichtsform.)

Vorbem. Die indirekte Rede ist eigentlich eine Satzart. Da die Wiedergabe nicht wörtlich, sondern nur dem Sinne nach durch einen Berichtenden erfolgt, so geschieht die Aussage mit Vorbehalt, unter Ablehnung persönlicher Verantwortung, unter einem „schrägen“ Gesichtswinkel.

Indirekte — direkte Rede

Erkannt wird das Indirekte der Berichtsform durch bestimmte Abänderungen der direkten Form. Diese sind verbaler und pronominaler Natur. Da sie aber zur Unterscheidung der beiden Formen nicht immer ausreichend sind, bedarf es vielfach besonderer, rein formaler Hilfsmittel.

Das „regierende“ Verbum (des Sagens oder Denkens) ist gewöhnlich eine Form der Vergangenheit; daher ist nach den allgemeinen Gesetzen der Zeitfolge das Tempus des „abhängigen“ Satzes ein Präteritum, auch für weitere von ihm abhängige Sätze.

Das die Berichtsform anzeigende Verbum kann fortbleiben, seine Stelle wechseln; (konjunktionales) **that** ist hier ebenso entbehrlich wie bei (andern!) Objektsätzen.

Vergleich.

Direkt: „I wish you would play up,” said the captain; “why are you all so slack? Do keep the ball low. They will get another goal directly, if you don’t look out.”

Je nachdem der Berichtende selbst spricht (1) oder ein Mitglied der Riege (2) oder ein Außenseiter (3), würde die indirekte Form folgende Verschiedenheiten zeigen:

Indirekt: 1) (*I said*) I wished they would play up; (*I asked*) why were they all so slack? (*I said*) I wished they would keep the ball low: (*I said*) the other fellows would get another goal directly, if they didn’t look out.

2) (*He said*) He wished we would play up. Why were we all so slack? He wished we would keep the ball low: they would get another goal directly, if we didn’t look out.

3) (*He said*) He wished they would play up. Why were they all so slack? He wished they would keep the ball low: the other fellows would get another goal directly, if they didn’t look out.

(Nach A. S. West. The Elements of English Grammar, Cambridge 1897.)

a) Aussagesatz.

α) Zeiten:

1. Matthew Arnold **thought** that when the century **turned**, and England counted her poetic gains since 1800, the names of Wordsworth and Byron **would stand** foremost. — 2. Mr. McCabe **said** once, I believe, that he always **wanted** Mr. Shaw to label his paragraphs serious or comic. — Vgl. aber: He also **says**, in the article I am **now** discussing, that Mr. Shaw **has** the reputation of deliberately saying everything which his hearers do not expect him to say. — 3. It (the praise) **was** due to the officers and crew as a unit. A Polar expedition such as they **had** accomplished, **he said**, **was** not a one-man show or a ten-men show, but **was** one which **needed** the co-operation of every man who **sailed** with the expedition, and every man **had** an equal part in its success. — 4. This I **declared was** but a quibble, and **that** I **would** not hear of the captain being told. — “*that*” ist unentbehrlich!

Um die Berichtsform in längeren Reden schärfer herauszuheben, wird das „regierende“ Verbum häufig eingeschoben oder wiederholt, doch nur in gerader Wortstellung:

5. **He thought** the vice they **had** mostly to guard against in interpreting foreign affairs **was** that of greatly exaggerating each other's power and cunning. It **would** be more advantageous if they both **realised** that they **were** neither of them so clever or so wicked as they apparently **thought** each other, and that a great many things done by both of them **were** just as silly as they **seemed**. **Was** it, **he wondered**, a fanciful idea that there **might** develop a kind of Freemasonry among journalists and newspapers of all countries, which **would** enable them to render mutual aid to one another in the common cause of civilisation? It **might** be true, **he added**, that wars **were** not a source of profit to newspapers, but it **was** true that the lively anticipation of war, so long as it **did** not slop over into the real thing, **was** quite profitable (J. A. Spender auf der "Anglo-German Understanding Conference 1913.") — 6. He (Mr. Stead) had just returned from Holland, and was much perturbed by the trend of affairs at the Conference, where, **he said**, the English were being out-classed and put in the shade by the Germans.

Selbstverständlich bleiben im Nebensatz die außerhalb des zeitlichen Rahmens stehenden Aussagen — sachliche Berichtigungen, Übergänge, notorische Tatsachen, allgemein gültige Wahrheiten. Zitate — im **Präsens** stehen oder vielmehr in der ihnen logisch zukommenden Zeitform:

7. The doctor, in his lecture, **said** that fever always **produces** thirst. — 8. Nelson **used to say** that in sea affairs nothing is impossible, and nothing improbable. — 9. On this occasion **might** be learned what influence fortune **has** in war.

β) Modi.

Der Modus ist grundsätzlich der Indikativ. Das Schwanken zwischen **was** und **were**, sowie **should** und **would** in der 3. Person zeigt sich auch hier.

Bem. Die Sätze 2—5 sind einem parlamentarischen Bericht entnommen.

1. They now declared that (if the man **was** sick) he **should** have a day's rest in spite of Hastie's teeth. (*If the man **is** sick, he **shall** have.*) — 2. If there **were** one system under which, more than another, it **were** easy for the elector to break his faith to the country, while he kept it with his corruptor, that system **was** the present. — 3. He **should think** it most disingenuous to give a popular vote, saddling it with a condition which he thought either impossible or exceedingly difficult of fulfilment. Such **was** not his opinion. He had no doubt that . . . Subject to these two conditions, he **would** give his support to the vote by ballot. — 4. He confessed he had listened with so much pain to the expressions of his noble friend . . . that he **was** exceedingly unwilling to allow the question to go to a division without explaining, very briefly, the ground upon which he **should** give his vote. He had not as yet taken any part in the discussions upon this question. He **would** not again go over the ground which others had already trod with an ability and eloquence which he **was** sensible he could only feebly imitate. He **would** only say, in general, that . . . — 5. In other words, the Government **were** by no means sure that when their whole proposals were before that House they **would** command the assent of the majority even in that House of Commons. — 6. I daresay, if one **were** a woman, one **would** like to marry a man who **was** capable of doing this, but not quite one who had **done** so.

r) Pronomina.

In der üblichen Berichtsform verwandeln sich die Pronomina der 1. und 2. Person in die dritte; bleibt die erste, so schließt der Redende sich mit ein:

1. Then the minister, taking out a pocket-knife, showed it to Silas, and asked him, if **he** knew where **he** had left that knife? Silas said, **he** did not know that **he** had left it anywhere out of **his** own pocket. — 2. The minister and one of the deacons came to him with the message from Sarah, that **she** held **her** engagement to him at an end.

Zur Klarstellung:

3. Mr. Attorney-General had to **inform** the jury that the prisoner before them, though young in years, was old in the treasonable practices which claimed the forfeit of his life. That, Providence, however, had put it into the heart of a person who was beyond fear and beyond reproach, to ferret out the nature of the prisoner's schemes. . . . That, **he** (Mr. Attorney-General) was prepared to hear some disparagement attempted of this admirable servant; but that, in a general way, **he** preferred him to **his** (Mr. Attorney-General's) brothers and sisters, and honoured him more than **his** (Mr. Attorney General's) father and mother.

b) Der indirekte Fragesatz (Ausrufsatz)

zeigt nur stilistische Abweichungen, insofern als die direkte und indirekte Form entweder ganz oder zum Teil ineinander übergehen: die Form kann die rein direkte sein oder von der indirekten nur das Präteritum haben.

Man vergleiche die Beispiele zur indirekten Frage S. 297. — Satz 2—4 sind aus einer Gerichtsverhandlung.

1. The noble lord had asked, **What would** be the effect if this Bill should be carried through the House of Commons and lost in the House of Lords? He hoped that the Bill would be carried through both branches of the Legislature. — 2. The President **asked why had he** returned to France when he did, and not sooner? — 3. But **he had married** in England? the President reminded him. — 4. The President **asked, was the Accused** openly denounced or secretly? — 5. Soon the news of his engagement was spread abroad . . . Most of his club-friends laughed, and prophesied it would come to nothing. **How could a man** in Lavender's position **marry** anybody but an heiress? . . . His lady-friends however were much more sympathetic . . . **Would not the Highland girl** be a curiosity for a little while after she came to town? **Was she like** any of the pictures Mr. Lavender had hanging up in his rooms? **Had he not** even a sketch of her? An artist, and **yet not have** a portrait of the girl he had chosen to marry?

c) Der indirekte Aufforderungssatz

tritt mit **should** auf oder wird durch den (formelhaft gewordenen) Imperativ von **let** eingeführt.

Die Sätze sind parlam. Berichten entnommen.

1. All this he admitted. If there were any person who thought it wrong, he respected the tenderness of his conscience, but that person's vocation was

not for a public life. **That person should select** a quieter path for his passage through life, one in which he might play a useful and respectable part. — 2. **Let gentlemen run** their minds over the history of Mr. Pitt's administration. — 3. At present they knew that many dishonest votes were given; but **let the system** of secrecy in voting be introduced, and they would have honest votes, although the parties might afterwards deny that they had given them. Which was the greater evil of the two?

Im (gekürzten) offiziellen Bericht über die *Anglo-German Understanding Conference*, London 1912, heißt es:

Professor Sieper asked whence **came** the unexcusable manifestations of distrust? The argument that Germany must become dangerous to England and therefore England must take up arms, **was** based on the false doctrine that the rise of one country did not imply the rise of another. But both nations, **declared** Dr. Sieper with emphasis, **can** prosper side by side, and the dogma that one country must fall as another rises is a bugbear. The feeling **was** largely due to fanatics and economists, and this is where **we** must bring about enlightenment.

Und über Sir Oliver Lodges's Rede:

We worked at science hand-in-hand, and **admired** and **utilised** each other's discoveries. It **would be** madness to fly at one another's throats. **Where**, he asked, **should we be** without German men of science, to whom **we** recently owed X-rays and wireless telegraphy? Why, **we** even **went** to German watering-places to be cured! For heaven's sake, **don't let us** waste our energies over petty quarrels, he exclaimed.

Wortregister.

Abstrakta 49. 69. 90.

Adjektiv 57.

— (Stellung) 70.

— (Steigerung) 75.

Adverb 78 fg., 236 fg.

all 120.

and 290.

any—some 128.

Apposition 214.

Artikel (bestimmte) 81.

— (unbestimmte) 95.

as (relativ) 118.

as (modal) 264.

at that 110.

Attribut 206.

— **satz** 256.

Aufforderungssatz 301.

aught 121.

Ausrufsatz 301.

to **Be** to ... 12.

Beschränkende Formen 22.

both 121.

but (relativ) 119.

— **that** 177. 269.

— **what** 270.

— (Präposition) 142.

— (Konjunktion) 292.

Can — could 19.

Causativa 10. 219.

certain 122.

Chinese u. ä. 64.

Concord 194.

Copula und Copulativa 10. 185.

(to) **Dare** 20.

Demonstrativa 109.

Determinativa 111.

to **do** 17.

Each — every 123.

each other 107.

Eigennamen 82.

either — neither 122.

either — or 204. 293.

the English u. ä. 64.

Factitiva 10. 186.

Farben 50. 66. 69. 80.

few — little 124.

Finalsatz 272.

Flußnamen 88.

for (Präp.) 145.

— (Konj.) 295.

— ... **sake** 49.

— **that** 177.

Fragesatz 296.

Gattungsnamen 89.

Gebirgsnamen 88.

Genus (Verbi) 22.

Gerundium 38.

Geschlecht 53.

to **be going to** ... 12.

Half 124.

to **have to** ... 13.

Hilfsverba 11 fg.

Himmelsgegenden 88.

Imperativ 26.

Impersonalia 9. 11.

Indefinita 120 fg.

Indikativ 25.

Indirekte Rede 302.

Infinitiv 26 fg.

— **for** ... to 31.

Inselnamen 86.

Interrogativa 112 fg.

in **that** 270.

Intransitiva 9. 10. 227.

Inversion 191 fg.

it 104. 111.

Kasus (Deklination) 47.

Kausalsatz 271 fg.

Kollektiva 50. 93. 195.
 Konditionalsatz 276.
 Konjunktionen 173 fg.
 Konjunktiv 26.
 Konsekutivsatz 275.
 Konzessivsatz 285.
 Krankheitsnamen 92.
 Kunstwerke 83.

Ländernamen 85.
 lest 273. 275.
 to let 19.
 like (modal) 265.
 like — unlike 151. 229.
 little — few 124.
 Lokalsatz 261.

Mahlzeiten 92.
 man (a) Indef. 125.
 man — woman (Art.) 89.
 Maß- und Zahlbegriffe 52.
 may — might 15.
 Modalsatz 264.
 Modus 25.
 Meere 87.
 much — many 124.
 must 20.

Naught 121.
 near 152. 228.
 (to) need 21.
 neither — nor 204. 294.
 none — no 125.
 nothing 126.
 not that 270.
 Numeralia 97.
 Numerus 49 fg.

Objekt 218 fg.
 — indirekt 227.
 — kasus 229.
 — satz 254.
 one (Determinativ) 112.
 — (Indefinitum) 126.
 — (Stützwort) 58.
 — (Zahlwort) 100.
 — another 107.
 only that 270.
 — (Stellung) 247.
 opposite 164. 229.
 or 204. 293.
 other 127.
 ought to ... 20.
 own (Possessivum) 108.

Partizipialkonstruktion 35. 263. 271.
 Partizipien 34 fg. 209 fg. 224.
 Passivkonstruktion 233 fg.
 Personalia 101.
 Personifikation 56.
 Personennamen (Artikel) 83 fg.
 — (Übereinstimmung) 205.
 Possessiva 108.
 Prädikat 184 fg.
 — satz 261.
 Präpositionen 132 fg.
 Progressive 12. 25.
 Pro-Infinitiv 29.
 Pronomina 101 fg.
 Proportionalsatz 268.
 Proverbium 18.

Quite (Stellung) 247.

Rather than 28.
 Reciproca 107.
 Reflexiva 9. 105.
 Relativa 114 fg.

Sächsischer Genitiv 46. 47 fg. 212.
 same 112. 118.
 Sammelnamen 50. 93. 195.
 Satz — Gruppe — Gefüge — Reihe 181.
 Satzarten 296.
 — gefüge 252 fg.
 — reihe 288 fg.
 Schiffsnamen 83.
 several 128.
 shall — should 13.
 so (modal) 265.
 so — it 111.
 some — any 128.
 Split Infinitive 29. 243.
 Städtenamen 87.
 Sternbilder 83.
 Stoffnamen 49. 61. 91.
 Straßennamen 87.
 Subjekt 182 fg.
 — und Prädikat 191 fg.
 — satz 253.
 Substantiv 43 fg.
 such 111. 118.
 such (modal) 265.

Tempora 22 fg.
 Temporalsatz 262.
 Tenses 22 fg.
 there (is) 188. 205.
 thing(s) 66. 72. 90. 131.
 this, that (Adverb) 110.
 Tiernamen 51.

Titel 83 fg.
Transitiva 9. 218 fg.
try and learn u. ä. 33.

Unbeschränkte Formen 22. 26.
unless 278.

Verbalsubstantiv 43.
Verbum 1 fg.
Vergleichsatz 265.
Völkernamen 64. 89.

What (Indefinitum) 131.
 — (Interrogativ) 112.
 — (Relativ) 116.
whether = **if** 300.

whether . . . or 278. 293.
which (Interrogativ) 112.
 — (Relativ) 117.
who (Indefinitum) 131.
 — (Interrogativ) 112.
 — (Relativ) 115.
will — **would** 14.
woman (Artikel) 89.
Wunschsatz 302.

Yet 292.

Zahl- und Maßbegriffe 52.
Zahlwort 97.
Zeitbestimmungen (Artikel) 92.



C. F. Wintersche Buchdruckerei.



PE
1129
G3W4

Wendt, Gustav
Grammatik des heutigen
Englisch

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

